The art of coming clean
by in_need_of_some_sanity

Summary

Set during Season 1. AU from canon. Harvey never hired an associate and Mike never delivered the weed to the Chilton. And yet they meet at an unexpected place and events unfold.

Notes

Disclaimer: I don't own the characters of Suits, I've just borrowed them to have my lewd ways with them.
Harvey closed his burning eyes for a minute. At least, that’s what he told himself. Just a minute until the pain would subside and then he’d plow through the next mountain of files.

The low, sweet sound of Ray Charles’ Georgia on my mind washed over him and only as he exhaled slowly and made the conscious effort to relax his shoulders he became fully aware of how tense his muscles had been. He desperately wanted to pour himself a glass of Whisky but that would come later, as a reward when he’d finally found what he so urgently was looking for – a solution for the mess he had gotten himself and Wyatt, the techno geek, into. He knew he would find it eventually. The thought of not being able to win for his client never crossed his mind. Well, it did but if asked he would take the 5th on that. He was, after all, New York’s best closer. And not even the honorable Judge Donald Pearl would wrinkle his reputation even if he was willing to sacrifice his own in order to stick it to his, allegedly, unfaithful wife.

With his head dropped back against the backrest of his lounging chair, he allowed his thoughts to drift back to the day he’d been supposed to hire his own associate. When Jessica had first told him that he had to take care of the associates’ interviews at the Chilton and thus revealing to him that he finally made it to senior partner, in front of Louis no less (the memory of the face of that ferret still made Harvey snigger), Harvey had felt ecstatic.

That feeling hadn’t lasted. After 8 hours of tedious interviews with one Harvard clone after another his joy had changed into resentment. Halfway through the day he had been seriously tempted to randomly hire any of the douchebags just to get it over with. Even his arrangement with Donna to streamline the process had been futile, because the candidates were all just so generic, boring and uninspired. Not at all a second him he was looking for, like he had told his assistant earlier. In the end he just couldn’t settle for anybody below his standards. After all, he would have to work with this person, probably see them on a daily basis and – oh, the thought made him shudder – mentor them.

NO! That just wouldn’t do. Harvey Specter wouldn’t settle for second best, even if that meant that he would have to dig through Wyatt’s case files all by himself. Or that the reason he was in this mess in the first place was, that he had tried to do everything by himself and thus had filed the patent a day late, as Jessica had stated succinctly, much to his chagrin. The woman knew about everything that happened in her firm and so the “I told you so” came as no surprise to him. It still rankled though.

With that thought he forced his eyes open again, briefly pinched the bridge of his nose and picked up another folder with a sigh. The words blurred a little in front of his tired eyes but he willed them to make sense. He would dig himself out of this and if he needed to pull several all-nighters to do so, then so be it.

A strange buzzing noise crept into his consciousness and when he looked up he saw the shadow of a young man in baggy jeans and a tee in the dim light outside his office. The slender man was slightly hunched over and moved slowly in a crisscross path across the hallway, holding the nozzle of a vacuum cleaner.

It took Harvey a few moments to realize that the guy must belong to the cleaning crew Pearson Hardman hired. A glance at his expensive wristwatch confirmed that it was way past midnight. The buzzing noise stopped and the guy made his way towards Donna’s cubicle. Harvey reached out to
the lamp beside his chair and dimmed the lights to obscure his presence. Somehow he was intrigued by the movements of the man, although despite of his stature and the way he moved Harvey hadn’t been able the make out more than the outlines of the slender figure against the dim hallway light. Somehow there was something familiar about the man though Harvey couldn’t for the life of him pinpoint what it was.

The man had picked up Donna’s bin and emptied the contents into a large black plastic trash bag he was dragging behind him. Then the vacuum cleaner once more sprang to life and the inside of the cubicle was thoroughly hoovered.

The movements of the guy were efficient and quick but his slender figure added a sort of gracefulness that appealed to Harvey. And once more, the sense of familiarity niggled at the back of his mind. Then the guy turned and for a moment his face was illuminated by the low lights of the energy saving lamps in the hallway.

Harvey gasped.

Chapter End Notes

I only recently discovered Suits and fell head over heels for the guys. After reading fanfiction for the last 5 months to satisfy my infatuation I finally had an idea for my own Story. I was inspired by the works of a lot of very talented People, like sal_si_puedes, thaotherperv, poppypickford, jonius_belonius, to mention just a few. I have never practiced BDSM and everything my brain came up with in this story is pure fiction. This story is not beta’d and every mistake is my own. English is not my first language and I apologize for all errors in spelling and grammar. I would appreciate comments and suggestions but please be aware that I only watched the show till S03E13 so far so please, no spoilers.
Finding a puppy

Three weeks ago.

Harvey went to Natasha’s because, frankly, he needed to unwind a little. These days his visits were not as regular as they used to be when he first started out in the scene over a decade ago. His workload had increased palpably since he was announced senior partner and between work, sleep, working-out and the occasional one-night-stand there wasn’t just enough time. But sometimes he indulged his dark side, his Dom-side, and he went to Natasha’s to play.

The club was discreet, high-class and the members were hand-picked. The interior was expensive, tasteful and anything but dungeon-themed and tacky. Mostly couples, Doms with their subs, attended the club but singles like Harvey were also welcome, once they had gone through a proper vetting process. Safe, sane and consensual was the unwritten motto of the club and the employees always took great care in the matching process. They even employed some subs in case a single Dom was in need of a willing playmate.

Harvey had an appointment with Natalie, a sweet blonde sub, who was one of the club’s employees. Since his time was so limited, he had come to appreciate the efficiency of scening with an experienced sub. Natalie knew what she needed and where her limits were and Harvey had scened a couple of times with her and knew that they were a good match.

Natalie greeted him with a smile and a kiss on his cheek when she met him at the bar before she followed him to one of the private rooms he had booked for their session. He himself wasn’t shy and even liked to display his skills every now and then but he knew that Natalie preferred a more intimate setting. After he closed the door the sub slipped out of her silk-robe and kneeled down in the middle of the room in perfect submissive posture. Harvey took off his jacket and then circled the kneeling woman, drinking in the sight of her. Natalie was petite with ample breasts and a penchant for pain. Just what he needed tonight. He could already feel the tension leave his body.

Harvey loved the feeling of being in control, needed it really. At Pearson Hardman nobody questioned his dominance anymore. Well, Louis possessed the poor judgement to try now and again, but came out second every time he engaged in a power play with Harvey.

But dominating at work was totally different from what he was doing here. Natalie’s ability to relinquish her own free will and give herself up completely gave Harvey a rush every time they scened together. The knowledge that she got at least as much out of their time together as he did, that she needed as much to submit as he needed to dominate, was exhilarating. He took a few calming breaths before he stopped his inspection of her body. She seemed serene and totally at ease as she was kneeling for her Dom, for him, so beautifully.

“Are you going to be my good girl?” Harvey whispered in her ear as he was standing close behind her, leaning down a little while he rolled up his shirt sleeves. The feeling of his breath brushing her ear and cheek made the sub shiver slightly in anticipation.

“Yes, Sir. I will be so good for you.” Her voice was breathy as though she were already halfway in subspace.

“You know the rules?”

“Yes Sir.”
“Recite them to me.”

“No talking except you ask a question. Safe word is red to stop and yellow to slow down, Sir.”

“That’s right,” he praised her and added as an afterthought, “Do you like me to make you come today?”

Sex was not necessarily part of their scenes and although, strictly speaking, Harvey was bisexual, during a scene he preferred sexual intercourse with a male sub. He felt he could be rougher and needn’t hold back when he was fucking a man. He knew it was a paradox because he could thrash a woman’s backside as thoroughly and mercilessly as a man’s if his partner was so inclined, but when it came to actual fucking, he felt that with a woman he couldn’t quite let himself go as well as he could with a man.

But he would still make his female subs come if they were well behaved and wanted it too, although his cock would stay inside his pants. He could always pick someone up at a bar on his way home if he needed really to get off after a scene.

“If you think that I earned it, I would like that very much, Sir. But it is your decision.”

At that Harvey couldn’t suppress a satisfied smirk. Such a good girl.

“Damn right it is.” His fingers tapped lightly on the piece of furniture in front of him. ”Now, get your pretty little ass on the spanking bench. Let’s see how fast I can make you fly.”

**********

After the scene, which had contained heavy impact play with several different implements and as a finale an earthshattering orgasm for Natalie (she had indeed been a good girl), Harvey had made sure that his sub was securely wrapped up in a blanket while he let her sip some water and held her in his arms. Natalie had recovered a little while later and Harvey had sent her home in a cab with the instruction to call him should she experience any signs of sub drop.

He planned on calling her tomorrow to make sure she was okay and their scene didn’t have any unpleasant side effects on her. Harvey knew that the club kept tabs on their employed subs after scenes but he felt that as a Dom proper aftercare was his responsibility regardless of how temporary his arrangement with the sub was.

After Natalie had left, Harvey ventured into the main room of the club and got himself a drink, his first that evening, at the bar. The open setting of the room allowed a view into several adjoining alcoves where couples played when they wanted an audience. Since it was a workday there weren’t many patrons present but in one of the alcoves a big Dom with black hair was scening with a younger blond man.

Steven, if Harvey remembered the name of the Dom correctly, was a regular but the younger guy with the messy dark blond hair und the slender figure must’ve been new. When the bartender named Marc gave him a refill Harvey slightly nodded towards the alcove.

“Who is Steven’s partner? I haven’t seen him around.”

“A newbie I think. Steven brought him as his guest but I think they don’t know each other so well.”
Harvey arched an eyebrow questioningly and Marc explained. “They had a drink earlier and from what I could overhear, today is their first scene. They are only just starting now. To be honest, I’m not really sure that they are a good fit, but that’s just a feeling. The sub seems very jumpy.”

Harvey was intrigued and wandered over to the alcove to get a better view. He knew Steven from the club but had never watched him during a scene. He was curious about the other Dom’s style. Who knew, maybe he could learn something new. Yeah, as if! His overdeveloped confidence crushed that ridiculous thought immediately.

The ice cubes in his glass made a soft clinking noise as he casually leaned against the open entranceway and took a sip of the aged Macallan.

Steven noticed Harvey and the two Doms acknowledged each other with a polite nod. Then Steven turned back to his kneeling sub.

The young man’s face was turned away from the doorway towards the wall and Harvey could only glimpse the side of his face from his vantage point.

He was already naked and Harvey could make out goosebumps on the unblemished fair skin on the backside of his thighs. Since it was warm in the club, the goosebumps must be attributed to either nerves or arousal.

The posture of the sub was terrible compared to Natalie’s and Steven corrected his sub with rough movements of his hands. When the young sub finally kneeled with a straight back, knees wide apart, hands interlocked behind his head, elbows turned outward, he was slightly trembling. Between the gap of his thighs, Harvey could see that the sub’s cock was still flaccid.

“Nerves”, thought Harvey “not arousal”. Steven’s treatment of the newbie had been quite harsh and accompanied with barked orders and Harvey knew instinctively that this sub would thrive more on praise and encouragement. Obviously Steven had different views.

“If you little slut don’t keep it together I’m gonna blister your ass with the bullwhip until you’ve screamed yourself hoarse.” Steven’s voice sounded mean to Harvey’s ears and obviously the young sub thought so too, because the trembling increased and not in a good way.

“I’m sorry Sir. I try to do better. I want to be your good sub, Sir.” Even his voice shook a little bit.

Steven, standing behind the trembling figure, pushed his fingers into the dark blond messy hair, grabbed a handful and pulled back until the young man’s head was bent backwards at an awkward angle. He could hardly keep his balance on his knees with his hands still behind his head and his whole weight was being held by the hand in his hairs. Harvey could see the effort it took the young man not to whimper.

“I haven’t allowed you to speak. That gets you 10 more strikes.”

Harvey wanted to intervene but caught himself just in time. This was none of his business. Just because Steven’s style wasn’t to his taste didn’t mean that the sub didn’t like it as well. Maybe he was reading the sub wrong and anyway, the blond man could always safeword out. Which he hadn’t so far.

Steven finally let go of his sub’s hair and gave him a slight push forwards.

“On your feet und towards the St. Andrews Cross. Face towards the wall. And no talking. I don’t want to hear another sound out of your filthy mouth.”
The sub came shakily to his feet and stumbled over to the wall. His hands and feet found their positions and Steven secured his limbs with the leather straps.

In this position, the round firm ass and the long slender limbs of the young man were displayed to their advantage and Harvey felt a pang of regret. The young sub was exactly his type and although the session with Natalie should have sated Harvey’s appetite for the moment, he was painfully reminded by his swelling cock that he, unlike Natalie, hadn’t come.

Harvey pondered for a moment whether he should watch Steven abuse his poor sub or just leave and find himself a willing one-night stand but his feet seemed rooted to the spot, his subconscious making the decision for him.

Steven had selected a flogger and assumed position behind the young man. Without warning, not a word or even a soft touch, he let the leather strips hit the sub’s right shoulder blade. The head of the blond man jerked back in surprise and his breath escaped him with a hissing noise. Steven didn’t give him time to process the pain but swung his arm again and again, raining down hard blows all over the young man’s back, ass and thighs.

When the fair skin was tinted a dark pink all over the Dom selected a riding crop and without pause or checking in on the young man, resumed his treatment with hard strikes. The sub really seemed to be new at this because Harvey could see how his muscles tensed under the onslaught of blows and how he shifted within the range of his bonds instead of trying to relax into the pain. The blond head turned rapidly from one side to another as though that little freedom of movement made the pain more bearable and soft moans escaped the dark pink lips.

Even from his position Harvey could see that the young man was desperately biting his own lower lip in order to not cry out. To keep it together, like Steven had instructed before. If he went on like this, the sub’s lower lip would soon start bleeding, Harvey was sure of that. Sadly, Steven didn’t seem to notice or just didn’t care. Harvey could hear how irregular and erratic the breathing of the tied man had become and his worry increased. He seemed to hyperventilate and if Steven wouldn’t ease up a little the young man could pass out from lack of oxygen.

“Red.” The soft whisper was barely audible over the harsh slaps of the striker’s leather-flap on skin. Maybe Harvey only heard it because he was waiting for it, hoping for it really.

When Steven, who obviously hadn’t heard, drew his arm back once more, Harvey was ready. He took a few hasty steps forward and grabbed the Dom’s wrist to hold him back.

“What the hell…” Steven tried to free his wrist from Harvey’s grip.

“He safeworded! Didn’t you hear?” Harvey didn’t let go of Steven and his voice sounded at least as pissed as Steven’s did.

“What kind of Dom are you that you are so careless with your sub?” Harvey stepped into Steven’s space and although Steven was taller and had more muscle than the lawyer, he backed down under Harvey’s obvious anger.

When Harvey was sure that the other Dom had gotten the message, he let go of the hairy wrist still holding the crop and turned to the sub.

At this point the young man was only upright because he was tied to the St. Andrews cross, but his head had rolled back and his eyes were firmly closed. Harvey could barely hear his breath and his first thought was that the sub really had fainted.
He stepped in close behind the slack body and carefully laid a hand on the neck of the blond man. The sub tried to shy away from the touch and Harvey shushed at him softly but didn’t break contact with the man.

“Shush. I’ve got you. It’s over,” he whispered softly and tried to reassure the man that the attack on him had ended. He pressed himself more firmly behind the tied up body to support its weight, whispering little encouragements.

“Come on. Try to stand on your own feet. Yeah, that’s more like it. Only for a little bit until I have untied you.”

“Where’s …” whispered the hurt sub in confusion.

Harvey could guess the rest of the question. “He’s over there in the corner and he’s not coming near you again if you don’t want him to.” He sent a resentful glare in Steven’s direction. The other Dom looked a little embarrassed, obviously only now realizing his mistakes.

“I don’t.” The young man shook his head violently.

“Go!” Harvey shot in Steven’s direction. “I’ll deal with this.”

Steven seemed ashamed and took a step toward the St. Andrews Cross where Harvey loosened one of the buckles of the wrist-straps with his right hand while holding the trembling body of the sub upright with his left arm firmly wrapped around a narrow chest. The skin with the sparse soft hair felt clammy under his fingers.

Harvey only gave him another glare and shook his head slightly.

“I’m sorry!” Steven managed before he left the alcove.

“He’s gone,” Harvey whispered in the young man’s ear. “I’m taking care of you now. So, be a good boy and try to stand up a little for me. Yeah, that’s it Sweetheart. Such a good boy.”

Harvey had been right in his assessment of the kid because the silly endearments and the soft tone of his voice seemed to calm him down enough to be able to lock his knees and hold himself upright so that Harvey could finish the unbuckling process.

The bartender whom Steven had informed of the situation before he left the club in shame, brought a soft blanket and the two men wrapped the slender form securely in the warm fabric.

The sub was beginning to shake violently, the overflow of adrenalin catching up with him and Harvey acted instinctively. He picked the boy up and shot a questioning glance at the bartender.

“There’s a free room at the end of the hall with a bed. Best take him there.”

Without awaiting a reply, Marc walked in said direction and Harvey followed him. When they arrived at the room, Harvey sat down on the bed and held the trembling sub firmly in his lap, guiding the young man’s head to rest on his left shoulder. He was well aware that every contact with the skin on his backside must hurt the boy, but right now it was even more important that the sub felt cared for, and cradling him in his lap like a little kid seemed to do the trick.

“You don’t have to do that,” Marc told him. “I could ask one of the other employees. Another Dom. Martin should arrive soon. He,” the barkeeper nodded towards the shaking sub, “is not your responsibility.”
A limp hand sneaked its way out of the folds of the blanket and long fingers curled into Harvey’s button-down shirt, issuing a death grip on the expensive fabric. Obviously the kid had a different opinion.

“I’m not going anywhere right now. It’s all right.” Harvey replied for Marc’s benefit as well as for the sub’s.

Marc nodded. “I’ll bring you a soda for the boy and maybe I find some snacks as well.”

When they were alone Harvey allowed himself a first good look at the boy’s face. His features were soft and he looked very young although he must be legal because the club was meticulous in checking ID. Long dark blond lashes framed the kid’s closed eyelids and on his plump pink lower lip Harvey could see the teeth marks his front teeth had made earlier when he so desperately had tried not to cry out. The skin hadn’t broken but from the deep indentations still visible it had been a close call. The lips were slightly parted and Harvey could see a glint of the white and slightly prominent front teeth just behind them, which made the boy, no, the young man, look even younger and more vulnerable. How Steven could have been so harsh with him escaped Harvey’s comprehension especially when the boy’s puppy-like appearance had quite the opposite effect on himself.

Suddenly Harvey longed to swipe his own tongue softly and slowly over the boy’s abused lip. He wanted to taste him, soothe him, make him moan but this time with want and not with hurt.

It was this very moment that the young sub chose to open his eyes. Suddenly bright blue orbs appeared as his eyelids fluttered open and for a moment Harvey couldn’t breathe. A wave of protectiveness washed over him at the sight of the beautiful puppy eyes.

The boy’s face took on a slightly confused expression as though he didn’t know where he were or what had happened.

“Oh, hi,” he whispered. “Who are you then?” The soft voice sounded slightly raw although during the scene the sub hadn’t made a sound. Perhaps the effort of keeping all the screams and moans in had put a strain on his vocal cords, as paradox as that may sound.

“I’m Harvey,” he answered softly. ”I’m going to take care of you for a little while if you allow me.” He tried to make his voice as reassuring as he could although he was a little shaken himself. He normally wasn’t prone to be affected by beautiful helpless subs like he was by this boy.

“Hi Harvey. I’m Mike.”

The sub smiled weakly and his head snuggled closer to Harvey’s neck which made Harvey sadly lose his focus on the blue eyes. The boy inhaled audibly as if he was sniffing Harvey and the cold tip of his nose brushed lightly over the Dom’s skin under his ear.

A soft knock on the door announced Marc’s return with the promised snacks. He set them at the table near the bed and after receiving a nod from Harvey left them alone again.

Harvey took the can of coke and guided the straw between Mike’s lips.

“Here. Take a sip. You need the sugar and the fluids.”

Mike leaned forward a little and his spiky hair brushed Harvey’s left cheek. Despite the stiff and messy appearance it felt soft on his skin and smelt faintly of coconut.

When Mike was done with the coke Harvey fed him a cookie. Crumps were falling on his shirt but the Dom didn’t care. He was now in full aftercare mode. After three chocolate-chip cookies Harvey
offered Mike the remaining drink and when Mike sighed contentedly and closed his eyes, the lawyer shifted them both so that they could lay side by side on the bed. Harvey on his back and Mike on his right side with his head resting on Harvey’s left shoulder, his left leg lying atop Harvey’s. He could hear Mike’s breathing even out as the sub drifted off.

Harvey turned his head to the side and watched the boy’s face, now relaxed in sleep. He was nearly nose to nose with the boy and his cookie-scented breath washed over Harvey’s face. A few cookie crumbs were nestled in one corner of his mouth and Harvey used his right thumb to brush them away. When the pad of his thumb touched Mike’s lip the young sub smiled in his sleep and damn, that sweet smile went directly to Harvey’s cock, which he tried to ignore to the best of his abilities.

To distract himself from his beginning arousal Harvey let his gaze drift over the pretty face of the young man beside him. He tried to commit as much of him to his memory as he could. There was this mole on the outer edge of his right eyebrow, obscured by the dark blond hairs, unlike Harvey’s own two, which sat prominently above his left eyebrow. The sub’s cheeks and jawline were covered in dark blond stubble which was softer than it looked as Harvey learned when he brushed his fingers over it. His hand came to rest on Mike’s neck, fingers curling towards the nape while his thumb caressed the pulse point just below his left ear.

Mike shifted slightly and leaned into the touch. The blanket slipped a little and Harvey could now make out where neck met shoulder, the sharp line of Mike’s clavicle under pale skin and right above it near the hollow of his throat another dark brown mole on the otherwise unblemished fair skin.

For a moment Harvey indulged in the fantasy of caressing him there with his lips, swiping his tongue along the sharp outline of the clavicle, kissing his way up to the pulse point and then teasing Mike’s mouth with the tip of his tongue till he would get another sweet smile as a reward.

Harvey closed his eyes briefly and shook his head. Not today, not under these circumstances. The boy, Mike, just had a terrible experience. He was vulnerable and easy to manipulate and it was his responsibility as a Dom to make sure that this sub wasn’t hurt any more than he already had been.

With this thought he firmly reminded himself that there was more that needed to be done. He disentangled the slender fingers of Mike’s hand from his shirt und slipped out of the bed. Mike looked close to waking up and Harvey knelt down beside the bed, gently petted his head, brushing his fingers through the soft strands of blond hair.

“Shhhhh. I need you to roll on your stomach now. You can sleep on though.”

“Harvey?”

“I’m right here, Sweetheart. But I need to take care of your back now or it’s too late and you will hurt very badly tomorrow.”

Mike shifted obediently onto his stomach but his eyes remained firmly shut. Despite his earlier experience the young man seemed to instinctively trust Harvey, a literal stranger, enough to give himself over into his caring hands without as much as another thought.

In the adjoining bathroom the Dom found the necessary supplies. He took the pump-flask of soothing lotion and a towel with him.

Back at the bed he slowly tried to untangle the blanket from Mike’s prone form without waking him up too much. Since Steven had gone to town on the whole of Mike’s backside from his shoulders down to his thighs right above the hollows of his knees, the Dom needed to expose the whole body of the sleeping kid. Without the blanket goosebumps immediately appeared on the red and irritated
Harvey silently cursed Steven for his carelessness. It was so obvious that Mike was new to this and needed to be eased into it. Instead, Steven had opted for throwing Mike into the deep end and had nearly drowned him in the process.

“Focus,” Harvey reminded himself. His anger for the other Dom changed nothing of the current situation and leaving the sub longer than necessary exposed to the cold would simply not do. He sighed and got on with the task at hand.

He poured a generous amount of the ointment into his hand and slowly spread it over his palms to warm it up. Then he applied it gently to Mike’s skin with feather light strokes so as not to irritate the skin any further or cause any more unnecessary pain.

When his hands first made contact with the sub’s shoulders, Mike tensed a little and made a small mewling sound but when the lotion developed its soothing effect the young man relaxed visibly and even gave a small contented sigh.

With sure even strokes Harvey covered all of the red skin with a thin layer of the lotion. Mike’s irritated skin felt almost hot under his hands and he kept his touches as light as possible. Before he went into the bathroom to wash his hands, he pulled the blanket back over the slim figure on the bed.

When he came back out of the bathroom Mike was snoring lightly. Harvey smiled involuntarily. The small sound was just so endearing and the relaxed expression on the young face was so much better than the hurt and confused one he had seen just half an hour before.

He longed to get back into bed, to hold the young man and keep him safe but there was one other thing he needed to take care of.

Harvey silently left the room, hoping that Mike would sleep until he came back.
The puppy made a mess

The main room of the club had filled a little in the time he had been away and Marc was busy pouring drinks. When he noticed Harvey he gave him a slight nod, indicating that he would come to him as soon as he had taken care of his customers. It took a couple more minutes but then another employee took over from Marc and both settled at a table in the corner of the room.

“How is he?” Marc wanted to know.

“Sleeping for now. A little raw around the edges though and I think he will feel his backside the next couple of days. What happened with Steven?”

Marc shrugged. “Told me that his sub safeworded, mumbled that you had sent him away and that he was sorry and then he left.”

“What a jerk.” Harvey shook his head slightly. “I hope the club revokes his membership. He should have seen the signs much earlier. If Mike hadn’t safeworded out I would have ended it anyway. It was clear that the boy had no idea what he had gotten himself into.”

Marc sighed. As an employee it wasn’t his place to criticize paying customers. And he himself had been long enough part of the scene, as a sub, that he knew a thing or three about how a Dom/sub relationship should work. So he tried to placate the other Dom’s anger.

“I know that you hold yourself to very high standards as a Dom and I would trust you with any sub I know, myself included, but don’t you think that the responsibility for a good scene does also, at least to some degree, lies with the sub? We don’t know what they negotiated beforehand, how well they knew each other. Perhaps it was a matter of miscommunication.”

Harvey shook his head. “Doesn’t matter. Mike’s body language was clear. Hell, I could see the signs and I didn’t know Mike from Adam, so Steven should’ve seen them too.”

Marc raised his hands in a gesture of surrender. “All I’m saying is that there are two sides to each story. Maybe you should ask the sub for his version.”

“Oh, I will. And then I’m going to kick Steven’s ass from here to next Monday.”

The barkeeper rolled his eyes. That was so typical Dom-behavior. “Just don’t do it on the club’s premises,” he muttered. “Would be a shame if you’d be banned, too.”

Harvey took on glance at his wristwatch.

“I need to get Mike’s clothes and then I see to it that he gets home safely.”

“I’ll fetch them for you. You can go back to the room. I can see that you are a little restless.”

Harvey nodded. He really felt a little on edge and wanted to get back to Mike as soon as possible.

“Thank you. I really think I should get back.”

“Wouldn’t have thought the damsel in distress shtick worked on you,” Marc mumbled but silently enough that Harvey chose to ignore the insolent remark.
Mike was just beginning to stir when Harvey opened the door. Harvey took a moment to watch him until he made his presence known.

“Hey Sleepyhead. Back to the land of the living?”

Mike yawned but when he tried to sit up he winced. The irritated and swollen skin on his back pulled at every movement.

Harvey sat down on the edge of the bed and carded his fingers slowly through the young man’s hair. He didn’t know why, but this sub brought out his touchy-feely side.

“How do you feel?”

“Like someone hit me with a bus. Repeatedly.” Mike sounded more alert which Harvey took as a good sign.

“Yeah. A round with a flogger and a riding crop will do that to you,” he replied dryly.

Mike managed to sit up beside Harvey and pulled the blanket around himself protectively.

He sighed a little and shook his head. “I need to apologize to Steven.”

Harvey turned his head so fast it nearly gave him whiplash.

“Excuse me? Has the flogger accidentally shaken something loose in your brain? Why on earth do you think you need to apologize?” he asked incredulous.

“Because I lied to him and then I bailed on him and used my safeword.” Mike sounded desolate.

“You should have used your safeword right at the beginning of the scene,” Harvey lectured. “But how did you lie to him? What’s that about?”

Mike just shrugged and refused to answer so Harvey got off the bed and knelt before Mike so that his face was right in front of Mike’s. Since the sub’s head was bowed he used his right hand to gently entice Mike to look him in the eyes. When his own dark brown eyes met Mike’s blue ones Harvey could detect an expression of shame in them.

“Hey. You can tell me. What happened?” he coaxed.

Mike drew in a shuddering breath. But then he seemed to find his resolve and he met Harvey’s eyes more firmly.

“Confession is good for the soul and all. At least that’s what my Grammy used to say. So, here goes.” He pulled his blanket a little tighter around himself as if it was armor. Harvey shifted backwards a little to give him more space but his hands rested lightly on Mike’s thighs not willing to loose contact with the distraught sub.

“I haven’t done anything like this before.” His voice sounded small.

“That much was obvious, Rookie.” Harvey tried to keep his tone light to encourage the younger man.

“Well, not to Steven. I met him online in a chatroom. Today was our first meeting. I’d told him that I have done this before, though.”
“Why would you do something so incredibly stupid?” Harvey was stunned. “How could you be so careless and irresponsible and … ,” he trailed off, the words escaping him.

“I wanted it so badly, had wanted it for so long now and in my mind it was so good. I… I didn’t know how to meet the right people and in the chatroom…. Everybody wrote how it was a pain in the ass to train a newbie and …. I just wanted to do it… to try it … I thought that I could handle it. I read everything about BDSM I could find, I’ve fantasized about it for ages and I just wanted to do it for real.”

Mike wiped his eyes furiously with the heels of his hands. Harvey softly gripped his wrists and stopped him. He then brought his hands up to cradle Mike’s face and carefully swiped away the tears that were running down his cheeks with his thumbs.

“Go on,” he encouraged the young man, careful to leave any sign of judgement out of his tone of voice.

“Steven chatted me up and I told him that I had done it before, many times. When he told me what he liked I was like … yeah, I like that too… I was a little scared but … I just wanted to try it. I thought that I would tell him in person when we met but somehow I never got round to that part. I was afraid he would call the whole thing off and… .”

“And you wanted it so badly that you threw caution to the wind,” Harvey concluded matter-of-factly.

“Yeah. And being high hadn’t helped much in the caution department either,” Mike admitted sheepishly.

Harvey gripped Mike’s face more firmly and looked him straight in the eyes, searching for any signs of intoxication.

“You are high? On what?” He couldn’t keep the anger he felt out of his voice any longer.

“Just weed. And I’m not high anymore. I think it wore off when the first strips of flesh fell off my back.”

“That’s not funny, Michael!” Harvey couldn’t help that his Dom voice took over but this was too serious to not stress the point.

“You never, not ever, enter into a scene high or inebriated. Never! Especially not when you’re trying something new with someone you’ve never been with before. Look at me and tell me that you understand!”

Mike had tried to avoid Harvey’s gaze but now his eyes shifted back to meet Harvey’s. As soon as they met, Harvey saw Mike’s pupils dilate and the sub scooted forward as if he tried to get off the bed to kneel in front of Harvey. Only the Dom’s firm hold of his face prevented Mike from slipping off the bed.

Although Harvey was pleased with the involuntary reaction he reminded himself firmly once more that now was not the time.

“How do you know that my real name is Michael?” the sub whispered stunned.

Harvey rolled his eyes so hard, it nearly gave him a headache.

“Everybody knows that Mike is short for Michael. But that’s so not the point right now. I want your
The pupils dilated even more and only a thin blue ring was visible between the deep black and the slightly bloodshot white in Mike’s eyes.

“I understand,” he whispered obediently. “Never enter a scene drunk or high. I’m sorry Sir. I will never do that again.”

Harvey sighed. Under different circumstances Mike would have been perfect for him. He seemed to be a natural submissive. Maybe he should start to frequent these chatrooms if diamonds in the rough like Mike were starting out there. But right now his own arousal at Mike’s near perfect reply needed to be ignored.

Luckily the knock at the door saved him from showing an inappropriate reaction, like shoving the boy onto the bed and fucking him through the mattress.

Marc came in and laid a bundle of clothes on the table near the bed. “Sorry it took so long. Steven came back and wanted to know how Mike was doing.”

At that, Mike tried to stand up and Harvey let go of his face, shifted his weight back to the balls of his feet and stood up himself to give the kid some room.

“Is he still here? Oh God. I need to apologize to him.”

Marc placed a hand on Mike’s shoulder to prevent him from leaving the room with only the blanket wrapped around himself toga style.

“No, he left again. But I assured him that you’re okay. He left his number if you want to call him though.” With that he placed a card on top of the bundle of clothes, looked over at Harvey and turned to leave the room.

“If you need me to call you a taxi just let me know,” he told Mike as an afterthought.

Before Mike could reply Harvey interrupted. “Thanks Marc, but that won’t be necessary. I will make sure that Mike gets home safely.”

Mike remained standing when he was alone with Harvey but he pulled the blanket even more securely around himself. Suddenly there was an awkwardness between them and Harvey decided to give the young man some space.

“If you’re feeling up to it you should get dressed,” he suggested and gestured towards the bundle of clothes. “I can stay and help you if you’re still shaky.”

When Mike stayed silent he added, “Or I can wait at the bar if you’d rather be alone.”

Mike wouldn’t look at him. “I think I can manage on my own, but thanks,” he mumbled.

Harvey nodded. “Take your time.”

**********

The young man appeared 10 Minutes later fully clothed in apparently cheap jeans, a thin t-shirt with
a frayed hem and a sweat-jacket. He was still moving slowly and carefully and Harvey was glad the he’d had the foresight to bring his car round to the front of the club. He knew that every unnecessary step and movement would hurt Mike.

Without another word he took Mike by the hand, nodded a thank-you in the direction of Marc and guided the sub out of the club. Only when he beeped his car open with the remote Mike dug his heels in.

“You don’t need to drive me home. My bike is over there.”

Harvey turned, a puzzled expression on his face. Surely he must have heard wrong.

“Your what is where?”

“My bike. Over there.” Mike gestured vaguely toward a lamp post to which indeed a mountain bike was padlocked.

“You biked here?”

“Yes. Why not? I live in Brooklyn. Do you have any idea how expensive a cab fare is these days?” His voice sounded defensive.

Harvey couldn’t believe it. He stepped closer towards the young man and tilted his head slightly to the side.

“So let me recap.” His voice had adopted a slightly mocking tone like one would assume when talking to an imbecile. “You thought it was a good idea to bike from Brooklyn to a BDSM club in Manhattan, where you wanted to get your ass spanked by a stranger you met online and lied to regarding your proclivities and experience and after that you wanted to ride your bike back home.” His right hand lashed out and smacked Mike’s sore bottom, not really hard, but it made the sub jump and whimper in pain nevertheless. “Please tell me you see what’s wrong with this harebrained scheme of yours.”

Before Mike could speak, Harvey went on.

“Get your bike. I think it will fit in the trunk.” He saw Mike open his mouth, probably to protest once more.

“I’m not asking. I’m telling. Now be a good boy and do as you’re told.” He put the full power of his Dom-voice behind the words and Mike snapped his mouth shut before he hurried to obey Harvey.

They had to borrow a blanket from the club to wrap around the bike to prevent it from scratching the car, but together they managed to fit the bike into the trunk even if they had to secure the lid with Mike’s belt to keep it from popping open.

When Mike took his seat beside Harvey he winced slightly. Harvey shot him a look and shook his head.

“Biking home.” He scoffed. “Really, Rookie?”

Mike chose to ignore him. He knew he had been stupid. He could see that now. But that didn’t mean that he liked Harvey’s snide remarks. And after all, it had been Mike’s weed-brain that had come up with his travel arrangements. He had been so nervous when the meeting with Steven at the club approached that he’d smoked a pipe to calm his nerves. After that, it had seemed the most natural thing to bike to Manhattan. After all, Mike was a bike-messenger and biking his natural mode of
transportation. In hindsight he should have known better.

Harvey steered his Lexus in the general direction of Brooklyn Bridge.

“Care to share an address with me?” he asked after several minutes of silence.

For a moment it seemed like Mike would decline but then he gave in and mumbled his address.

“Just tell me where to go. I don’t make my money as a cabbie.”

Besides the directions Mike gave they drove in silence. When they arrived a Mike’s flat Harvey killed the engine but stayed seated. The tension was increasing by the second and Mike couldn’t take it anymore.

His hand reached for the door lock but suddenly Harvey took hold of his wrist.

“What you did to Steven was unfair, you know.” His voice didn’t sound angry, only like he was stating a fact.

“I know.”

“You don’t have to tell me what you told him, but maybe it would help if you talked about it.”

Mike inhaled shakily. “I’m so ashamed.” Harvey could hear him fight the tears back.

Harvey’s thumb drew slow circles on the back of the kid’s left hand while his fingers were still curled lightly around his wrist. The touch was meant to reassure him not to hold him in place.

“Tell me anyway.”

Mike nodded but remained silent. The lawyer didn’t press the matter, just waited while the boy struggled with his conscience.

“When he, Steven, told me he liked pain play I said I liked it too although I was scared because I never even had someone spank me. I mean, I fantasized about it but…” Mike trailed off helplessly.

Harvey nodded but otherwise stayed silent.

“I even told him that I was into roleplay, that I liked to play the newbie and that he just should do his thing and pay no attention if I acted out a little. That I could handle it if he was rough, liked it even.”

Harvey scoffed. He just couldn’t help himself. “And he fell for that?”

Mike shrugged. “I can be very convincing.”

“Not really. I think that Steven is just very gullible. Anyway, your little ploy backfired epically.”

Mike only nodded.

“I don’t need to tell you, that what you did was stupid, unfair, dangerous, selfish and just wrong amongst a plethora of other things.”

“That’s a lot of adjectives.”

“Not the best of times to get lippy, Kid”, Harvey chided.

Mike sighed and rubbed his right hand through his hair which made it stand on end even more.
“Sorry. It’s just something I do when I’m nervous. I can’t help it.”

Harvey sighed too. “It’s not entirely your fault, you know. Steven should’ve been able to read you better. A good Dom should be adept at reading body language. It was obvious that you were in over your head.”

“I still need to apologize,” the boy whispered.

“That’s true. And do it tonight. If Steven is just a little like me, he will need to hear from you that you’re all right. Don’t make him wait. That would be cruel.”

Harvey patted his hand reassuringly before he let go. Mike nodded once and pushed the door open.

The lawyer helped him get his bike and accompanied him towards the entrance of the building. Before Mike could push his key into the lock Harvey waved a cardboard rectangle, stuck between his index and middle finger, in front of the kid’s face.

“Here’s my card. Do me a favor and call me tomorrow. Just let me know how you’re doing. I’ll worry if you don’t.”

Mike’s eyes met Harvey’s for the last time under the dim light of a street lantern.

“Okay. I wouldn’t want that.” Mike turned towards the door but stillled once again, his head hanging down, eyes fixed firmly on the tips of his ratty sneakers.

“Thanks Harvey,” he mumbled barely audible. “Really, I mean it. You were great.”

Without awaiting a reaction Mike pushed the door open and vanished inside, dragging his bike with him.
An inappropriate crush

Chapter Summary

The days after they first met from Harvey’s POV. Short chapter but more is soon to come.

After Harvey got home that night, he couldn’t help but think about the kid. How he had looked when he had kneeled on the floor at Steven’s feet. How his round but firm butt had quivered under the harsh lashes of the flogger. How his fair skin had taken on a pink hue. How it had felt to hold the trembling body of the boy in his arms.

Harvey tried all his usual tricks to relax and calm his mind but when booze and music failed him and he couldn’t concentrate on work either, he gave in. With practiced and efficient movements he jerked himself off in the shower, a vision of Mike before his eyes and his name on his lips as he spent himself against the tiled wall.

This maneuver only half worked because at 3 a.m., when he awoke with a start, he was fully erect again and couldn’t get rid of the image of a young beautiful sub with bright blue eyes until he got himself off again with only a few quick strokes of his hand. I’m behaving like a teenager with a crush. Somehow, that kid had gotten under his thick skin and it seemed that he was there to stay.

The next day just before noon Mike stayed true to his promise and called Harvey. He sounded hesitant and ashamed and the call ended just after a few minutes. Other than assuring the lawyer that he was all right albeit a bit sore and that he had called Steven and tried to make amends, they didn’t talk much.

Harvey, who was at work, didn’t try to prolong their talk when Mike so clearly felt uncomfortable talking to him but he planned to call Mike back in the evening to get a little more information about how the talk with Steven had worked out. And of course there was one other agenda he had.

Harvey intended to find out how Mike felt about the whole BDSM-thing after his awful initiation. Maybe he still wanted to experiment. And who knew into which kind of terrible situations the kid would get himself on his quest of educating himself on the finer points of being a sub. Better to make sure that his next venture into the world of BDSM would be more enjoyable. Surely, as a responsible Dom he had no other choice but to take the kid under his wing. That’s your cock talking, his reasonable side of the brain was chiding, but Harvey chose to ignore it.

When he came home he was full of anticipation but instead of immediately giving in to his urges, he changed into a soft Henley and black sweatpants, got himself a beer from the fridge and put on a Lee Fields’ record. Than he settled down on the sofa and dialed Mike’s phone.

The call went straight to voicemail.

“Hey Mike. It’s Harvey. Just wanted to hear how you’re doing. Please give me a call.”

After the anticlimactic phone call Harvey got his laptop and worked a little more. When he finally shut it down, it was after midnight and Mike still hadn’t called him back. Since it didn’t seem likely that he would, Harvey got into the shower, once more jerked himself off to the image of Mike in
front of his inner eye and went to bed.

The next few day’s Harvey tried to get hold of Mike every evening and every evening, after leaving another message on the kid’s voicemail, he didn’t get the one phone call he was waiting for.

After 4 days Harvey was fed up and decided to change tactics. He got the phone number he needed from the club and called Steven in the evening. He was hoping that the other Dom had another way to reach Mike but he was sorely disappointed.

“Sorry, but I only have the one phone number of him.”

“What about the chatroom you met in. Could I try to reach him there? What’s his screen-name?”

“Sorry man, but that will not work either.” Steven sounded truly apologetic. “After the stunt he pulled I had him banned.”

Shit. “When was the last time you talked to him?”

“Late that evening after you had dropped him off. Look man, he told me how you took care of him and I’m truly grateful to you. I should have done it but after I realized that he had tricked me… anyway, thanks man.”

“Don’t mention it. And I need to apologize to you too for all the names I called you.”

Steven sounded confused. “You didn’t… .”

“Not to your face.”

“Well, if I had really been the asshole you suspected me to be, I’d had earned it, so no harm done,” Steven conceded.

After they ended the call Harvey stood a long time in the dark living room and just watched the lights of the city flicker below in the streets as life went on in the Big Apple. Under normal circumstances that sight of the busy city soothed his mind but tonight he felt restless and ill at ease. He needed to do something. Waiting passively for Mike to call him back was just not in his nature.

He quickly changed into some dark slacks and a grey button down, got his leather jacket and took the elevator down to the garage. Luckily he had the satnav in his car guide him from Mike’s flat back to his condo the other night, so he just had to program the satnav to reverse the direction to find his way back to the kid’s place.

When Harvey arrived in the not so respectable part of the city he parked a couple of doors down from Mike’s building. For a moment he questioned his own sanity of stalking, yes stalking, a young man who obviously didn’t want to talk to him. But his lawyer-brain made the argument that it was only natural for him to make sure that the kid was okay and didn’t suffer from sub-drop. So, he wasn’t stalking, he was just being a responsible Dom.

Satisfied with this reasoning, he got out of the car before some semblance of sanity could catch up with him once more.

He rang the top-doorbell with the name-tag “Ross” since Mike had told him that he lived on the 4th floor, but there was no reaction. He took a few steps back to watch the windows, but they remained dark.

Well, it was a little after 10 p.m. and maybe Mike was out. He was a young guy after all so it would
be only natural for him to go out with friends and not stay in and pine after a random guy he met at a
class.

But maybe he should ring one of the other apartments, speak to the kid's neighbors and ask them if
the kid was all right.

Yeah, that wouldn’t be creepy at all!

Harvey shook his head and went back to his car. He seriously needed to get a grip. He promised
himself that tonight was it. This would not go any further. He would get into his car, drive home and
forget about the damn kid. No more voicemails, no more drive-bys, no more jerking himself off to
the memory of blue puppy eyes.

He was just about to start his car and get the hell out of Dodge when a taxi stopped in front of Mike’s
building and the young man stepped out. Before Harvey could react a blonde girl followed and the
two of them made a bee-line to Mike’s front door. They laughed and Mike seemed relaxed and
happy. He unlocked the door, ushered the blonde in and followed. After a couple of minutes the
lights behind the windows in the top floor went on and briefly two silhouettes were visible before the
curtains were drawn.

Harvey started his car and headed home.
And it begins...

Chapter Summary

Mike and Harvey finally meet again. Mike takes his first step to become Harvey's sub.

Chapter Notes

I tend to switch between POVs and I hope it's not too annoying and confusing. I apologize for all errors regarding to spelling and grammar. English is not my first language and if I've made some serious blunders, please be so kind and point them out to me so I can correct them.

See the end of the chapter for more notes.

The present day.

Mike made quick work with the industrial vacuum cleaner. If he could keep up his pace, he would be done with his assigned floor in about 30 minutes and could finally go home and cram a few hours of sleep in before he had to get up for his day job.

The cleaning gig wasn’t ideal since it meant that he had to go to bed early, sleep a couple of hours, get up before midnight, work a few hours and then go back to sleep for another couple of hours before he had to roam the streets of Manhattan on his bike.

It was only his second week on this new job but he already could feel the strain it put on his social life and on his mood. Right now his life really sucked.

But his Grammy needed better care and all he could come up with to get money at short notice, despite selling drugs for Trevor – or robbing a bank -, was this job. He would keep looking for something else though because cleaning, really not his style.

And the fact that he had to clean the offices of a law-firm didn’t make it any better. Until a couple of years ago it had been his dream to work in a law-firm, but now, not so much anymore, at least not in his recent capacity. Somehow, dragging a trash-bag behind him as he was walking the hallway had never featured in his dream.

**********

He’d always wanted to become a lawyer as far as he could think back, but some poor judgement on his side, and the fact that he could never say no to Trevor and his harebrained schemes to make a quick buck, had ended that dream. He’d been kicked out of Columbia for selling a math-test he’d
memorized -Trevor’s idea - to the dean’s daughter - again Trevor’s idea - before he could finish his degree. The full ride to Harvard that he’d had in his pocket had been taken away from him as well. The dean had made sure of that by just one single phone-call, as he’d told Mike with a satisfied grin before having him escorted from campus.

One poor decision had transformed him from the local wunderkind into an outcast. Now, without a scholarship, he couldn’t even afford a local college and much less a respectable law school. He had been kicked into a different life in a matter of seconds and he had nobody to blame for this but himself… and Trevor.

Mike sighed inwardly. Better not think about Trevor and how they’d fought because Mike wouldn’t make a drop for him at a fancy hotel. But a suitcase full of weed was too hot for Mike’s taste. He had to take care of his Grammy and he couldn’t very well do that if he were rotting in prison for a drug deal gone bust. Although he was quite sure that his Grammy would die of shame anyway when she’d learn that her grandson was a drug-dealer.

And now Trevor was mad at him for not helping him out. Deep in his heart Mike knew that Trevor was an anchor weighing him down – that’s what his Grammy had told him and she was always right-, but he just couldn’t cut his childhood friend loose. They shared so much history.

The day Mike moved in with his Grammy after his parents had died, he’d met Trevor. Mike had been a small scraggly kid with huge anger-management issues and as soon as his suitcase had been unpacked and his Grammy had sent him out to look around, Mike had picked a fight with the meanest kid in the neighborhood.

Tony Rizzo, the one kid that everyone gave a wide berth. Mike hadn’t known and wouldn’t have cared anyway. He’d been so angry and unhappy and furious at life itself and when the bully had made a rude comment about Mike’s t-shirt (he loved this Batman t-shirt) he had just snapped. Hollering out a war cry, he had flung himself towards the kid, fists flailing like a deranged windmill, only to be knocked out by a meaty fist making solid contact with his lip and pinned to the ground by sweaty hands. But Mike wouldn’t stop fighting, wouldn’t give in and lay still. He’d spit the kid in the face and as soon as he’d seen the expression in Tony’s eyes when the bloodied spittle ran down the bully's cheek, he’d known that he was done for. Not wanting to see what would happen next, Mike had pressed his eyelids firmly shut and waited for the pain.

Instead, he’d heard a strange brassy sound accompanied by a loud “Ouch!” and suddenly he wasn’t pinned down anymore and another sweaty hand had grabbed his, dragged him up and then he was running full tilt after a dark haired boy. Later Mike had learned that Trevor had hit Tony with a trashcan-lid, which really was, at least in Mike’s opinion, rather fitting.

From this day on Trevor was his best friend and they’d shared a lot of milestones.

Basically all of Mike’s first-times were connected to Trevor.

The first time he’d cheated on a test had been for Trevor. It had been back in 5th grade and Trevor had been too lazy to study for math and panicked when he’d realized that he would fail. He’d reasoned with Mike that if his parents were mad because of the test, Mike wouldn’t be allowed to come over anymore – naturally Mike had caved.

The first time he got drunk he was 14 and Trevor had figured out how to break into the liquor cabinet of his parents. Trevor’s parents had been celebrating their wedding-anniversary and wanted to spend the night at a fancy hotel. True to his nature Trevor had come up with a plan to have some fun.
They had told Trevor’s parents Trevor would stay at Mike’s and Grammy that Trevor’s parents were okay with Mike having a sleep-over at Trevor’s place. Of course, they’d forgone the part where Trevor’s parents would spend the night away. The two boys had gorged themselves on Tequila, Don Julio, and then taken turns throwing up. How they’d never got caught was something Mike still couldn’t quite fathom. That he still liked to get drunk on Tequila was another miracle.

Trevor’s parents had found out about the Tequila, even so the boys had filled it up with water so it seemed untouched, at their next dinner-party. Trevor had been grounded for that but never ratted on Mike.

The first time Mike had kissed a girl when he was 15, Trevor had been involved too, although in a more passive capacity and not during the event itself. Mike had been secretly hung up on Gloria Miller for month but was too shy to take actions. Trevor had orchestrated their meeting under the bleachers beside the football field. It was only later, after his crush had burned itself out, that Trevor confessed that he had bribed Gloria with some weed to do the –not really – nasty with Mike.

The first time he got high when he was 16 had been with Trevor again and incidentally this was also the first time he’d gotten arrested.

The first time he’d kissed a guy had also been with Trevor, drunk again on Tequila. They’d never talked about it after and Mike was too much chicken to ever mention it. But that was when he’d realized that he was into guys too.

Usually, all the first times he’d had with Trevor were somewhat tainted, if only in hindsight. He secretly had begun to think, that his tendency to let Trevor persuade him in doing dumb stuff was the one weakness he needed to get rid of in order to get some semblance of sanity back into his life. The thing was, Mike liked it when he was given orders, when Trevor made him do stuff. It made him feel… good. How sick was this?

So he tried to stay away from Trevor and make his own decisions, but somehow had managed to screw that up as well as his adventure with Steven was testimony to.

His life really sucked.

**********

When the cubicles in the hallway were done, he made his way to the corner office. When he’d seen the name on the glass wall besides the door on his first night on the job, Mike had smiled involuntarily because it had brought back the memory of the man who had been so nice to him that evening when he had behaved so stupidly. He still could’ve kicked himself when he thought back at that day but on the other hand, he couldn’t really regret his actions since he wouldn’t have met Harvey, the Dom, his Dom, otherwise.

He had thought about Harvey a lot in the days after his ill-fated venture in the Dom/sub world. He wanted to call him a couple of times, but after their phone call the next day everything seemed so awkward between them. And then he had lost his phone and it made Mike realize that he really was a screw-up, with or without Trevor, and Harvey had been only kind to him because he was so pathetic. So he tried to forget Harvey, forget about the whole BDSM-thing, and get on with his life – sans Trevor.
He even met a couple of times with Jenny, just as friends though, because even if she had broken up with Trevor, again, and he and Trevor weren’t currently on speaking terms, again, starting something with her would’ve still felt wrong.

And then there was this guy with this beautiful dark brown eyes, the self-assured posture and the voice that went straight to Mike’s dick, on whom he was secretly hung up.

Not that he would admit to any of that. He hadn’t told Jenny about his escapade. She didn’t know about his kinky interests, didn’t even know that he was into guys too and he wasn’t sure she would understand.

He didn’t understand it himself. He just knew that he wanted someone to belong to. Someone who kept him in check, who would guide him, take care of him, take responsibility so that he wouldn’t have to and protect him from his own stupidity. And maybe even someone who could make his over-active brain shut up for a few moments every now and then.

That was why he had wanted to try pain play when Steven had suggested it. While he was educating himself by reading everything he could find about BDSM, he came across this article which explained in a scientific way why pain would release all sorts of natural chemicals to the brain, hormones like endorphin, dopamine and so on. And apparently these hormones could create some sort of natural high. After that, he specifically searched for blogs written by subs who described their experiences with this phenomena called subspace. It sounded very intriguing and peaceful and that was why Mike had agreed when Steven had brought up this particular interest. Sadly, the reality hadn’t quite matched his fantasy.

Mike just hoped the yearning he still felt would finally go away because he had no idea how to meet another Dom since he had been banned from the chatroom. Not that he could blame Steven. But it seemed as though word had gotten around the community and he had been red-flagged at a couple of other web-sides as well. And his experience with Steven had taught him anyway that it wasn’t enough to meet any Dom, it needed to be the right Dom.

**********

Mike shook his head and tried to focus on the task at hand. He needed to get a move on if he wanted to get any sleep before having to ride his bike for 8 to 10 hours.

The guy who owned this office had great taste in music. Mike knew that he wasn’t allowed to touch anything that he needn’t touch in order to get his work done. But since he worked this floor alone and he had a photographic memory and could put back everything so that nobody would ever know, he had indulged himself a little and perused the guy’s record collection in the past couple of days.

He always cleaned this office last and then sat on the sofa, sometimes playing with the baseball from the lawyers desk whilst letting the music wash over him before he packed up and went home. One night, he even fell asleep on the couch and had woken up just in time when he heard the first associates shuffling in at 6 a.m. Sitting on this expensive and oh so comfortable couch, playing with the sports-mementos on display, which were surely more valuable than Mike could make in a year, in both his jobs, and listening to the music had become his favorite part of the day.

When he pushed the glass door open now, he could hear soft jazz playing on the turntable even so his earphones were still sticking in his ears, playing some hip-hop-song from his playlist. He shut his
music off and pulled the earphones out. Yep, someone was definitely moving in the corner of the
dark office and Mike's first thought was, that he was interrupting a burglary in progress. Instead of
running away he once again made a stupid decision.

“If you are a robber I will have you know that I am armed. With a big gun.” He raised the nozzle of
the vacuum cleaner and hoped that it would pass for the barrel of a gun in the dim light.

Suddenly the lamp in the corner of the office was switched on and Mike could see the man lounging
in the chair.

“You could at least try to sound more convincing,” Harvey mocked him.

Mike let go of the nozzle.

“Wha... ?” His mouth dropped open and Harvey had a hard time to keep a straight face.

“You’re catching flies, Kid,” he joked. “Whom did you expect? Santa Clause? The Easter-bunny?”

“What are you doing here?” Mike’s voice sounded incredulous.

He couldn’t believe that the guy he’d fantasized about during his jerk-off sessions for the last couple
of weeks now sat in front of him in this office. Maybe the last joint he had smoked had been bad. But
this didn’t seem like a bad trip.

Harvey looked different than he remembered. Less relaxed and more like a businessman. He was
wearing dark grey pinstriped suit-pants and a matching vest, the sleeves of his light-blue dress-shirt
rolled up to his elbows but not messy like Mike would have done it, but carefully folded up so as not
to wrinkle the clearly expensive shirt more than necessary. The wide dark blue tie around his neck
had been loosened a little and Mike could see that the top-button of the shirt had been opened.
Harvey’s dark hair was slicked back with a lot of hair-product but one strand of hair had gotten loose
and hung down, brushing the man’s forehead. His eyes had dark circles underneath and he gave of
the over-all expression of bone-tiredness, despite his teasing tone of voice.

Harvey pointed to the files in his lap. “Working late.”

“But you… why… here... ?”

“Are you having a stroke? I seem to remember that you are normally at least a little bit more
coherent, even after you’ve been thoroughly flogged.”

Mike simply shook his head and flapped his arms like a confused penguin.

“You do realize that this office has my name on the door?”

Mike took a couple of steps back and actually looked at the name and then back at Harvey who
raised an eyebrow mockingly.

“I gave you my card. It had my name on it as well as my phone number.” His voice sounded like he
was talking to a simpleton.

Mike conjured the image up in front of his inner eyes. Harvey was right, of course he was. Mike just
had never properly looked at the surname, only at the number.

“I didn’t realize… ,“ he tried to explain.

“So you haven’t infiltrated the cleaning service of Pearson Hardman for the sole purpose of stalking
“What?” Mike shouted and he opened his eyes so wide, his eyebrows almost met his hairline. “No! You have to believe me. I didn’t.” He looked close to panicking.

Now Harvey really cracked up. He couldn’t help himself. The image of the flustered kid who was so easy to rile up was just too funny.

When Mike saw Harvey’s face light up and laughter lines appear around the brown eyes he knew that Harvey had only kidded. For a moment he had thought that Harvey would complain to his supervisor and he would lose this job and his Grammy would be kicked out of her nursing home.

After a moment of just smiling at each other, Mike with relief and Harvey with real fondness, Harvey stood up and went to Mike. He wanted to hug him but instead laid a hand on the younger man’s shoulder and squeezed lightly, just a slight flexing of his fingers.

“So,” the lawyer ventured, “how have you been?”

Mike blushed a little at the all of a sudden too close proximity of his man-crush.

Harvey took it for discomfort and backed off a little. He gestured invitingly towards his sofa while he himself took one of the leather chairs so as to not crowd the kid.

Mike slowly sat down, unsure where to look. “Fine,” he mumbled shyly. “And you?”

Harvey tried to catch the kid’s eyes but he seemed to have developed a sudden interest in the cleanliness of his fingernails and wouldn’t look up.

“I left you a couple of voice mails. I was worried about you.” Harvey tried to keep his tone as neutral a possible.

“Sorry. I lost my phone.”

Harvey exhaled slowly. “I see.” His voice sounded a little sad and Mike looked up. For a brief moment he could see the sadness in the eyes of the lawyer before the professional mask slid back on. Mike didn’t get it. Why would Harvey be sad?

“What do you see?” he asked instead.

“You haven’t lost my number, have you?”

“No. And even if I had, I would’ve remembered it anyway.” Mike dug himself even deeper without realizing it.

“So you didn’t call me again because you didn’t want to,” Harvey concluded, voice carefully devoid of any emotion.

Mike winced. Harvey couldn’t be more wrong. He slowly shook his head while he tried to catch Harvey’s eyes.

“I wanted to,” he admitted. “But, I’m such a screw up. And you were so angry because of everything I had done.” He shrugged, unsure if he should elaborate but Harvey stayed silent.

“I got it all wrong. I wanted it, the submission-thing, so much and I got about it all wrong. I can still remember how pissed you were when I told you about the lie and the weed and everything.” He trailed off and nibbled at his lower lip as if he needed a few moments to formulate a thought.
“The thing is though,” he continued hesitantly, “I don’t regret it.” He looked bashful and a blush crept over his face and down to his throat. “I know I should, but if I hadn’t done it I never would have met you. And I can’t regret that.”

A small hopeful smile spread over Harvey’s lips. “I can’t regret that either, Puppy.” He leaned forwards a little and placed a hand on Mike’s thigh, watching the kid’s reaction as he did.

As soon as the palm of his hand made contact with the grubby jeans and the warmth of his hand radiated through the rough fabric Mike’s pupils dilated ever so slightly. Harvey noticed it. Of course he noticed.

“What have you given up on your quest or are you still interested in becoming a sub?”

Once again, Mike averted his eyes and the blush on his cheeks deepened, crept further down his throat towards his chest and vanished under the frayed neckline of his tee.

Harvey would not allow any kind of avoidance though. He flexed his fingers on the boy’s thigh slightly to get his attention.

“Michael.” Harvey chose the formal version of Mike’s name deliberately because of Mike’s reaction to it the other night. This seemed to push one of the kid’s buttons and Harvey wanted to stress the significance of his demand. “Please look at me. This is important.” He didn’t raise his voice but the playfulness from before was gone and had given way to an almost palpable determination in the lawyer’s tone of voice.

Mike instantly obeyed. How could he not? He dragged his eyes up to meet Harvey’s. The Dom could see how difficult it was for the sub to maintain eye contact and gave him a little encouraging half smile along with another squeeze of his fingers.

“Good boy,” he praised and Mike’s pupils dilated even more. Harvey was sure that by now Mike must be sporting at least a semi but he didn’t want to break eye contact to confirm his suspicion.

“Now. Please answer my question.”

Mike licked his lips once more before nibbling at his lower lip briefly and Harvey memorized this as one of the kid’s tells.

“I still want to try it,” he admitted nervously. Mike could feel that they were on the brink of something.

“Are you not afraid after what happened at the club?”

Mike shook his head decisively. “No. I realize now what I did wrong. I lied and I was high and I will never be so stupid again. But I think that with the right Dom it would feel great to submit. Peaceful and safe.”

“And who would be the right Dom for you? How should this Dom be?” Harvey very nearly held his breath. This was it. The moment of truth. And Mike took the leap of faith.

“Ever since this evening I think of you as my Dom, Sir.” Another little biting of the lip but then the kid found his resolve. “Please, Sir. I think you would be perfect for me.”

Harvey exhaled slowly. “And why is that, Puppy? I need to be sure that you really thought this through.”
Mike smiled slightly, suddenly all he wanted nearly at the tips of his fingers, if only he could get his answer right. “Because, every time you call me Puppy or Good Boy or Kid it just goes straight to my cock like a pavlovian reaction and all I want is to make you proud of me, be good for you. Be your good sub. I get into trouble all the time and I think if had someone who would take care of me, who would hold me responsible for my actions, maybe then I wouldn’t screw up so much.” He took a shaking breath. “And I trust you. You said it yourself. A good Dom should be able to read their sub and I have the feeling that you can read me like a book. I can’t hide from you, can’t bullshit you. And you were so kind to me when you didn’t need to. I just know that you would never hurt me… unless I wanted you to, that is.”

“What do you want from me?” Although inside, Harvey was dancing a little victory dance, his pokerface did not waver once.

“I want you to teach me how to be a good sub for you. I want you to give me orders. To take care of me. I want to belong to you, to be yours.”

This kid was really almost perfect.

“There will be a lot of rules if we’re really going to do this.”

“I know.”

“I will make you work for it, you know.”

Mike smiled a little. “I didn’t expect you to give it up for free,” he quipped lightly before he caught himself. He expected a reprimand from Harvey for his lip but instead, the lawyer broke out into a huge grin.

“For free,” he whispered as though deep in thought. Then he seemed to catch himself. “Normally I wouldn’t let you get away with such behavior but your quip just gave me an idea how I could win my case, so I let your misbehavior slide for once. Don’t get used to it, though or you will be a very sorry sub indeed.”

“Yes, Sir. Thank you.” Mike sounded relieved.

“Now, sadly I have to work a little since my case is rather time-sensitive.”

Mike nodded and took this statement as his dismissal. He tried to stand up when Harvey’s hand squeezed his thigh almost painfully.

“Have I told you to get up, Puppy?” If his boy wanted rules, he would give him rules.

Mike took a shaky breath. Suddenly he felt giddy. They were really doing this. Harvey was really doing this to him, with him.

“No, Sir.” He shook his head slightly and looked Harvey in the eye.

“I will need to work for at least an hour. If you really want to become my sub you will do exactly as I tell you. Tonight we will start slow. We will do nothing that will require negotiations. But don’t think that it will be easy.” Harvey looked firmly into Mike’s eyes. “Do you still want to proceed?”

“Yes.”

“What was that?”
“Yes, Sir.”

Harvey nodded satisfied. “Go to the desk and fetch me my laptop.”

Mike stood immediately and did as he was told. When he handed Harvey the computer the lawyer set it down on the coffee table in front of him. Mike remained standing beside Harvey’s chair, unsure how to proceed.

“For tonight we will work with the color system. Once we do this more often, you can choose your own safewords if you want to. Now, do you know how the color system works?”

Mike just nodded and Harvey rolled his eyes.

“I need your verbal confirmation, Mike.”

“Yellow is to slow down and red is to stop, Sir.”

“And green?” Harvey prompted. Mike seemed a little confused. He hadn’t read anything about green so he took an educated guess.

“When everything is good?” The kid’s voice sounded hesitant, as tough he was afraid to fail at a task.

“That’s right,” Harvey reassured him and then elaborated. “Especially in the beginning I will ask you regularly what your color is. Like you said before, I’m pretty good at reading people but nevertheless, doing things this way prevents us both from misjudging a situation and it forces you to think about what you really feel at any given situation. So, what’s your color right now?”

“Green, Sir.”

Harvey nodded satisfied. “I want you to undress as far as you feel comfortable. Don’t try to impress me. I will know when you’re uncomfortable so I want you to really think about it before you take off your clothes. This is not a test. Whatever you decide is good.”

Mike nodded his head again and caught Harvey’s expression just in time. “Yes, Sir.”

He toed of his sneakers and his socks and pulled his t-shirt over his head. Then his hands nestled at the button of his jeans but didn’t open it. Once again his teeth worried at the pink flesh of his lower lip.

“That’s enough for now,” Harvey helped him out of his predicament. “Like I said, there is no right or wrong.”

Mike seemed relieved. He had no idea what was going to happen and suddenly his over-imaginative brain conjured up a plethora of different scenarios in light-speed. He wanted this, wanted to be Harvey’s sub, so badly and yet he was afraid of what would happen, in which direction this would go.

Maybe Harvey would spank him, bend him over the desk or his knee and hit his ass with a wooden ruler. He still remembered the pain on his butt from his session with Steven and since he needed to be on his bike in a couple of hours, he would rather not be on the receiving end of Harvey’s arm. That was the main reason for his hesitation to take off his jeans. If there was a spanking coming, he would have at least two layers of clothes to make it more bearable. On the other hand, Harvey had told him that they would do something simple, something that wouldn’t require negotiation. Surely even a spanking would need that.
Maybe Harvey would do something sexual with him instead. Order him to suck his cock or even fuck him here in this office with the glass walls. Sure, Mike was attracted to Harvey, very much so as his latest jerk-off sessions were testimony to, but his experience with male sex partners was a little limited.

When they still had been in college Trevor and he had jerked each other off one night when they had killed a bottle of tequila all by themselves (not the night of their kiss though, that had been earlier) and on another occasion there had been a little making out with another guy he’d met at a bar, but Mike had never actually been fucked by another man. He wanted to do it with Harvey, he really did, but not like this, not casually in Harvey’s office.

Harvey could see that Mike was on the cusp of panicking. He knew that he needed to be patient and give him all the help he would require because he was, after all, a rookie.

He stood up slowly and approached the now slightly quivering figure. Mike was once more looking down at his feet and Harvey used his right hand to lift Mike’s chin so that he could look him in the eyes.

“Color?” Harvey asked softly, when their eyes finally met.

“Green?”

Harvey sighed and arched an eyebrow mockingly. “Wanna try again, Kid?”

Be honest and think about how you feel. Mike swallowed audibly. “Yellow, Sir. I’m sorry.”

Harvey took another step forward and pulled Mike into his arms. His hands firmly stroked the kid’s warm skin on his back and after a few moments he felt the young man relax into his embrace.

“Tell me what’s going on in that mind of yours.” Although the Dom’s voice was barely a whisper in Mike’s ear, the sub knew an order when he heard one.

“I’m a little afraid because I don’t know where this is going. I don’t think that I can take a spanking or something like this today. And I really want to have sex with you because you’re hot and really sexy but I haven’t done it before and I’m really nervous and I don’t want to do it now.”

Harvey’s hands continued to rub soothing circles on Mike’s back. He couldn’t help smiling when Mike told him that he thought he was sexy although Harvey knew that he was considered handsome. “Thank you for your honesty,” he whispered in his sub’s ear.

He took a little step back and Mike whimpered involuntarily when Harvey’s hands lost contact with his back. Instead, Harvey took Mike by the hand, sat back down in his chair and tugged at Mike’s fingers until his boy got the message and settled down in Harvey’s lap like he had done 3 weeks ago. He felt immediately safe and cared for.

Harvey guided Mike’s head toward the crook of his neck and petted his hair. Mike inhaled deeply as though he was scenting Harvey.

“Do you trust me, Mike?” he asked after a few minutes.

“I really want to, but I’m a little afraid.” His voice sounded forlorn.

“That’s okay. As long as you’re honest with me. I get that trust needs to be earned. It’s a learning curve.”
“You’re not mad at me?”

“I will never be mad as long as you don’t lie to me. Now, will it help if I explain to you what I want you to do for me tonight?”

“Yes Sir. I think that would be a big help.”

“I want you to kneel for me, right beside this chair. I know that you have a terrible posture and we really need to work on that in the future, but for tonight, all I want is your submission, nothing else. I will probably be petting you a little to reassure you but that’s all. No sex and no pain.” He turned his head to look Mike in the eyes although, because of the close proximity, he had to squint a little. “Is that acceptable?”

The kid smiled relieved. “Yes, Sir.”

“Then tell me your color, Mike.”

“Green, Sir.”

“Okay Puppy,” Harvey groaned. “You’re getting heavy and I need to work.” He patted Mike’s backside lightly to encourage him to stand up and his sub instantly obliged.

Before Mike could sink to his knees, Harvey placed a cushion right beside his chair.

“Your knees are still knew to this. Better to be on the safe side.”

When Mike had settled in on the floor Harvey retrieved his laptop and started working. Every now and then he glanced at his kneeling sub. He had seen newbies who were completely overwhelmed by the simple act of kneeling and submitting, so he didn’t take the kid’s obvious eagerness on face value. But he needn’t have worried. After a while Mike’s breathing slowed and his eyelids drooped a little. He seemed on the brink of sleep. Harvey reached out with his hand and guided his sub’s head to rest against his knee. When he could feel the kid relax against his leg he continued to pet Mike’s hair with one hand while he worked his laptop with the other.

**********

Mike became aware that someone petted his head while saying his name but he felt so relaxed and at ease that he wanted to ignore it. His heavy head was leaning against a warm leg and the fabric of the suit-pants felt soft against his cheek. The petting converted into insistent tugging, not quite painful but harder to ignore. He opened his eyes slowly. Harvey looked down at him, his computer gone from his lap.

“Hey Sleepyhead. Time to wake up.”

“Ugh…”

“It’s ass o’clock and if I want to get any sleep before my first meeting at ten, I should get out of here soon. And so should you, I think. Come on, I give you a lift home.”

Mike shook his head slightly, not to defy Harvey but to clear his thoughts. Had he really fallen asleep while he knelt at his Dom’s feet?
He came slowly to his feet and as he did so, his eyes fell on the vacuum cleaner which stood forlornly near the office’s door.

“I never cleaned your office,” he blurted out.

Harvey only smiled. “If you don’t tell, I won’t either.”

Chapter End Notes

Sorry, no porn yet although the good stuff is already in my head. I just need to get it out of there but this will probably not happen for a few chapters. This story is already becoming longer than I had planned but I'm so in love with my guys right now that I will update every few days. Since this is the first story I've ever shared publicly I would love to read your comments.
Chapter Summary

A description of Mike's and Harvey's day after their first scene.

Chapter Notes

See the end of the chapter for notes

Wednesday.

While Mike weaved through the gridlocked Manhattan traffic almost on autopilot, his memory replayed the more noteworthy points of the previous night.

How Harvey had made him kneel, how he had petted his hair and made him relax against his leg, the smell of Harvey’s skin when he had buried his nose into Harvey’s crook of the neck, Harvey’s warm hands on the bare skin of his back.

The hour he had slept with his head against his Dom’s knee had been more restful than the few stolen hours he’d had in between jobs in the last couple of weeks. He had felt so safe and at ease. He couldn’t wait to see Harvey, his Dom, again. He almost felt giddy at this thought and that exhilarating feeling was probably the reason why he choose to run a red light instead of playing it safe and stopping.

Brakes screeched, a horn blared and only the impressive reactions of the cabby prevented Mike from becoming a footnote in New York’s traffic-fatalities-statistics. But although he didn’t make contact with the solid front-end of the cab, he still took a dive as he swerved out of the way and braked at the same time and his rear-wheel just skidded away under him. When he hit the ground, he tried to soften the impact by rolling in on himself, tugging his head in and making himself as small as he could. This wasn’t his first swan-dive but it still sucked.

For a moment he lay spread-eagled on the street, just trying to catch his breath, before he became aware of people standing around him and asking him if he was hurt. He slowly stood up, assessing the damage on himself and his bike. It wasn’t too bad. Just a skinned knee and probably some bruises, but nothing was broken. His bike looked okay, too.

Before he could get on it though, the furious cabdriver got into his face and berated him in what Mike took for Armenian. Sensing that the cabby could soon become violent Mike just grinned at him apologetically and shrugged at the furious man, swung his leg over the rear-wheel of his bike and quickly pedaled away, soon getting lost in the heavy traffic.

While rapidly gaining momentum, Mike shook his head at his own recklessness. He really needed to get a grip and concentrate on what he was doing, otherwise his career as Harvey’s sub would be woefully short-lived.

_Harvey!_ Mike groaned inwardly. There was no way he could keep the accident from Harvey. _Shit._

When Harvey had driven him home the other night, once again Mike’s bike securely stored in the trunk, he had laid down a ground rule.
“No more lying, whether direct or through omission. I expect total honesty of you, Michael. Otherwise, this won’t work.”

Mike had eagerly agreed not aware that only a few hours later he would be sorely tempted to disobey said rule.

I need to tell him when I call him later. And he will probably be mad. Shit. Shiiiiiiit!

Since Harvey had needed to settle his case, the case in which Mike involuntarily had helped even though he hadn’t a clue how, and Mike didn’t have any spare time between his two jobs either, they had agreed to meet on Saturday evening at Harvey’s place. That meant there were still 3 days to go but Harvey had instructed him to call him every night as soon as he got home from his day job.

As eager as Mike had been to finish his last delivery for the day as hesitant he was now to finish up and go home. Going home meant having to call Harvey and confessing his stupidity. For a moment he pondered whether he should call dispatch and ask for one more delivery. But that wouldn’t change anything, only prolong his torment.

When he arrived home, lugging his bike up the stairs because leaving it in the street was not an option in this part of town, he got his first aid kit from under the sink in the bathroom and assessed the damage.

His knee didn’t look so bad but his left elbow had seriously started to hurt shortly after his escape from the scene of the accident. Mike slowly undressed and looked at himself in his body-length mirror, clad only in his boxers.

There was a little scrape on his shoulder blade which he felt more than he could see, his right knee had lost a layer of skin but his left elbow was raw-looking and already a little swollen. He could see some street-grit embedded around the oozing wound and opted to take a shower, to get the worst of it out.

When his shower finally had heated up and the hot water hit his sore body he hissed in pain and carefully washed himself but tried to keep the soap away from the open wounds. He stayed under the shower for as long as it distributed hot water, which was about 5 minutes max if nobody else showered at the same time-slot. He hated his shower. It needed ages to heat up properly and every time someone in his apartment building turned on their water or flushed a toilet he would get surprised by a cold gush.

He had once read somewhere (it was in Jenny’s Cosmopolitan, issue 3 of 2004, site 63 to be precise) that a dude, well a German priest named Sebastian Kneipp who had lived in the 19th century, actually promoted the alternation between hot and cold water during a shower as healthy. There were in fact some spa-places that took good money for that kind of thing as the magazine had advertised. Well, maybe he should sub-let his shower to some deranged health-freaks. He could make a mint.

His brain automatically came up with some adds he could post in magazines. Or he could hand out flyers to random passersby. He couldn’t do it in front of his building though, because nobody in his neighborhood had money to burn, but in the richer parts of Manhattan some people would do anything if you just told them it was fashionable. Like mudding. Hell, taking hot / cold showers in a shabby apartment in Brooklyn wasn’t a far cry from lying naked in wet dirt, at least not in his book. He would need to stock up on snacks and fancy mineral-water though, because these folks probably wouldn’t drink his type of cheap beer and Red Bull. He could ask Harvey what the other half, the rich half, deemed appropriate for quenching their thirst. Harvey! It felt like a cold shower on his brain when the thought of his Dom brought him back from his silly little daydream, forcing him to get on...
He cautiously toweled off and then took the bottle with the disinfectant and cleaned his elbow, watching himself in the mirror to get a good look at the irritated flesh as he did so. After that he applied the antiseptic salve and tried to bandage his elbow as well as he could with only one hand and his teeth at his disposal. Luckily the wound on his knee would only need a Band-Aid and the rest of the little abrasions and bruises would probably heal without further ado.

He put his boxers and a t-shirt back on, got a bottle of beer (cheap but tasty) out of his fridge and laid down on the bed. With a resigned sigh, he dialed Harvey’s number to get it over with.

**********

Harvey’s day had been great so far. It had taken only a little persuasion to make Wyatt go with his plan. When he’d told the young geek that he should tell the opposing council to shove their offer up their asses, the techie had first frowned but when Harvey had explained that instead of losing small (and braking barely even constituted as losing in Harvey’s book) they could win big by blindsiding their opponents, threatening to publish Wyatt’s schematics for the satellite phone online for free, he had instantly agreed.

After they’d arrived at the offices of Velocity Data Solution under the pretense of accepting the settlement offer of 20 Million, he’d had a hard time to keep his poker face on. His mind kept wandering back to the other night, to the perfect boy who involuntarily had given Harvey this brilliant idea.

“I didn’t expect you to give it up for free,” Mike had quipped. Velocity Data Solution wouldn’t expect that either, and therein lay the beauty of his plan. He would get them totally by surprise.

Now it was late afternoon and Harvey was celebrating his victory. A settlement of 400 Million, twenty times the money Wyatt had spent in developing the phone, of which a large portion would find its way into Pearson Hardman’s accounts, was indeed a victory. The papers had been drafted up, signed and delivered to each party and the deal was done.

With Donna already gone for the day, he had poured himself a celebratory glass of his favorite Scotch, as he had promised himself he would do the other night, and now stood at his large windows, his favorite basketball (the one with Kobe Bryant’s signature) pressed with his left hand to his hip, and surveyed the street’s under him as if he were the King of the World. He could barely refrain from spreading his arms wide and shouting it out loud, but a Titanic-reference was too girly for his taste, although Leo had developed into a fine actor as soon as he’d lost his baby-face.

The Spinners’ “It’s a shame” was softly filtering out of the hidden speakers and Harvey felt relaxed and happy. Only the phone call with his boy could make his day any better now.

A light tap against the glass-door announced a visitor. He slowly turned and greeted Jessica with a self-confident smile.

“Somebody feels awfully smug today,” she observed, but couldn’t help that a fond smile played briefly over her lips in response to his. Her protégé was, after all, her favorite senior partner, although she carefully tried not to let it show too much, especially not to him. He was cocky enough as it was and his ego didn’t need boosting. In fact, sometimes he needed to be put properly in his place, just as
she intended to do now.

Harvey, who was too relaxed and happy to pick up on her tigress-stalking-prey-vibe, put the basketball away, poured her a drink and handed her the tumbler. Her perfectly manicured hand with the large ring on her middle-finger accepted it gracefully and they clinked glasses.

“IT all worked out in the end,” he announced with a smirk, clearly expecting a praise from her for his well-executed gamble.

“It also would’ve worked out if you had filed the patent on time.” The corners of his mouth stayed fixed in place although it cost him some effort. “Or if the judge, whom you somehow seemed to have rubbed the wrong way, had granted your injunction.”

Harvey grinned even wider. He knew where she was going with this but refused to let her fluster him or show that he was flustered, which of course he wasn’t.

“But where would have been the fun in that?” he tried to deflect.

“Don’t tell me that you made it deliberately complicated just so you could have some fun,” she called his bullshit.

“Not exactly,” Harvey admitted. “But it’s the result that counts, so no harm done.”

Jessica shook her head, downed the Whisky in one gulp much to Harvey’s respect and put the glass down pointedly. Her eyes bore into his with a no-nonsense expression and Harvey was once more made aware, that she had about half an inch of height on him. “It’s the heels,” he reminded himself, but it still annoyed him.

A wide smile spread over the managing partner’s full lips, as if she was able to read his thoughts. Harvey wouldn’t put it past her.

“Hire a good-damn associate, Harvey.”

She turned on her heel and left his office without another word.

Harvey pondered whether he should follow her and argue the point as his phone started ringing.

**********

When he saw that it was Mike, he closed the glass-door of his office and settled down on the sofa, putting his feet up on the coffee table, before he hit the answer button.

“Hello Mike. How was your day?” He couldn’t help the smile creeping into his tone of voice.

Instead of a simple fine or okay after which he intended to apprise Mike of his great day, impress him with his win and maybe give him some credit for providing him the initial idea, even though Mike had done it only by accident, the boy only sighed on the other end of the line. Harvey’s smugness evaporated slowly.

“Mike, is something wrong?” Surely the kid wouldn't have second thoughts.

“Not really. But…, well…, there was a little incident.” His boy sounded hesitant.
“Incident? Care to elaborate?”

Mike gave another small sigh. “I sort of fell off my bike.”

“You sort of fell off your bike,” Harvey repeated. “The way this story is going already concerns me. Did you have your training-wheels removed today or why did you fall off your bike?”

Mike’s every hope that he could simply leave it at that simple statement, without having to explain further, vanished. Should’ve know he wouldn’t let it lie. He’s a goddamn lawyer after all.

“I was nearly hit by a cab and when I tried to swerve out of the way, I lost my balance and fell.”

Harvey’s good mood disappeared for good making room for concern.

“Are you hurt, Mike?”

“Only a little but it’s not so bad.”

“Define not so bad.”

Mike could hear how much it cost Harvey not to flip out and a small part of him felt all warm and fuzzy as he noticed his Dom’s concern for him.

“A skinned knee and elbow and a few bruises. Nothing’s broken and my bike is okay, too.”

“Screw the damn bike! Has the police been informed? Did you file a report? You can claim damages with the insurance and if the cabbie was negligent he could lose his license as well.” Harvey had shifted into lawyer-mode, already planning to take the cabby for everything he had and ripping him to shreds in court.

“Ehm…” Mike stayed silent for a moment and Harvey could hear his breathing getting louder through the phone as if he had to fight to keep calm. A suspicion was forming in his mind, but he needed his boy to fess up voluntarily. So he only nudged him a little.

“Mike? You know you can tell me.” He deliberately kept his tone of voice light and friendly.

“Promise you won’t get mad,” the kid whispered and sounded so young and vulnerable.

“I can’t promise you that,” the Dom replied honestly. “But I can promise you that I won’t stay mad at you for long as long as you don’t lie to me.”

“Rule #1, right?”

“That’s right Kid.” Harvey made a decision. “Would it help if I came over to your place and you could tell me face to face?”

The moment of silence stretched up to the point where Harvey thought that Mike had accidentally, or deliberately, hung up on him.

“Mike?” he prompted.

“I ran a red light.” The confession was whispered as though saying the words softly would make his transgression less serious.

Harvey closed his eyes as his worst suspicion was confirmed. After all, he knew how New York’s bike messengers managed to get around so quickly and Mike surely wouldn’t be the exception of the
rule. He lowered the hand that held the phone and let out a shuddering breath as soon as the speaker wasn’t in proximity to his mouth anymore. He downed the rest of his Scotch but almost instantly regretted it.

An onslaught of different scenarios played themselves out in front of his mind. Mike, lying broken and bleeding in the street. Mike’s lifeless body lying on the hood of a cab with his head smashed through the broken windshield. His boy, lying in a hospital bed with tubes coming out of his body, being kept alive only by beeping machines.

He swallowed around the bile that rose in his throat, the taste of the expensive Scotch suddenly making him nauseous.

*This stupid kid! How could he do something so utterly reckless and stupid and….*. Words failed him and suddenly he longed to take Mike over his knee and spank him till he squealed. With a red hot ass he wouldn’t be able to ride this stupid bike of his, wouldn’t be able to get himself killed. Harvey could sense how his feelings started to spiral out of control.

*Stop! Get a grip!* He tried hard to fight his feelings, to get himself under control again and not to get utterly and uncontrollably mad, like Mike had feared. When he felt that he could speak without giving himself away he lifted the phone to his ear again.

“…so sorry, Harvey. Please, speak to me….please, don’t send me away. Just say something, please!” Harvey could hear that Mike was on the verge of crying. He must have babbled all the while Harvey had been battling with the images of a dead Mike.

“Shhh. It’s okay Mike. Thank you for your honesty.”

“Please don’t be mad at me. I’m mad at myself and it will never happen again. I will pay more attention. Please, I just want to be your good sub… ,” Mike continued to drone on as though he hadn’t heard Harvey.

“Mike, it’s okay. I’m not mad. I’m just glad that you’re all right.” He made a decision. “But I need to come over to see you tonight. Do you understand that?”

“You want to come over now?” The kid’s voice sounded suspicious, obviously not trusting his Dom’s previous statement that he wasn't mad.

“I need to see for myself that you’re okay,” Harvey explained.

“’k.” Harvey could hear the relief in the kid’s voice.

“I’ll be there in half an hour.”

Chapter End Notes

Sorry, again no porn but some hurt/comfort. Apology for any mistakes regarding grammar and / or spelling. In the next chapter, Harvey will get his hands on a naked Mike though, so don't give up on me yet.

As always, comments are very welcome.
Due diligence

Chapter Summary

Harvey makes sure that Mike is okay after the accident. Some uncomfortable truth is revealed as well and Mike has to make a decision.

Chapter Notes

See the end of the chapter for notes

Just as Harvey was leaving the office and heading for the elevator banks on the 50th floor his phone beeped again. He thought about letting it go to voicemail but when he saw who the caller was he took the call.

“Hello Vanessa. I’m a little bit in a hurry,” he greeted her as he entered the elevator.

“Hi Harvey,” the PI replied. “I just wanted to give you the first results of my investigation on Mike Ross.”

“Already? I only hired you this morning.” The lawyer was impressed at how quickly his preferred private eye had been able to dig up facts.

The elevator doors slid open in front of him and he cleared the lobby of the building with long strides, heading for the street where Ray would be waiting with the Lexus.

“Well, almost everything’s on public record, so it wasn’t hard,” she played her efforts down. “But Harvey, this guy is just a kid, a nobody. Why are you interested in him anyway?”

“His name came up as a potential witness in a lawsuit.”

Harvey hated lying to Vanessa. He liked the woman and not only because she was exceptionally good at her job. He’d known her for a couple of years now and had tried on more than one occasion to charm her out of her panties but she seemed immune against his good looks and winning smile. She always let him down easy though and over the years his flirting had become more of a habit than an actual attempt to get her into bed. He respected her and knew, that a one-night-stand would at least make their professional relationship awkward if not downright impossible.

Vanessa knew the lawyer long enough to call his bullshit. “All right, you don’t have to tell me. I’ve e-mailed you everything I could find so far. If you want me to dig deeper just let me know.”

“Thanks Vanessa. I appreciate it.”

She laughed lightly. “And I appreciate your paycheck. Always a pleasure working for you, Harvey.”

After they ended the call Harvey greeted Ray with a nod and gave him the address in Brooklyn. His driver raised an eyebrow but refrained from commenting further although he knew that their destination was a far cry from his employer’s usual hunting-ground.

Harvey settled into the backseat and looked through his e-mail. He began reading Vanessa’s report, not really expecting any big revelations regarding the life of Mike Ross but Harvey had learned early
on in his career that it never hurt to be diligent. And Mike was, after all he had learned about him so far, a compulsive liar.

The first details he read only described a tragic but otherwise uneventful childhood. Both parents killed in a traffic accident when the kid was 11. Raised by his paternal grandmother, one Edith Ross, now the resident of a nursing home in the kid’s neighborhood due to poor health. As a child Mike had gotten good grades, well enough in fact that he could’ve skipped a few years but he never did. He’d graduated high school at 17 like most of his peers. As Harvey scrawled further down the file, he found a jury-record, that should have been sealed to the public but Vanessa somehow had unearthed nevertheless. Mike had been caught smoking weed at the age of 16 and one more time at 17, on both occasions accompanied by one Trevor Evans.

After graduating the kid had won a full scholarship at Columbia but got expelled after only one year. His curriculum had included pre-law and psychology.

Harvey couldn’t find the reason for Mike’s expulsion but at the end of Vanessa’s file he found several test sheets attached. From early achievement tests when Mike had still been at grammar school up to his SATs in high school. Mike had scored on each and every one in the 99%. Well, that explained at least why he had gotten a full ride in Columbia.

After Mike had left the college he had taken a few different tests as well, although he wouldn’t have been able to get into the appropriate universities without first finishing his college degree, even if his test scores hadn’t been abysmal. Only one LSAT, the first he ever took, had been exceptional. Mike had scored a perfect result.

Harvey puzzled over this seemingly contradictory information. Why would Mike take the LSAT, get a 180 and then take the test several more times with very poor Outcome? Suddenly something clicked and everything made sense. Oh, his clever boy. His stupid clever boy. Compulsive liar indeed.

At the end of the file, Vanessa had left Harvey some thoughts of her own.

Hi Harvey,

Mr. Ross is still friends with Trevor Evans and this guy is poison. He deals drugs, mainly weed, but so far I haven’t found any indication that Mr. Ross is involved although he seems to smoke regularly. Mr. Evans and Mr. Ross have known each other since grammar school and attended Columbia together. Both have been expelled at the same time, but I haven’t been able to find the reason yet. It seems likely though, that Mr. Evans got them in trouble and Mr. Ross paid the price. According to his school records Mr. Evans has always been a troublemaker, from an early age on. Mr. Evans’ girlfriend, Jenny Griffith, is also a good friend of Mr. Ross and he often goes out with both of them. As far as I know she isn’t involved in Mr. Evans’ business either. I can’t prove it but the test-scores I could find seem to indicate that Mr. Ross takes tests for other people for money. I was able to speak with one of his former professors in Columbia and he told me that Mr. Ross has an eidetic memory and was on the track for a full ride in Harvard before he was kicked out. This kid is basically a genius, albeit one with very poor judgement.

Right now Mr. Ross works as a bike messenger and has recently acquired another job with Schmidt Facility Management in a cleaning crew. He has in fact been cleaning the offices of Pearson Hardman for the last 2 weeks during the night, which is, I’m quite sure, the reason you asked me to investigate him in the first place, so you better don’t give me any bullshit when I call you now and ask you for the reason of your interest in the guy. Well, I’m sure you will bullshit me but you
seriously need to make it up to me with a nice dinner before I’m willing to take any more assignments from you. I’m expecting the full wine and dine treatment.

Love

Vanessa

Harvey rolled his eyes. He should’ve known that he couldn’t fool his favorite PI.

At the end of the file Vanessa had attached some pictures. Mike with an elderly lady, obviously his grandmother, Mike and another guy with dark hair and a winning grin, Trevor Evans. A blonde girl Harvey recognized from the night he was trying to track Mike down when he couldn’t get hold of him on the phone. This picture was captioned “Jenny Griffith”. Harvey grinned pleased. Well, at least one thing less to worry about although everything Vanessa had dug up on Mike would indicate that a potential girlfriend should be the least of his worries.

Harvey had an inkling that his life was about to get very interesting indeed.

**********

When the doorbell rang Mike slowly got off his bed and limped towards the door. His muscles had tensed up during his short rest on his bed and he couldn’t have felt any worse if the cab had actually hit him. He rolled his head from side to side to get the kinks out and put on a brave face. He was determined to not show Harvey how much he actually hurt.

He opened the door and was met by two concerned brown eyes gazing intently into his face. For a minute they just stared at each other, then Harvey raised his right hand and cupped Mike’s face, his thumb softly caressing the cheekbone. For a brief moment Harvey leaned his forehead against Mike’s and exhaled slowly.

“You really are all right,” he sighed. “You have no idea how much you scared me.”

Harvey took a step back and looked Mike over, taking in the Band-Aid on his knee and the bandage around his elbow. “Won’t you invite me in?”

Mike made an inviting gesture and Harvey stepped into the little apartment. It took all but 3 seconds for him to take everything in. The shoe-box sized flat was equipped with cheap furniture and currently a not very clean floor. The kid seemed to think that cleaning was something you did for others when you got paid for it. Otherwise the room seemed more or less tidy but Harvey would’ve bet good money that Mike had thrown everything that had cluttered the place into his closet as soon as Harvey had ended the call with him.

“Do you want something to drink?” Mike offered but Harvey just shook his head. He shrugged off his suit-coat and looked around for a place it wouldn’t get wrinkled. In the end, he opted for the back of the sofa. Then he once more faced his sub.

“Can you take off your shirt, Mike? I need to see that you’re not hiding some grave injuries from
Mike wanted to protest but Harvey just held up his hand. “Please.” The look of concern in Harvey’s eyes undid Mike.

He nodded and slowly pulled his t-shirt over his head, wincing a little as he raised his stiff arms up over his head. He threw the shirt carelessly onto the sofa and just stood in the middle of the living room.

Harvey slowly circled the slim man, trailing his eyes up and down the body to evaluate any damages his accidental tumble might have caused.

When he saw the scrape on Mike’s shoulder blade he softly brushed his fingers over the reddened skin and then placed a tender kiss on top of it. Mike shivered when he felt his Dom’s lips on his skin and closed his eyes to revel in the feeling. Harvey then trailed both of his hands over Mike’s sides, from under his armpits right down to the hips, gently pressing the palms of his hands against Mike’s ribs. When Mike didn’t flinch or show any sign of discomfort, he withdrew his hands and finished his circle, coming to a halt in front of Mike. They were only inches away and Harvey slowly brought his hands to Mike’s hips, swept his palms over the slightly protruding hipbones downwards towards both thighs. Mike bucked a little as Harvey’s hand pressed against a bruise on his left upper thigh, hidden by his boxers. Harvey immediately reduced the pressure and stepped back.

“Sorry, I didn’t mean to hurt you.” Mike could detect true regret in the brown eyes.

“It’s okay,” he reassured his Dom.

Harvey stepped back into Mike’s space lowered his hands once again to Mike’s hips and started to push his sub’s boxers down. Mike’s hands tried to stop him but Harvey looked firmly into his eyes.

“I need to see.” Mike sensed his need and slowly let go of Harvey’s hands, nodding his consent.

Harvey pushed the fabric down to Mike’s ankles and lowered himself on one knee to assess the injuries in close proximity. This position brought him close to Mike’s dick, which twitched interestedly and began to rise as Harvey’s breath accidentally brushed over the exposed skin of the sensitive tip.

Mike’s cock was on the slender side but had a respectable length. It was gently curved and circumcised. His dark blond pubic hair had been neatly trimmed and his balls were nearly hairless. In general Mike wasn’t a hairy guy, much to Harvey’s delight. But now was not the time to admire his boy’s beautiful cock, or think about how the smooth skin of the slowly moistening tip would feel and taste on his tongue.

Harvey brought his hands once more to Mike’s hips and slowly made him turn on the spot, shuffling a little with his feet since his boxers around his ankles restricted his movements. Every time Harvey saw a bruise or a scrape he brushed his hand over it as if to soothe the pain away. When he came face to butt with Mike’s round backside, he cupped both cheeks with his hands, using his thumbs to slightly pull them apart. Mike sighed but otherwise held still. Harvey could make out Mike’s opening in the depth of his ass-crack and blew a stream of cool air playfully over the sensitive spot.

“Harvey!” Mike’s protest came as a high squeal as he tried to shy away from his Dom’s hands but was firmly held in place. His cock had gotten rock-hard in an instant and he was a little embarrassed at how thoroughly Harvey inspected his body. He wasn’t exactly shy but this was a little much right now.
“Just checking that everything is in working order,” Harvey justified his actions with an audible smile but quit his teasing.

When he was satisfied that Mike had indeed only acquired a few bruises, he stood up and tugged the boxers back over Mike’s midriff. His gaze lingered on the telltale bulge of Mike’s cock and the slowly spreading wet spot on the fabric though, and the sub blushed deeply.

“I love that you’re so responsive,” Harvey tried to reassure him and handed the boy his abandoned t-shirt with slight regret.

“Now, sit down and let me see your elbow.”

They both settled on the sofa and Harvey slowly unwound the untidy bandage. His fingers carefully prodded the swollen flesh around the slightly oozing wound but when Mike was able to straighten and bend his elbow, he was satisfied and only applied another layer of the antiseptic salve before neatly re-bandaging Mike’s arm.

He then went to Mike’s bed which was placed in a little niche adjacent to the living room, took the comforter and wrapped his sub up to keep him warm.

Harvey made himself comfortable on the other end of the couch, facing Mike but not crowding him.

“Please tell me what happened, Mike.”

The young sub shrugged but stayed silent, eyes trained on the fabric of the comforter and Harvey rolled his eyes.

“Michael, this wasn’t a request.” His tone had gotten a little sharper and Mike’s reaction was instantaneous. His head whipped up to make eye-contact with the lawyer and his pupils dilated ever so slightly.

“I was on my way back from the last delivery and I thought about last night and our upcoming phone call and…, well, the light changed but I thought I had still time to clear the crossing, only suddenly there was this cab and… ,” he trailed off.

“The cab didn’t hit you?”

Mike shook his head but remembered just in time. “No. But my rear-wheel jammed when I swerved out of the way and I fell.”

Another thought occurred to Harvey. “Mike, did you hit your head?”

“No, I rolled in on myself to protect it.”

“Show me your helmet. I want to make sure that there are no marks on it from the impact.”

Mike looked guiltily. “My helmet got stolen a couple of weeks ago when I left it hanging on the handlebar as I was getting a sandwich and I haven’t replaced it yet.”

Harvey couldn’t believe it. *Genius indeed, my ass.*

“Mike,” he explained slowly. “You’re a bike messenger. You need to wear a helmet, especially if your regard for common traffic rules is as lax as I think it is. Surely you must see this.”

Mike held up his hands in surrender. “I know,” he sighed. “I’m not stupid. And my Grammy is always scolding me for that as well. But when there is the choice between a helmet and food, food
wins the competition every time. There’s only so much ramen one can eat.”

Was Mike really that broke? Harvey wondered. He knew that Mike couldn’t make much money on both of his jobs, but surely things couldn’t be that bad.

“Mike, you have two jobs. This dump of an apartment can’t cost much so you should be able to afford at least the basic necessities for your job.”

Mike glared back at him defensively. “My Grammy is in a nursing home. She raised me when my…, when I had nobody else and she used all her savings to do so. She even put off her retirement until she couldn’t work anymore. I owe it to her to not let her rot in a state facility. So all my money goes to her. She’s more important than a helmet. She’s more important than everything, really.”

Harvey respected loyalty and couldn’t fault Mike for wanting to take care of his grandmother. He made a mental note to look into the matter. Maybe he could help Mike and his Grammy without being obvious about it. If he read the kid right, Mike wouldn’t take kindly to any suggestions of him taking money from Harvey. And it would put their developing… thing into a bad place right from the start. Well, he’d have to be sneaky about it, but sneaky was his middle name.

“All right. Let’s safe this discussion for later.”

Mike relaxed when Harvey let the subject drop so unexpectedly but was instantly suspicious when Harvey got off the sofa and wandered around it to stand behind him.

He tried to turn his head to see what the lawyer was up to but strong hands grabbed hold of both sides of his skull.

“Hold still. I just want to make sure that you won’t die on me from brain-damage within the next five minutes.”

Harvey swept his hands slowly and meticulously over Mike’s head, from the nape of his neck to his forehead and behind his ears. When his thumbs brushed lightly over the rim of Mike’s ears, the kid shivered slightly and the soft hairs on his neck stood suddenly on edge. Harvey filed that response away for later since right now was not the time to tease any more of this beautiful reactions out of Mike. Only when he couldn’t find any bumps or wounds beneath the soft hair and Mike sighed contentedly under his exploring fingers instead of wincing in pain, he was satisfied.

After he settled back on the couch, he broached the topic that had been on his mind since last night and Vanessa’s report had only hardened his resolve.

“There’s something else I wanted to discuss with you, though. I wanted to safe it till Saturday but seeing how things are progressing between us, I might as well explain it to you now.” Harvey could see that Mike wanted to interrupt him but he was quicker. “I want you to listen to me, without interruption. You don’t need to make a decision now, but I want you to think on it.”

Mike looked at him expectantly but otherwise stayed silent.

“There are different ways of having a Dom/sub relationship, as I’m sure you’ve learned from all your research,” Harvey continued to explain. “Some are casual and only include a scene every now and then, either as a standing appointment or a meeting whenever both parties desire it.” Mike nodded as a sign that he understood.

“But there are also more serious… commitments.” He avoided the term relationship on purpose. “I’m fine with it if you only want to meet occasionally whenever we can fit a meeting into our schedules, although that would mean slower progress on your side. But I think in your case, a more permanent
arrangement would be more beneficial for you.”

He took a moment to assess Mike’s reactions. When his boy gave a slight nod, he continued to make his case.

“When I asked you yesterday what you expected from me, you said that you wanted someone who took care of you. Someone who wouldn’t take any bullshit from you, someone who would keep you from screwing up. What happened today is another testimony of how badly you need this certain someone. I can be that someone for you if you let me. But this would mean a 24/7 arrangement. It wouldn’t be casual. And I most certainly wouldn’t make it easy for you.”

Mike opened his mouth as if to speak but caught Harvey’s gaze just in time.

“I would take care of you and hold you responsible for your actions. Maybe if you knew that you couldn’t make shitty decisions without getting punished, it would help you to develop your full potential.”

Mike looked at him questioningly, a slight frown on his forehead as though he was unsure what Harvey was getting at. He raised his hand as if he was in school and Harvey could sense that something was eating at Mike. With a nod he permitted him to speak.

“Does this speech mean that you want to punish me for today? For my shitty choice of running a red?”

Harvey suddenly realized why Mike had been hesitant to see him.

Since he already made the decision that honesty would be necessary on his part as well if this should work, he exhaled slowly but didn’t bother to hide his feelings behind his obligatory mask although his voice, when he finally spoke, sounded calmer than he actually felt.

“When you told me what happened my first instinct was to make sure that you’re okay. I can’t really explain why, but I already see you as mine and I need to protect what is mine.”

At Harvey’s emphasis on the word mine Mike’s cock made a sudden encore appearance although it had gone to sleep under the warmth of the comforter after Harvey had finished fondling his head. His breath hitched with the sudden arousal and he could actually feel a drop of pre-come rising to the tip of his cock, spilling out of his slit and being soaked up by the already soiled fabric of his boxers, the spreading wet stain cool against his sensitive skin of his dick.

Harvey’s mischievous grin showed him that his reaction hadn’t gone unnoticed by the lawyer but Mike wasn’t embarrassed. On the contrary. He wanted Harvey to see how he made him feel, what he could do to him with only a few carefully chosen words. He was sick and tired of hiding who he was.

“My second instinct was to put you over my knee and spank your ass so hard that you couldn’t ride a bike in the foreseeable future,” Harvey continued and gave Mike another amused smile when the boy only looked at him with a fixed gaze, the growing arousal obvious in his huge eyes.

“Right now I’m alternating between the two urges,” he admitted and sighed. “But since we haven’t negotiated the terms of our arrangement yet, my own desires regarding your punishment are mute. I need your formal consent before I would do anything more serious to you than I already did so far.”

When Mike opened his mouth to speak, most likely to give him permission for the punishment, as the huge dilated pupils of Mike’s eyes indicated, Harvey held up his index finger, shushing the young man with only a small calculated gesture. Mike closed his mouth obediently and Harvey continued.
“Regardless of any negotiation, since you’re already hurting and I truly believe that you’ve learned your lesson, I would forego punishment for this transgression anyway.”

Since Mike still looked like he might want to argue the point, Harvey decided to change track.

When the lawyer had read Vanessa’s file on Mike, he hadn’t planned on revealing to him that he had him looked into but now he decided to come clean. In for a penny and all that.

“I need to confess something to you as well, although I don’t regret what I did.”

Mike tilted his head slightly to one side, intrigued what might come next.

“Mike, I had you investigated by a PI I have on retainer. She sent me her findings just as I was on my way to you.” He unlocked his phone, selected the e-mail with the file and offered it to Mike.

“I want you to know what I know about you. And I want you to know that after I read the file, I was even more determined to do this with you. I think that with a little help and guidance, you could become so much more, as a sub and as a person.”

At the word PI Mike glared at him like he was offended. Harvey sighed. He knew that he was taking a risk and the chance that Mike would balk after he had read the file was quite big.

“I didn’t need to tell you what I did, but honesty goes both ways and I want us to be on an even footing so that you’re able to make an educated decision. And I’m also willing to answer every question you might have regarding myself.”

Mike took the phone and scrawled through the file in record time, his eyes rapidly trailing over the text. His brows knitted together every now and then and when he was finished he held on to the phone, not looking up. After a few minutes of silence, Harvey couldn’t take it anymore. He was afraid that he had gone too far. After all, Vanessa’s investigation had brought up some unpleasant truths and Harvey was aware that reading this, knowing that a stranger had dug up the dirt, must at least feel very awkward to Mike.

“Mike, are you okay?” The boy seemed deep in thought and Harvey leaned forward and lightly touched his hand.

“Why did you do it?” Mike dragged his eyes up to meet Harvey’s and an expression of hurt and betrayal was visible in the blue orbs.

“Because I needed to know about you and I couldn’t trust you to tell me everything I needed to know.”

“I told you about the accident.”

“Yes, and I’m really proud of you. It couldn’t have been easy for you.”

“It wasn’t. But I wanted to be your good boy and obey your rules.”

Harvey closed his eyes briefly and exhaled slowly. When he opened his eyes again he saw Mike looking at him warily. He scooted closer to his boy and tugged gently at his arm. At first Mike resisted a little but then he gave in and Harvey pulled him into his lap, wrapping his arms tightly around his sub. He brushed his lips over Mike’s right temple and then buried his nose in the soft dark blond hair.

“I’m sorry that my decision to have you investigated hurt you, but after your recent behavior I felt
that I couldn’t take the chance and simply believe that you would be totally honest with me. I hoped that you would, but your track record isn’t exactly squeaky-clean.”

Surely Mike must see the validity of his argument but instead of relaxing into his Dom’s embrace Harvey could feel Mike stiffen in his arms. The young man turned his gaze towards Harvey’s and looked at him imploringly.

“Will you ever be able to trust me, Harvey? If not, then maybe we should call this whole thing off because I don’t think that I can take it.”

Harvey thought about it. Could he give up his suspicious nature and give Mike the benefit of the doubt although his experience as a lawyer had taught him that leopards couldn’t change their spots?

Mike’s eyes kept watching him warily as he was coming to a decision.

“I told you yesterday that trust needs to be earned. It’s a learning curve and it goes both ways.” He brushed his lips once more over Mike’s temple, more a caress than an actual kiss, breathing in the subtle coconut-scent of Mike’s hair. “I’m willing to trust that you will try to be honest with me, Mike. From now on, if I want to know something about you, I will ask you. You have the right to refuse to answer but please don’t ever lie to me. And I promise you the same in return.”

Mike could hear the resolve in his Dom’s voice and after a moment he finally relaxed and buried his head against Harvey’s neck, letting the delicious scent of Harvey’s cologne mixed with his very own smell that was pure Harvey wash over him.

“I promise. And thank you,” he whispered. Both men held onto each other, sensing that they had taken another important step. Suddenly, Mike began to giggle. “I can’t believe that you still want me after you read that file on me.”

Harvey smiled. He knew where Mike was going with this but refused to play along.

“Why wouldn’t I want you? According to Vanessa you’re a genius. And although I really like your ass, I find brains even sexier.”

“Yeah,” Mike mocked. “I’m a total catch and you should call yourself lucky that you can have your lewd ways with me.”

“Oh, Kid. You have no idea.”

Chapter End Notes

I really struggled with this chapter and edited it several times, changing and adding bits and pieces. I hope that it nevertheless feels fluid to you. The next update will probably be next weekend.

As always, I apologize for all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling. English is not my first language and this story is not beta-read.

Comments are very welcome.
Silly red bow

Chapter Summary

Mike's night after his accident.

Chapter Notes

This is a short chapter but I will post another one this weekend.

See the end of the chapter for more notes

Shortly after they’d made up, Harvey had left and Mike had tried to catch some sorely needed sleep before it was time to get up again for his cleaning gig. He truly needed to find another way to make some money or he would never be able to see Harvey more than once a week or have something with the semblance of a social life.

He had promised Harvey that he would think about the possible options for their arrangement but he was already sure, had been since last night really, that he wanted the 24/7 arrangement, but that wouldn’t really be possible if he needed to work all of his time. Sure, they could do some of it by phone but it would be a poor substitute for a real meeting. He wanted to do this right, to commit himself to this, to Harvey and to his own needs. He didn’t want to walk into this halfheartedly like he had done so many times before with less serious stuff.

And then there was his Grammy. He hadn’t been able to visit her for almost two weeks now and this Sunday afternoon was the only day he had a couple of hours off since he didn’t want to postpone his meeting with Harvey.

He really missed her. Just sitting with her, playing checkers or cards and listening to her talking about Grandpa George made him feel happy. But lately, her memory was a little fuzzy and sometimes she looked at him, if only for a few seconds, like she had no idea who he was. Then her face would light up again and she would ask him how Columbia was, like she had totally forgotten how bad he had disappointed her when he got kicked out (she’d never said an angry word to him but he’d seen in her eyes how upset she’d been). At these moments he just wanted to climb into her lap like the little boy he had once been and cry his eyes out until he was numb and had no more tears. But he couldn’t let her see how her failing health affected him, so he put on a brave face and told her some made up story about his adventures as a college student, never letting on how much his heart was breaking for her.

At the next visit, she would be totally lucid and even beat him at checkers, laughing with glee when he would walk into one of her carefully constructed traps. Then he could see how she had been before, the 64 year old woman who had taken the 11 year old orphan in, had given him a home and enveloped him in her love until he wouldn’t cry himself to sleep anymore. He knew that he hadn’t turned out exactly as planned, but if he’d gone into the system instead to his Grammy, his life could’ve been so much worse. All in all, he couldn’t complain and maybe this time, with Harvey’s help, he could pull himself together and finally get a grip on his life and make her proud.
It occurred to him that it might not be fair to Harvey to pin all his hopes on the man, this almost stranger. Sure, Harvey had agreed to take him on as a sub, to train him and show him, what submitting to a Dom meant. But did that mean he could put the burden of making him better, becoming a better person, on Harvey’s shoulders as well? Harvey indicated it, when he proposed the arrangement between them, but wasn’t it time to take responsibility for his own life instead of just hoping that Harvey would somehow magically fix him?

Maybe Harvey could point him in the right direction but he himself needed to do all the work. And he couldn’t allow himself to fall too hard for Harvey, to rely too heavily upon him. After all, the people he had relied on most in his life, like his parents, Trevor and now his Grammy, always seemed to leave him, if not on their own accord. If Harvey would decide sometime that he would cut Mike loose, he needed to be able to function without him.

The rational side of his mind told him that he shouldn’t get too emotionally involved, too dependent. This wasn’t “Pretty woman” or a fairytale and Harvey was neither Edward Lewis nor Prince Charming. “Tough luck,” his heart chimed in, “you’ve already fallen head over heels for that man and there is no way that you can put that Jack back in the box. I’m already Harvey’s and Harvey’s alone.” Stupid thing!

**********

Tired to his bones Mike was once again hoovering the floors of Pearson Hardman, fighting against the pain in his shoulders. Oh god, he really hated that vacuum cleaner. It was loud and heavy and even under normal circumstances handling this monster would make his back ache within 30 minutes. He didn’t know how the female cleaners, some of them double his age, could stand doing this for years and years on end. He’d rather kill himself, or at least sell weed for Trevor. Well, at least his elbow was a little better and the swelling had gone down after he’d followed Harvey’s advice to put an ice-pack on it.

He’d taken some painkillers before he had to go to work but he knew from past experience that he would be sore for a couple more days. Serves you right for being so stupid. That’s your just punishment.

He really had a hard time of letting go of it. He was such a screw up. What would happen to his Grammy if he got himself killed in a stupid accident? She would be devastated and they would kick her into a state facility quicker than they could put his sorry ass into a pauper’s grave, no doubt settling the costs for it on Grammy.

The scene of the changing light played itself over and over before his inner eye and he could pinpoint the exact moment he’d made the wrong decision. Damn his brain! He really tried to let go of it, spilled milk and all, but he just couldn’t. The urge to punish himself just to get rid of the guilt, wasn’t new. In fact, every time he’d done something stupid he’d spiraled into an abys of self-loathing and self-punishment. One time, he had denied himself food for 3 days and only when he almost fainted and his Grammy had been so afraid that he was coming down with a serious illness, he had stopped. Another time he had only taken cold showers for a month and after the Columbia debacle he had tried to quit smoking weed. Only when he couldn’t sleep for nearly a week with his brain going on overload and had walked around like a zombie, Trevor had been able to persuade him to smoke a bowl, for medical reasons as he’d put it.

But it never really worked that way anyway. The guilt never completely went away and he never
seemed to learn because his screw-ups made a frequent reoccurrence, no matter in what fashion he punished himself.

And now it seemed that Harvey could forgive him more easily than he could forgive himself. When his Dom had explained why he wouldn’t deem it necessary to punish Mike, the urge to punish himself had disappeared. Like Harvey had given him some kind of absolution and his sins had been washed away. Mike wasn’t religious, not even a little, but if that was how it felt to give himself over to a higher power, he would gladly be a founding member of the Church of Harvey.

Actually, Harvey had been really great about the whole thing. It still baffled Mike how much care Harvey had taken in making sure that he was all right, especially since they were still almost strangers, even though it didn’t feel that way. That he would make him strip and look over every inch of his body to make sure that he wasn’t badly injured.

And of course there was his own reaction to this thorough inspection. The way his body responded to Harvey’s touch or even the flutter of Harvey’s breath on his skin, the fact that even a few choice words spoken in a certain tone of voice could turn him on so much that he forgot all about the pain and the guilt and he only craved his Dom’s touch, was perplexing and wonderful. And Harvey’s reaction to his own arousal was an even bigger turn on. It was almost as if they were spiraling around each other, each reaction feeding a counter-reaction of the other. Mike knew that he tended to be needy and clingy at times, Trevor had often complained about it, but that Harvey, in his unique way, appeared to feel the same about him, seemed to revel in his involuntary responses, was… mindboggling.

And Harvey’s care for him hadn’t ended after he’d sent Mike to bed. He had insisted on leaving him some money for a cab since he didn’t want Mike biking over to Manhattan when he was on painkillers. Mike could understand the lawyers reasoning, but had chosen to take the subway instead. He wanted to safe the cab-money and buy himself a helmet the next day, not only to earn Harvey’s approval and show him that he wanted to be his good boy. He wasn’t stupid and could totally see the necessity of a helmet.

By taking the subway he had needed more than an hour to get to work, since he had to change lines a couple of times. That’s why he was already later than usual and Mike knew that his rest period between his jobs would be cut painfully short. Well, that couldn’t be helped. He longed to get back to bed and sleep for a week, but he couldn’t afford to call in sick and risk losing either of his jobs.

**********

When he finally stood in front of Harvey’s office, saving it again for last, he briefly thought about skipping to clean it. Surely, Harvey would understand. But then he decided that he couldn’t take the risk. He knew that his supervisor did surprise-inspections every now and then and he wouldn’t trust his luck, not when his Grammy’s well-being and health-care was at risk.

With a resigned sigh he pushed the glass door open and switched on the light. His eyes widened when he looked towards the windows opposite the entrance.

In the middle of Harvey’s desk sat a matte-black bike-helmet, adorned with a silly bright-red bow on top. A note was attached to it. Mike slowly approached it, not sure if he could trust his eyes, and took the note.
Mike,

the thought of you terrorizing the streets on your bike without proper headgear makes my stomach clench. Since I don’t want to get an ulcer I expect you to wear the helmet every time you get your ass on a bike. And please, don’t run any more red lights. You’re mine and I don’t want you to damage my property any further.

Harvey

Mike could feel a huge grin spreading over his face as he imagined Harvey’s tone of voice while he read the note. Harvey must’ve bought the helmet right after he had left his apartment and then driven back to the office to leave it as a surprise for Mike. And although Harvey’s note seemed to indicate that he had bought the helmet more for his own sake than his sub’s benefit, Mike wasn’t fooled. Harvey genuinely cared about him, no doubt about that.

He picked up the helmet, got rid of the silly bow and put it on. Mike knew that the brand was expensive and renowned for its good quality. Well, for Harvey Specter only the best was good enough. From advertisements in bike-magazines Mike knew that a lot of professionals wore this kind of helmet in downhill races and since he was pretty sure that Harvey wasn’t a subscriber to said magazines, the lawyer must have bullied some poor sales clerk into simply selling him the best of the best.

Mike adjusted the size by shortening the straps and after a few moments the helmet fit him perfectly. It was light enough that he barely felt it and was way more comfortable than his old one which he had gotten second-hand from a fellow messenger.

On a whim he decided to take a selfie and send it to Harvey as a thank-you. Maybe it would make him smile in the morning when he checked his phone. Only moments after he’d hit the send button on his phone, Mike could hear a faint beeping behind him. For a moment he was confused but then a thought arose in his mind and he slowly turned around.

Sure enough, Harvey was standing in the doorway, his mobile phone in his hand, looking down at the screen. He was wearing casual clothes and his hair looked for once un-styled and a few shades lighter without the gel as it fell in natural waves and slightly tousled across his forehead. Mike had the suspicion that Harvey had discontinued his night’s sleep for the sole purpose to surprise him in the middle of the night and his heart sang with joy. But he wasn’t stupid enough to call Harvey out on it.

“It looks good on you,” the lawyer commented softly and put his phone away.

Mike slowly took the helmet off, casually rubbing his fingers through his flattened hair to make it stand up again, his eyes never leaving Harvey’s face. The older man watched him intently but stayed where he was, his hands now casually shoved in his pants-pockets. Mike closed the distance, helmet still in his left hand and only stopped when he was a few inches away from Harvey.

For the first time he actually realized that they were nearly the same height, Harvey maybe only half an inch taller. It was merely the difference in their physique and posture that made Mike always feel smaller and inferior.

After a few seconds, Mike dropped his eyes from Harvey’s intense gaze down to the lawyer’s mouth.

Right from the start Mike had noticed that Harvey had the most intriguing mouth he’d ever seen. The lips were thinning into lines towards the corners of his mouth but were a little fuller in the center. Not
really pretty in a classic way but in Mike’s book they were unique and perfect, like the man they belonged to.

Without making a conscious decision Mike swiftly closed the remaining distance between them and pressed his own lips on his Dom’s. For a second he could feel Harvey stiffen and he thought that he had made a mistake, but then Harvey responded to the kiss by opening his mouth. At first the lawyer’s lips felt soft on Mike’s own but Harvey soon seemed to overcome his initial surprise at Mike’s forwardness and began to dominate the kiss. His lips became more demanding and his tongue found its way into Mike’s mouth, claiming it as his prize. The kiss became messier as Mike responded in kind and their tongues wound around each other, exploring the wet heat of their mouths.

Harvey retreated a little to sweep his tongue over Mike’s full lower lip which earned him a sweet sigh, only to plunge it deep into his sub’s mouth once more, sampling his boy’s taste with abandon. Their breathing became more labored and Mike could feel Harvey’s hands all over his torso, finally finding their way under his t-shirt, first on his back then wandering to his chest. When Harvey’s blunt fingernails raked accidentally over his nipples, making them instantly hard, he moaned loudly into Harvey’s mouth, his hips bucking forward involuntarily.

Mike became aware that during their kiss he had gotten almost painfully hard and all he wanted now was to rub himself against Harvey’s thigh like a cat in heat while his mouth was being plundered by his Dom. Harvey seemed to sense Mike’s need but instead of obliging him, the Dom broke the kiss and placed his hands firmly on Mike’s chest, slowly pushing him away a few inches. Mike whined in protest but when he caught Harvey’s chiding gaze he tried to control himself.

“You need to learn self-restraint, Puppy.” Harvey’s voice sounded perfectly in control but he looked as wrecked as Mike was sure he himself looked. “Pushiness is unbecoming in a good sub. But don’t worry, I will teach you.”

The Dom’s eyes had become nearly black with arousal and when Mike let his gaze drop toward Harvey’s crotch he could see a telltale bulge behind the dark-grey fabric of the slacks Harvey were wearing.

Not trusting his voice Mike only nodded. Harvey gave him an approving look and ruffled his hair affectionately.

“Good boy.”

Mike groaned. “You’re not helping.”

Harvey grinned broadly and Mike was reminded of a shark while he suddenly felt like a little clownfish without an anemone to hide in.

“And where would be the fun in that, Rookie?”

Mike slowly shook his head, questioning his own sanity regarding his decision to become Harvey’s sub. He suddenly had the feeling, that he had no idea what he would get himself into come Saturday, only that, whatever it was, it would change him forever.

“You’re a cruel man, Mr. Specter.”

Harvey’s grin spread to his eyes and suddenly they were framed with a lot of laughter-lines, giving the Dom a much younger impression.

“And you only just get that now?” He turned on the spot and left the office. A few feet away he
stopped, looked over his shoulder and asked casually, “Want a lift home, Rookie?”

Now, two nights in a row, Harvey’s office wouldn’t be cleaned but the lawyer had only to blame himself for that.

“Give me 10 minutes to store the supplies.”

“You got 5, Kid. And don’t forget your helmet.”

Chapter End Notes

I had planned a kissing scene much later in the story but pushy Mike went ahead and took Harvey and myself totally by surprise. Once I had written it down I couldn't delete it (I was staring at my screen thinking, where did that suddenly come from?) because it seemed perfect this way.

Thank you for reading. All errors regarding grammar and spelling are my own. This story is not beta-read.
I would love to read your comments and kudos is also appreciated.
Homework

Chapter Summary

Mike gets an e-mail from Harvey with some homework for him.

Chapter Notes

See the end of the chapter for notes

Thursday

When Mike drifted slowly toward consciousness, having slept for a few blissful hours after Harvey had dropped him off, his right hand sneak ed under his well-worn comforter and down to his crotch of its own accord. He palmed his morning-hard dick through the soft fabric of his pajama pants for a few precious moments, as if to make sure that it hadn’t miraculously disappeared during the night. Talk about abandonment issues. A psychiatrist would probably have a field day with that.

The memory of the kiss popped into his mind. With only his thumb and index finger he slowly trailed up and down his length, teasing himself through the well-worn cotton cloth a little without causing much real friction. For a moment he contemplated indulging himself in a languid hand job while his memory would provide him with Harvey’s image as an incentive. His thumb swiped over his still clothed cockhead and he could feel himself getting even harder the more he thought about how Harvey’s tongue had felt in his mouth.

Oh, hell, he had earned a little fun. Mike let go of himself to get the lube from his dresser beside his bed but as he rummaged around in the drawer for the bottle, his eyes involuntarily swept over his alarm clock.

08:21 am! Fuck!

He had overslept and would never manage to get to his job on time, which incidentally would be in 9 minutes. He needed to call the messenger headquarter to let them know he was running late or the owner, who wasn’t exactly a fan of him due to some smart-ass comments on his side, would fire him on the spot. There were always enough desperate guys out there to replace him in a heartbeat, as Jorge never grew tired to remind him.

When he unlocked his phone he discovered that he had a text message from Harvey.

(Harvey 07:12 am) Morning Sleepyhead. Check your e-mail.

(Mike 08:23 am) Morning. Is it okay if I do it tonight? I’m already late for work. I overslept.

(Harvey 08:25 am) Yes. Tonight then. Don’t run any red lights. And wear your helmet!

Mike rolled his eyes and before he could help himself he texted back.

(Mike 08:26 am) Yes Mom!
As soon as he hit send, he cringed. *Shit!*

Sure enough, Harvey didn’t let it slide. Of course he didn’t.

(Harvey 08:32 am) *Keep up that kind of attitude and I can guarantee you that after Saturday you will never be able to sit in my presence comfortably again.*

(Mike 08:33 am) *Sorry, Sir! Really, so sorry.*

When Harvey didn’t text back, he quickly made his call to the messenger-service. Luckily for him, Lisa was on phone duty and although she wasn’t happy about him running late she didn’t exactly give him a hard time either.

Mike swallowed some Advil down dry, got dressed in a hurry and bolted out of his flat with his bike in tow only to return seconds later to fetch his new helmet. Since he still had Harvey’s cab money from the night before he decided to treat himself a little and buy a delicious breakfast burrito at the place near the bike-messenger office. He could eat it with one hand while biking and wouldn’t lose much time in order to get to work.

Still chewing, he sauntered in at 09:13 am, nearly 45 minutes after he was supposed to show up, and gave the woman on phone-duty his best charming smile.

“Hey Lisa, how’s tricks?” he hollered at her as soon as he was through the door, wiping his chin with the back of his hand to get rid of some lingering drops of hot sauce that had got caught in his 5-day stubble. It made a slight rasping noise and felt prickly against the skin on the back of his hand. He should probably shave before Saturday. Harvey, always immaculately groomed himself, didn’t seem like the type of guy who would like beard-burn, assuming (hoping) they would be kissing again.

Since the woman was on the phone she only gave him an eye-roll and pointed accusingly to the clock on the wall.

“Yes, sorry I’m late,” he mouthed so as not to interrupt her phone call any further, rubbing his hands clean on his pants since he had forgotten to take some napkins when he’d gotten his breakfast.

Lisa hung up and waved the slip of paper she had scribbled on in his direction.

“Thank you for gracing me with your presence. You’re lucky it has been a slow morning so far.”

He pointed at his bandaged elbow and made a pained face. “I would’ve been here earlier but I had a little accident yesterday on my way home and the pain…” He let his voice trail off in a theatrical fashion as if he were lying on his death-bed. Lisa couldn’t help but smile. Mike’s boyish charm always melted her heart, although she didn’t buy his act for one second.

“All right smart ass. Here’s your first tour.” She handed him the note and waved him off as the phone rang once more.

As Mike pedaled through the street canyons of the Financial District, he actually tried to focus on the traffic around him instead of thinking about the kiss or the e-mail that was waiting for him at home. After he finished his first delivery and checked in with Lisa again to get his next assignment, he pondered for a moment if he should visit the internet-café in SoHo, near the Deli where he planned to get his lunch, and check his e-mail. He decided against it after a few moments of careful thought because most likely Harvey would’ve sent him something that would distract him for the rest of the day and he couldn’t risk another stunt like yesterday. So he tried to put the thought of the e-mail, and Harvey in general, out of his mind and get his shift over with without becoming a smear on the
tarmac for a change.

Since it really was a slow day, Lisa sent him home at 5 pm and for once he didn’t protest that he needed the hours.

As soon as the door closed behind him he fired up his laptop, toed of his sneakers, got himself a beer to battle the Red Bull buzz from the fridge and settled in on his couch lengthwise.

The old computer needed a few minutes until he finally could open Thunderbird and he impatiently tapped his fingers against the scratched and battered casing, beating out the rhythm of Learn to fly by the Foo Fighters that had been stuck in his head for almost the whole day (it had been playing on the radio in the mail room of this wall street firm on his 6th delivery).

Like most of his possessions, it was second-hand, a hand-me-down from Jenny when she’d bought herself a new one. Finally, the program opened and slowly downloaded the new e-mails. The WLAN of his downstairs neighbor (password Tom999, how stupid could one be although the 999 made it marginally safer?) was excruciatingly slow but since Mike was poaching he really wasn’t in a position to complain.

He quickly scrolled through his inbox (spam, spam and more spam and ouch, a new invoice from Grammys nursing home) until he found what he was looking for.

To Mike.Ross@....com

From Harvey.Specter@....com

Subject: Questionnaire

Mike,

the purpose of the attached questionnaire is to give me a better feeling for what you like and dislike and what you might be interested in regarding our upcoming arrangement. However, in this questionnaire are some options included that I myself would probably not choose and am not entirely comfortable with but giving you a broad range of options will help me to assess what you want and need.

So, regardless of my own preferences, I want you to be honest, to think about what you want, what you’re curious about and where your limits (hard / soft) are. Don’t think about what I might want from you, this doesn’t work that way.

I will fill out an almost identical form and then we will compare our notes and talk about our preferences and hopefully come to a satisfactory agreement for both of us on Saturday.

After you have drafted the contract (let’s see what Columbia pre-law can do) to our negotiated specifications and we both have signed, I want us to have a scene. Bring an overnight bag because after our first proper scene I want you to stay to make sure that you’re all right.

As a sort of signing-bonus you are allowed to choose from three different options I have prepared for our scene. After that there won’t be a whole lot of choices you’re allowed to make, so better enjoy it while you can.
I know that we haven’t entered officially into our arrangement yet but nevertheless, until our meeting at Saturday, I don’t want you to come. You can touch yourself but don’t get yourself off. That will be my job. If you feel that you’re not able to do what I ask, I want you to call me before you take further actions, at any time, and tell me why you can’t wait till Saturday.

If you have any questions or feel uneasy or nervous about anything, I want you to call me. Like stated in the questionnaire under non-negotiable rules, communication between us is essential, so please don’t fail to talk to me just because you think that what you’re thinking or feeling is stupid or that I might get mad at you or suddenly don’t want you anymore. That will not be the case.

And please think about in which kind of capacity you want to execute our association as Dom / sub. Like I explained on Wednesday after your accident, I truly believe that you would benefit from a full-time arrangement because then I could hold you responsible for all your actions and help you develop your full potential. However, if you want to take it slow, the contract could also apply only to whenever we meet to have a scene.

Harvey

P.S. I still want you to call every evening until our meeting, if only for a couple of minutes.

The e-mail had a word-document attached to it and Mike curiously clicked it open.

His eyes scanned quickly over the words and he absentmindedly took a sip of his beer, licked his lips afterward and began to nibble at his lower lip. He could feel his cock getting hard and pressing up against his laptop that lay in his lap just by reading a few words and imagining how they could apply to his person.

Holy shit! That was….HOLY SHIT! All these different options. And Harvey would really let him choose. Would even overcome some of his own soft limits if Mike would want to try something he himself hadn’t wanted so far. At least that’s what Harvey had indicated in his e-mail. He felt like a little kid in a candy store, not knowing where to start first.

Mike’s breathing became quicker as his eyes darted erratically over the document, scrolling up and down, bouncing around like a bumblebee on steroids. He felt a little overwhelmed with all the choices he had to make, he was allowed, nay required to make.

Sure, he had talked with Harvey about this, but suddenly seeing all this specific options written down in front of him made it much more real. Before today, everything they had talked about had still somehow seemed hypothetical like Harvey could always take it back and tell him that it had been a mistake, or worse, a joke. Some subconscious part of Mike had still believed (feared) that talk was all they were ever going to do, but now, seeing the words in writing suddenly took the whole concept out of fantasy world and placed it right here in reality.

They were really doing this. This document was proof of it. They would even make a contract, in writing. Sure, it probably wouldn’t hold up in court (that would be a fun court case), but still.

The formality and seriousness of it hit Mike.

His first impulse had been to enthusiastically agree to almost everything, just trusting that Harvey would get it right for both of them, but it suddenly dawned on him, that he owed it to Harvey, and himself, to consider every option carefully and assess how he felt about it. In this at least they would
be equal partners and he would need to take responsibility for his own needs and desires. This couldn’t be done casually in only a couple of minutes.

Suddenly, he felt terrified. What if he got it wrong? What if he made a mistake, misjudged himself somehow and what had happened with Steven would repeat itself again, but this time with Harvey? He could feel his throat closing up and breathing became hard work. Mike sat up and placed the laptop on his coffee table. First, he needed to calm down. As he took some slow deep breaths his gaze fell on his phone and on a whim he decided to call Harvey.

The lawyer picked up almost immediately.

“Mike. You’re home early,” Harvey greeted him casually, almost as if someone might overhear him and the voice instantly calmed Mike down.

“Yeah. Slow day.” Mike didn’t really know how to brooch the subject of the questionnaire so he decided to make small talk until his brain had come down from its panic-induced rush a little. “Are you still at work?”

“Yes. Something came up and I need to work a couple more hours.”

“Well, don’t leave any mess in your office or the poor guy who will need to clean it later might be upset.”

“Well, the poor guy, as you call that slacker, hasn’t cleaned my office for the past two days. There are fingerprints, I repeat, fingerprints all over the surface of my desk. It’s disgusting. I’m actually considering complaining to his supervisor. This sort of work ethic really shouldn’t go unpunished.”

“Ohaha…” Mike was almost sure that Harvey was joking. Almost.

“Or maybe I do the punishing myself. Bend him over my desk and take the ruler to his bare ass. Make him lick it clean afterwards.” The Dom’s voice had grown dark and husky and the image of Harvey making good on his threat let Mike swallow in nervous anticipation.

“Of course, any sort of punishment would need to be negotiated beforehand. Speaking of which, have you read my e-mail? I assume that’s why you’re sounding a little bit flustered.”

Damn, did nothing escape that man?

“Since you mention it, yeah, I’ve read your e-mail.” He paused, not sure how to go on.

“And… ,” Harvey prompted.

“Yeah, well…. It’s a lot to take in. It’s not that I’ve done something like this before.”

“Is there anything that worries you?”

Mike actually thought about it. Was he worried? No, more like terrified.

Harvey had waited patiently for his reply, sensing the internal struggle of the rookie.

“I’m not worried, I’m terrified. I’ve only skimmed over the list so far, but I feel a little overwhelmed and I’m scared that I get it wrong. And I’m horny as well. And nervous. What if I make a mistake and… .”

“Mike, do you want to call it off? Is it too much too soon?”
“NO! No I don’t. It’s just, I got it wrong with Steven and we both know how that worked out. You’re much more important and I’m terrified that I will screw up again. I want this – us to work.”

Harvey laughed relieved. He thought back to his first questionnaire and could totally understand what Mike was getting at. The first big leap was to admit to yourself that you felt the need to either dominate or submit. The second was to actually do something about it. He remembered how he had felt when he negotiated his first scene with a sub, under the supervision of an experienced Dom. He got why Mike was overwhelmed and worried although he knew that the kid had no reason to be afraid. After all, Harvey was experienced enough to pick up on any error of judgment Mike might make regarding his own needs.

“Just take your time. Don’t make any rushed decisions and remember that we can always re-negotiate if necessary. I don’t expect you to get it exactly right just now. Like I already told you, it’s a learning curve. And I will carefully watch any of your reactions when we try something new and the moment I suspect something is wrong, I will stop. I’ve got you, Mike. No need to be afraid.”

Harvey’s self-assured voice managed to calm Mike down a bit and he managed to voice a thought that had stuck in the back of his brain ever since he opened the document.

“Where did you get the list anyway? Did you download it from the internet? www.Doms’rUs.com?”

“Yes, sure. And catch myself a virus as a bonus. Think again, Rookie.”

“So you wrote it yourself.” Mike’s voice dropped into a conspiratorially whisper. “Did you do it during work while you were sitting at your desk with the glass tabletop, getting it all smudged in the process?” Mike was picturing Harvey in his expensive suit, with his perfectly groomed hair sitting at his glass desk, writing the kink-list and getting hard while he thought about which of these things he might wanna do to Mike.

Harvey could guess how Mike’s mind worked but refused to play along.

“Actually, I had my assistant type it up for me,” Harvey deadpanned.

Mike was only baffled for a second. “You know, the sad thing is, I actually believe you.”

“See, you’re already getting to know me.” Harvey chuckled.

The easy banter between them felt natural and Harvey, to his slight regret, could see how he needed to nip that in the bud after Saturday or Mike would probably take it as permission to mouth off to him. He already skirted awfully close to the thin red line as it was, crossing it with the occasional toe, like he had earlier with his text message.

“Can I give you some advice?” he offered a little more seriously.

“Sure. That would be great.” The kid was so easy to guide, always eager to follow his lead.

“Scan the list a couple of times. Think first about your hard limits and narrow the list down. Then do the same with your soft limits and things you’re curious about. What’s left after that should be all the things you definitely want to do. If you’re not sure how you feel about something, just try to picture it in your head and see how your body reacts. If you’re still not sure after that, we can talk about that on Saturday. Or earlier, if you want.”

Mike thought about this approach. This definitely sounded sensible and he wouldn’t be overwhelmed when he narrowed the list down in stages.
“I think this really helps. Yeah, I will do it this way.”

“Well, then better get to it rookie. Only 2 more nights to go.”

“Yes, Sir!” Although Mike couldn’t be faulted for the choice of words, his mocking tone of voice definitely demanded a reprimand.

“I would better watch myself, Lippy. After Saturday this kind of behavior will get you in trouble. So better start practicing now.”

Mike gulped audibly. He really needed to keep himself in check. Harvey was not one of his fellow colleagues or Trevor or even Jenny and he didn’t want him to be, either. He needed Harvey to be his Dom not his friend. Well, maybe a combination of both at times but not only a friend.

“Yes, Sir. I’m sorry.”

“I know. And now, both of us have work to do. Hear you tomorrow.”

“Bye. And thanks, Harvey.”

“Call if something’s on your mind.”

“I will. Good night.”

After the call, Mike felt more collected. Thanks to Harvey he now had a plan how to proceed.

He grabbed his laptop once more but this time he stretched out onto his bed, his head propped up against the wooden headboard.

“If you not sure how you feel about something, just try to picture it in your head and see how your body reacts,” Harvey’s voice replayed in his mind.

Mike grinned a little. This might actually get more than a little enjoyable. He stood up again and decided to get ready for bed since it would take him most likely a couple of hours to consider all the options on Harvey’s list thoroughly. And, as an added bonus, his pajama-pants would give him easier access if he needed to assess the reactions of his body properly.

Suddenly another thought occurred.

“I know that we haven’t entered officially into our arrangement yet but until our meeting at Saturday, I don’t want you to come. You can touch yourself but don’t get yourself off. That will be my job.”

Fuck!

Chapter End Notes

Thank you for reading. I apologize for any mistakes regarding grammar and spelling.

I would really like to read any comments you have for me and kudos is also very much appreciated.
Chapter Summary

Mike delivers his homework to Harvey like the good little bike-messenger he is.

Chapter Notes

This chapter contains the negotiation questionnaire that was mentioned in the previous chapter. I don't speak English legalese but I did my best to make it sound like a contract. I actually wrote it myself although I'm quite sure that there might be some of these available online. But I was a little afraid of what kind of mail or adds I would get if I downloaded one and besides, I had a lot of fun making the list up by myself. Like I said before, I have no personal experience with BDSM so if I got something really wrong, please feel free to comment on it and I will correct it.

See the end of the chapter for more notes

Friday

Harvey was sitting at his desk, trying to concentrate on the boring merger that Jessica had stuck him with (she'd actually played the managing partner card) when he noticed a commotion outside his office. Since every distraction was better than staring at the columns of figures on the screen of his laptop he happily let himself be distracted. As he looked up he could see Donna argue with a guy in bike-shorts and a somewhat familiar black bike helmet.

Mike! His heart actually skipped a little, not a full beat but there was definitely a tiny stumble.

He hit the button of his intercom since he couldn't hear what Donna and Mike were arguing about.

“Donna! What’s going on?” Instead of replying via the intercom, she just stuck her head into his office, making sure to shield the entrance from the intruder.

“There’s a bike messenger who claims that he needs to make his delivery in person. He wouldn’t let me have it. Wouldn’t even tell me who sent it. Insolent little shit.” She sounded pissed off that she as Harvey’s gatekeeper and trusty secretary couldn’t convince one lowly messenger to hand her the envelope. Maybe she was afraid that she was losing her touch. This guy with the boyish grin definitely didn’t seem cowed by her sheer force of will.

Harvey rolled his eyes. What was the kid up to now?

“All right. Send him in. I deal with it.”

“Really Harvey, I can manage. I’m Donna. This guy will need to learn his place.”

For a moment Harvey’s fantasy provided him with the image of a furious Donna driving the 4-inch heel of her shoe through Mike’s skull. Luckily his kid was still wearing the helmet. This woman
could be fierce when scorned. Hell-hath-no-fury-fierce.

Harvey cringed internally while maintaining his impassive lawyer face. *Shit! If he would intervene now, Donna would be pissed at him too. But on the other hand, he couldn’t risk that Donna would find out that he knew Mike somewhat intimately. So he decided to try a little subterfuge.*

Winking at her, he let an evil smile, the one he usually reserved for Louis, spread over his lips.

“And why should you have all the fun? No, really Donna. I could need a distraction because Louis’ figures are giving me a headache. Putting someone in their proper place is exactly what I need right now. And you always frown when I do it to one of the associates.”

As always, the redhead put his needs in front of her own. She smiled back conspiratorially, happy that she could provide him with this distraction.

“You got it, boss.” With a mocking gesture and a “you had it coming, kid” expression on her face she indicated that Mike should enter the sanctum sanctorum that was Harvey’s office.

Before Mike could open his mouth, Harvey had stood up, shoulders back and chin slightly raised to emphasize on his superior physique, lips pressed together razor-thin, giving the intruder a seriously pissed-off look.

“No you, always barge in and interrupt people way more important than you during their work? Do you have any idea how much my time is worth?”

Mike gulped visibly so Harvey gave him a wink when he was sure that Donna’s back was turned. He pointed towards the intercom to let Mike know that they had an eavesdropper. His boy was quick on the uptake and smiled relieved, nodding slightly to show Harvey that he had understood.

“I’m so sorry Sir, but the sender insisted that this envelope would be delivered only into your own hands. I would’ve given it to your beautiful assistant but I was afraid that I could lose my job.” He sounded suitably cowed and remorseful and Harvey could read in the way Donna’s posture changed, that she felt satisfied with the kid’s demure explanation. After all, he hadn’t slighted her person but only was afraid of losing his source of income. She could be magnanimous and live with that.

Harvey held out his hand. “Hand it over then,” he ordered brusque.

Mike rummaged in his messenger bag and pulled out a large brown envelope. After handing it over to Harvey he got his phone out, typed something and then handed it to Harvey as well.

“I need your signature, Sir,” he explained.

Harvey looked down on the phone and saw that Mike had opened his text messenger.

“Sorry. Didn’t mean to cause trouble but couldn’t risk her opening the envelope. Missed you and wanted to see you.”

Mouthy and pushy. His to-do list for Mike’s training got longer and longer. A gag would definitely do the trick to shut this beautiful mouth up for once and with the proper restraints, all the pushiness would be kept in check as well, with the additional benefit that Mike would look stunning like that, naked, bound and gagged, only allowed to plead with this beautiful blue eyes.

With a quick glance Harvey made sure that Donna’s back was still turned. “I missed you too,” he mouthed softly only for Mike’s ears. After all, it wasn’t Saturday yet and he still was allowed to be a little forgiving. Mike’s training hadn’t begun yet. For Donna’s benefit he added louder, “Get out of
here and don’t cause any more trouble or I will complain to your supervisor. People like you should know how to behave properly. Maybe a day’s work without pay would teach you that lesson.”

Although Mike knew that Harvey was only play-acting he actually felt a little intimidated by the lawyers display of power.

“Please Sir, don’t report me. I’m so sorry to have inconvenienced you. Again, my apologies to you and your assistant as well.” He sounded almost desperate, as if Harvey really would do that to him.

Then he winked at Harvey, mouthed a soft “Bye” and turned around. His head was actually tucked a little between his shoulders when he hurried out of Harvey’s office. He didn’t spare Donna another glance and rushed along the hallway towards the elevator.

As soon as Mike was out of sight, Donna got out of her cubicle and went to Harvey.

“That was a little harsh,” she commented, well aware that Harvey knew she had listened in.

Harvey just shrugged. “Well, you wanted this guy beaten into submission and that’s what I did.”

“Yes, but that was before I knew that he wasn’t trying to be disrespectful to me but only wanted to do his job.” She sighed. “The poor guy looked like a kicked puppy when he practically ran out of your office.”

“Yeah, well. He had it coming because he upset you.” He gave her his best Harvey Specter smile.

Harvey had actually fun seeing Donna defend his boy.

“You know Harvey, only because you hate to work with Louis on this merger doesn’t give you the right to treat other people like shit. And kicking puppies has never solved any problems.” Having scolded her boss properly she turned on her heel and went back outside, turning her back at him as she sat down.

For a moment Harvey just sat there, with his mouth slightly open. Then he shook his head in disbelief. It seemed that Mike triggered a protective urge not only in him, but in Donna as well. It would be interesting to see how Jessica would react to his boy. She would probably adopt him on the spot.

When he looked down, he remembered the envelope on his desk top. Using the silver letter opener Jessica had given him when he made it to senior associate, he slit it open and peeked inside.

It seemed as though his boy had done his homework. But as curious as he was, he couldn’t risk to read Mike’s answers here, where everybody could interrupt him. If Louis saw what was on the pages, he would probably shit himself with glee right before running to Jessica to rat him out.

He slid the envelope in the drawer with the lock and shut it away for now. With a resigned sigh he turned back to his laptop to peruse the financials of the merger once more.

**********

When Harvey had finally shaken Louis off – god, this guy could be really obnoxious – and managed to get home, he was literally vibrating with anticipation. He had a pretty good idea, what
Mike might want to explore but he couldn’t wait to see if he was right.

He placed his briefcase with the envelope inside on his coffee table and went into his bedroom to change into something more comfortable. After a quick look in his fridge he decided to have the leftover Chinese for dinner and heated it up in the microwave. Before he settled in on the breakfast bar to eat, he got the envelope and slid the pages with the questionnaire out, spreading them in front of him.

Settling down and eating absentmindedly he scanned over Mikes responses.

Negotiation Questionnaire

Preface:

The following options of which Mike Ross, subsequently dubbed the sub, is allowed to choose will apply to each scene both parties (Harvey Specter –Dom- / Mike Ross - sub-) participate in.

The scenes can either be scheduled as a standing appointment or as individual appointments whenever the parties agree.

However, should the sub choose to enter into a permanent arrangement with his Dom (24/7) the options below would apply whenever both parties are in a scene. In addition, the Dom would also take control of certain aspects of the day to day life of the sub. These may include decisions regarding

- Sex-partners (outside scenes with Dom) Right now I think that you will be all I can manage.
- Self-pleasuring / Masturbation / Orgasm (outside scenes with Dom) I’m okay with that I guess. Might be a little frustrating if you leave me hanging too long, though.
- Personal grooming What’s wrong with my grooming? So far you seem to like how I look.
- Clothing You know that I’m a bike-messenger / cleaner, right?
- Nutrition I’m not going vegan or eating Quinoa or such shit. Hard limit!
- Health care I already have Obama-care and floss regularly.
- Intake of alcohol and illegal substances Well, I guess this is only fair as long as I’m allowed a drink and smoke every now and then.
- Financial issues I’m not taking money for being your sub and I’m not paying you either. Couldn’t afford you anyway.
- Personal contacts etc. Not sure that I’m comfortable with that.

The specifics can be negotiated should the sub choose to enter into said permanent arrangement.

Options during a scene (in single capacity or combination):

Restraints / bondage: yes / no
If yes, elaborate (check or mark as soft / hard limit)

- Restraining of wrists / arms and / or legs / and / or whole body with yes to everything
- rope (hemp, sisal, synthetic fiber) Yes
- cuffs (metal /leather) Yes
- leather restraints Yes
- shibari-bondage Need more information. Looks gorgeous if uncomfortable. But I guess that’s the point.
- predicament bondage Needed to watch some porn to know what you mean. Probably not my cup of tea but maybe later. Unsure. Soft limit for now.
- zip ties Soft limit. Sounds very cheap and uncomfortable.
- spreader bars Not sure but could be fun. Need more information but willing to try.
- unconventional restraints (scarfs, ties, clothing items, etc.) Yes

Gags: yes / ☐ But I’m a little concerned about breathing issues.

If yes, elaborate (check or mark as soft / hard limit)

- Ball gag Not sure. Need to try it I guess.
- Wiffle gag Had to google it but since it has holes in it I think it’s okay.
- Cock gag For now soft limit. Little afraid that I would gag or choke.
- Bit gag This might be okay. Breathing seems possible but it looks a little silly. Like a horse in harness. You wouldn’t want me to neigh, would you?
- Ring gag Would have to try it. But I’m pretty sure that I would drool a lot. Do you really find that hot, me drooling like a bitch in heat? But then, I guess I would have your cock in my mouth most of the time, since this is the purpose of this kind of gag.
- Unconventional gag (cloth, tie etc.) Yes, as long as breathing is not impaired.

Pain-play: yes / ☐

If yes, elaborate (check or mark as hard / soft limit)

- Impact play with various implements (check or mark implements as hard / soft limit)
  - Hand Yes
  - Paddle Yes
  - Strap Yes
  - Flogger maybe after a while but not in the beginning. Still remembering Steven. I think that you need to go slow on me at first.
  - Riding crop see flogger
  - Cane see flogger
  - Whip see flogger
  - Unconventional implements (hairbrush, ruler, cooking-tools etc.) As long as it’s not barbed wire it is okay I guess. Can I decide when the occasion arises?

- Marking (check or mark options as hard / soft limits)
  - Only if can be hidden under clothes Yes
Permanent marks (scars, tattoos, brandings, piercings etc.)
Temporary marks (bruises, welts, love bites etc.) Yes
Breaking of skin / bleeding (cuts, needle marks, blisters, scratches, abrasions etc.)

• Further pain-inducing equipment (check or mark as hard / soft limits)
  o Nipple clamps Yes but I have never tried it so if I hate it and my nipples turn black and fall off, it’s off the list.
  o Needle play (only in combination with breaking skin / bleeding) No way! Watched a video and almost puked.
  o Electricity–You’re kidding right? What would you use anyway? Taser? Cattle prod?
  o Hot wax Curious but not sure. Could be great or could seriously suck. Can we try it before I make a final decision?

Breath-play: yes / no

(Note: You would be supervised at all times and no force against your throat and neck will occur)
If yes, elaborate: (check or mark as soft / hard limit)
  • Hand over mouth and / or nose
  • Mask or other mechanical breath controlling implement

Sensory-play: yes / no
If yes, elaborate: (check or mark as soft / hard limit)
  • Sensory deprivation
    o Blindfolds (professional or makeshift) Yes
    o Restraints (professional or makeshift) Yes
    o Sound canceling headphones / ear plugs Yes
  • Sensory stimulation
    o Hot / cold implements (ice cubes, heating lube etc.) Yes
    o Soft and hart implements (feathers, soft cloth, wartenberg wheel etc.) Yes
    o Massage of full body or individual body parts Yes, please!

Sex: yes / no—Please, yes!
If yes, elaborate (check or mark as soft / hard limit)
  • Anal intercourse Yes! Never done it before, but I want to do it with you.
  • Stimulation of whole body by mouth / hands / toys in a passive capacity Yes!
  • Rutting against object or body part of Dom for stimulation of sub Well, if you’re into that, I guess I could give it a try. Never actually thought about it, though. Might look silly doing my horny dog impression.
  • Oral stimulation to genitals and / or ass (rimming) both in a passive and active capacity Now I’m getting really hard. Yes, of course!
• Face-fucking in a passive capacity I have no idea if I could do that (gag-reflex) although the thought of it makes me horny. Would need you to take it slow.
• Stimulation of genitals (penis, testicles and anal region) by hand both in a passive and active capacity Yes
• Being objectified by Dom for sexual gratification of said Dom No idea what you’re getting at.
• Use of Toys: yes / ☐ If yes, elaborate (check or mark as soft / hard Limit)
  ○ Anal plugs (various sizes and shapes, can be negotiated on a scene by scene basis) Yes!
  ○ Vibrators (various sizes, can be negotiated on a scene by scene basis) Yes!
  ○ Dildos (various sizes and material, can be negotiated on a scene by scene basis) Yes!
  ○ Cock rings Curious but no idea if I would like it.
  ○ Cock cages Not sure. Probably soft limit. Willing to try if you’re into it. But would depend on cage.
  ○ Sounding devices Watched a video and the thought of you doing this to me makes me cringe and my boner just evaporated and my balls actually tried to climb back into my body, so an emphatic NO!
• Orgasm delay / denial (during scene) Sounds exciting if a little bit frustrating. Yes!
• Forced orgasm(s) Can one force an orgasm? I’m quite sure I would always want to come, no force necessary.
• Sex / felatio without condoms (testing for STD’s of both parties required) Yes
• Cum-play (testing for STD’s of both parties required) Yes
• Golden shower / water works I really hope that this is one of the things you don’t want to do.

Further kinks: (check or mark as soft / hard limit)

• Humiliation (verbal / non-verbal) I guess calling me slut or something like that might be o.k. when you fuck me but in general I’m not sure that I’m into that.
• Praise (verbal / non-verbal) Yes, but then, I already told you how much I like it.
• Being given orders Yes as long as orders are not totally weird like barking like a dog or eating from the floor or something like that.
• Kneeling You already know that I like that.
• Begging Depends on the occasion. Being fucked or allowed to come yes, being allowed to lick your shoes or clean your toilet probably not.
• Being forbidden to speak Might be sensible considering how my mouth always gets me in trouble. I give it my best shot but please don’t expect me to be good at it.
• Specific clothing or lack thereof (nudity) I think that I would enjoy being naked for you, especially when you’re still wearing one of your suits. Wearing women’s panties or a latex body-suit not really a turn-on for me.
• Collaring Not sure. The thought appalls and excites me at the same time. Need to talk with you about it.
• Being given to another person by Dom for play (under supervision of Dom) Hard limit!
• Exhibitionism / public play (in a safe environment like a club) Yes.
• Bathroom denial Seriously?
• Finger-feeding Like you feeding me? Willing to try but not sure. Never thought about it. How would that work anyway? I guess Spaghettis and soup would be off the table?
• Puppy play Just NO! And I’m not wagging my tail for you either.
Other: *I really like it when you pet my head and stroke my hair. It calms me down and makes me sleepy.*

Kissing: *I really liked kissing you so it would be great if we could do that often.*

Non-negotiable rules:

- Honesty between Dom and sub is essential for a successful Dom / sub relationship, proper communication is key and therefore required of both parties.
- The sub will always treat his Dom with the utmost respect. Any other Doms he may encounter in public (for example a club) are included in this rule.

Punishment

- Explanation for punishment will always be given before punishment is executed.
- Punishment is not demeaning but a way to help correcting flaws and ultimately becoming a better sub.
- Disregard or silent treatment will never be used as punishment.
- Punishment will fit the transgression.
  - Corner time or certain chores for minor lapses like being disrespectful, disobeying minor rules etc.
  - Pain caused by different implements for more serious transgressions like violating a direct order, dishonesty, lying etc.
  - Other options if the transgressions demand it *That’s a little vague. In a contract that would be a humongous loophole.*
- After the punishment has been executed, the transgression will be forgiven and forgotten by the Dom.

Safe words: The use of the negotiated safe word (color-system or other) is not only encouraged but demanded if it becomes necessary. *Its use will never be punished or even frowned upon.*

Proper aftercare will always be provided after a scene. The sub will always communicate if unforeseen side-effects during or after a scene occur (sub drop, panic attacks etc.)

All scenes will be instigated by the Dom but the sub is allowed to ask for a scene, specific or general *Another loophole because this phrase doesn’t mean that you would actually do it if I asked.*

All scenes will be explained beforehand by the Dom and the sub will voice any misgivings and questions he may have in order to feel safe.

Hi Harvey,

*This took longer than I expected and now I’m really hard and want to get off so badly but I can’t because you asked me not to. Also, I’m quite certain that my downstairs neighbor will get some very strange adds the next time he goes on the internet. Definitely need to delete my browser history.*

*I’m really excited about all this and can’t wait to see you Saturday.*
Harvey still held the fork in his right hand, but his last bite had been a couple of minutes ago and the cold pork mu shu slowly congealed on the plate.

Well, Mike had been honest, Harvey had to give him that. He had been a mouthy little shit about it, sometimes downright snarky but that couldn’t be helped right now. Come Saturday, though, he would spank that snark out of his boy.

He pushed the plate aside, suddenly not hungry anymore. As he stood up he had to adjust himself a little since reading Mike’s responses, snark or no snark, had affected him quite a bit. He went to his home-office, got a legal pad and settled down on the couch.

Since he had promised Mike 3 different scenes for him to choose from he would better get to work and outline this scenes in accordance with Mike’s interest. He was really looking forward to see his boy tomorrow. They had agreed that Mike would come by at 5 pm since he worked morning till noon.

They would talk about their preferences than would eat and after that, finally play.

Tomorrow couldn’t come too soon.

Chapter End Notes

Thank you for reading. Please forgive any mistakes regarding grammar or spelling. Comments and Kudos are very much appreciated.
Wet dreams and soapy fingers

Chapter Summary

Saturday has come at last. A teeny tiny bit of porn and lots of dirty talk and negotiations.

Chapter Notes

See the end of the chapter for notes

Saturday morning.

He could feel Harvey’s mouth nibbling his neck right at this sensitive spot where it met his shoulder and the feeling of sharp teeth scraping over his skin, just the promise of pain instead of the actual thing, made him shiver with anticipation. Strong fingers wrapped themselves around his hard cock, executing just the right amount of pressure, spreading the moisture of the pre-come over its sensitive head. The solid body on top of him, holding him down, just added to his arousal. Being held down so firmly, surrendering himself to his Dom’s will, felt incredible. Harvey’s other hand had found its way to one of his nipples, teasing it with his fingertips until it was a hard rosy bud against the pale skin of his chest.

“You’re so beautiful like this. All blushing and hard and moaning for me,” Harvey’s low voice, hoarse with arousal, whispered into his ear.

Mike could feel his orgasm building in his stomach as the hand around his cock picked up speed.

Suddenly the teasing fingers on his nipple pinched hard and the pain only drove him closer to the edge.

“Harvey, please!” he begged. “Please let me come.”

“Not yet.” The hand around his cock teased him relentlessly and Mike’s hips tried to buck up to seek more friction.

“Please. I need to come. Please, Harvey, please!”

He was hushed by Harvey’s tongue licking into his mouth, shutting him up effectively.


Slowly Mike drifted awake when he heard the alarm he had set on his phone for 7 am. He could still feel Harvey’s hand around his cock, stroking him in a steady rhythm, only slowly becoming aware that it was his own hand that was wrapped around his hard leaking flesh and his other hand plucking at his sensitive nipple. His hips chased the friction and he realized that he was only seconds away from coming. Giving his hand a twist on the upstroke he could feel his balls tightening. One more firm stroke and he came with a muffled cry, spending himself over his fingers in his pajama-pants. Without much pressure he milked the last drops from his now sensitive cock, trying to catch his breath after his orgasm.
Wow, that had been awesome. He smiled a little as he tried to remember the dream, the memory of it rapidly becoming fuzzy. But Harvey had been there and he had done things to Mike, good things, painful things, but good.

Mike’s last wet dream had been a couple of years ago, when he was still in his teens, but all the changes in the last couple of days must have kicked his subconscious into overload. No wonder that he’d had such a vivid dream.

After Mike had studied Harvey’s kink list Thursday evening, considering every choice, in parts fantasizing about them, he had been nearly constantly aroused and only Harvey’s instructions that he wasn’t allowed to … Oh Shit! OH FUCK!

Mike yanked his hand from his cock as if it suddenly burned red hot. What had he done? How could he have forgotten? Harvey had given him one order. Only one order. And he’d screwed up again. He was the worst sub ever. Harvey would be so mad at him. How could he make it up to Harvey? What if Harvey had enough of him and this thing between them would end before it had even started properly?

For a moment Mike had the feeling that he couldn’t breathe. His chest felt constricted and only with great effort he managed to pull some air into his lungs. He concentrated on breathing, taking slow measured breaths, trying to calm down. When he felt his panic ebb a little, he wiped his hand clean on the sheets, grabbed the phone and did the only thing he could think of right now.

“Mike, you’re up early.” Harvey greeted him.

“I did something bad,” Mike confessed immediately, still a little breathless.

“Okay.” Harvey’s voice sounded carefully impassive. “What did you do, Mike?”

“I got myself off. I didn’t mean to but it happened and I’m so sorry. I never wanted to disappoint you and now you’re mad at me and you have every right. I have no self-control and I’m so sorry. I don’t deserve to be your sub but please, please, don’t send me away. Please, give me one more chance.”

“Mike, slow down. You sound like you’re at the brink of a panic attack. I want you to take a few deep breaths for me. Can you do that?”

The calm and slightly concerned voice of his Dom, devoid of even a hint of anger, was like an anchor that stopped Mike from spiraling down further into a full blown panic attack. He breathed in audibly, held his breath for a few seconds and exhaled. After a few more repeats he felt a little better and the pressure on his chest eased up.

“I’m better now,” he whispered.

“Okay, Michael. Tell me what happened.”

“I got myself off. Just now. I’m sorry.”

He could hear a little impatience creep into Harvey’s worried voice. “I got that the first time Mike. I want to know why you got yourself off when disobeying me is so clearly distressing to you.”

“I didn’t mean to. Really Harvey, you have to believe me. Please! I wasn’t really aware that I was doing it right until the last moment.”

A suspicion dawned on Harvey. “Mike, were you asleep and dreaming?”
“My alarm woke me up and my hand was already wrapped around my cock and I was stroking myself only in my dream it had been your hand and I couldn’t stop myself. It felt so good and I was still thinking of you, imagining that it was your hand. But I wasn’t dreaming anymore. I was awake. I just didn’t remember that I wasn’t supposed to come. I’m so sorry, Harvey. Please, forgive me.”

“Michael. I want you to listen to me.” Harvey waited for confirmation which didn’t come.

“Michael?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“I’m very proud of you that you called me as soon as you realized what you had done. And your transgression is a minor one. You were still half-asleep. Mike, these things happen, especially now when everything is new and exciting.”

“You’re not mad at me?”

“No Mike. I’m not mad at you. On the contrary. You did the right thing when you could have simply decided to keep it a secret. I would never have known.”

Mike snorted a little at that. “I couldn’t have hidden it from you. You would’ve known as soon as you’d seen me tonight.”

“Probably,” Harvey conceded, remembering how bad the kid was at hiding his feelings. “But still, your honesty makes me proud.”

“So you will not punish me?” Mike’s voice sounded a little odd and a thought popped into Harvey’s mind. He decided to go with his gut.

“Mike, do you want me to punish you?”

“No, I… I don’t… but, maybe… yes, I think I need that. Otherwise I won’t be able to forgive myself.”

“Mike, there’s nothing to forgive.”

When Mike stayed silent, Harvey gave in.

“You need to learn to forgive yourself, Mike. Trust me, when I tell you that everything is okay, then you did nothing wrong. Cut yourself some slack.”

“Please Harvey, I really think I need to be punished.”

“Why is that, Mike?”

“Because I cut myself so much slack over the last years that I almost hanged myself on it. I think that I need boundaries. I need you to be firm with me when I do something I should not do. I need to know that you will enforce these boundaries, because otherwise, what’s the point? Please Harvey, I need this.”

Mike could hear Harvey’s breathing as his Dom seemed to think about his request.

“All right Mike. I will punish you for what you did. But I decide how and you will forgive yourself when the punishment is over. Is that understood?”

Mike closed his eyes. Harvey had got him. He would keep him in check, keep him safe. The world
felt steady once more, not spiraling out of control.

“Yes Sir. Thank you.”

“Now, listen carefully to what I want you to do until our meeting at 5 pm.”

“Yes, Sir.”

“I want you to get up. Take a shower and get ready for work. I want you to eat something, preferably something healthy containing some vegetables or fresh fruit and not a whole string of e-numbers. I want you to pay attention to the traffic and wear your helmet. You will not, I repeat, not try to punish yourself in any way. This is my job.”

“Yes Sir.”

“When does your shift end?”

“At 1 pm, Sir.”

“When you get home, I want you to have lunch and then I want you to rest a little. Take a nap or just watch TV, whatever you want. I’ll send a cab to your address that will pick you up at 4:15 pm. That should give you enough time to get to my place. Before the cab picks you up however, I want you to take a hot shower and thoroughly clean yourself everywhere. And Mike, that will require you to insert a soapy finger into your ass. I want you clean inside and out.”

Mike’s breath hitched a little at that. He had done that before, fingered himself a little bit while jerking off, but only for his own pleasure. Doing it for Harvey, to get himself clean for him, ready for his Dom, was different.

“Mike, do you understand?”

“Yes, Sir. I understand.”

“And will you do this for me?”

“I will do everything for you, Sir.”

“Okay, now get to work. And don’t forget your overnight bag when you come over. I’m looking forward to having you for myself the whole night.”

“Yes, Harvey. I’m looking forward to that, too.”

**********

Harvey had prepared the evening like he would prepare for trial. The stage was carefully set, out here in the living room as well as in the intimate setting of his bedroom and he had dressed himself in one of his 3-piece suits, dark-blue pinstripe with matching vest but without the jacket, white dress shirt and burgundy red tie with a subtle pattern. This would emphasize his superiority because Mike would be dressed most likely in another one of his faded jeans and an old tee. And later, of course, he would spend the rest of the evening naked. Harvey, on the other hand, planned to show very little skin of his own tonight.
The items he intended to use on Mike were already laid out on the little bench on the end of his bed, ready for use when he would need them. He found that their display could be as arousing, or terrifying, as their actual use.

He had decided on a simple and light meal for them, just steaks and salad, that he would finish cooking while Mike would be busy playing secretary. Today there would be no alcohol, as much as Mike probably would want a drink to take the edge off.

To Harvey’s annoyance, the doorbell rang at 5:07 pm and he deliberately took his sweet time to open the door. He wouldn’t be the forgiving, easy going type today. He would set the tone between them just right, like it needed to be between Dom and sub, between them, from now on.

Mike didn’t seem to notice his stern gaze and gave him one of his excited happy puppy-smiles as soon as he saw Harvey, his young face actually lighting up a little.

“Hi Harvey.” His eyes trailed over the shoulder of the older man who kept blocking the door and they got even wider than they’d already been. “Whoa, you gotta sweet place. Do you think that I can take it off your hands when you’re going out of town, like kind of a house-sitting situation?”

“You’re late!” Harvey actually barked a little to emphasize his annoyance.

Mike’s excited face fell and if he’d been a real puppy he would’ve probably tucked his tail between his legs right about now at the scolding of the much bigger scary dog. “Yeah, I’m sorry, but it’s only…” He looked at his watch. “… About 7 minutes. It’s still 5-ish,” he tried to play his transgression down.

“Did I ever give you the impression that tardiness is acceptable to me?” Harvey tilted his head a little to the right like he was curious with which kind of ludicrous excuse Mike would come up.

“I…, the traffic,” Mike saw Harvey’s unwavering expression and seemed to understand that he had only one option. “I’m sorry, Sir. I will do better next time.”

Harvey took a step back and magnanimously waved Mike in.

“You’d better,” he grumbled a little for show.

Mike slowly walked towards the living room, his head shifting from side to side to take everything in. When he saw the huge windows, he made a bee-line and came to a halt with his nose mere inches away from the glass.

“Wow!” His warm breath actually fogged the glass a little as he exhaled against it.

Harvey came to stand behind him but kept some distance between their bodies. His touch would be a privilege that needed to be earned by Mike from now on. Mike didn’t know it yet, but his training was already under way.

“Mike, turn around and look at me.”

Mike did as he was asked, although instead of looking Harvey in the eyes his gaze flickered nervously around the open room, unable to settle anywhere.

“Michael! Eyes.”

That did the trick.
“Yes, Sir.”

Harvey grabbed Mikes chin with his right hand, thumb placed over the barely noticeable cleft and looked the young man searchingly in the eyes. He could tell that Mike had a hard time to meet his enquiring gaze, his eyes wandering off Harvey’s own immediately, settling on his mouth instead.

“Did you drink any alcohol, smoke any pot or take anything else to get high today?”

Mike’s eyes snapped firmly back to his and took on a determined and also slightly wounded expression. “No, Sir. I haven’t forgotten what you told me at the club. I wouldn’t do that when I’m with you.”

Harvey was satisfied with what he could see in Mike’s face. He nodded his approval and let go of him.

“Put your duffle bag over there and take your shoes off. You can leave them there as well. Then sit on the couch. I… ,” Mike started to move toward the indicated direction but Harvey’s hand against his chest held him back. “I wasn’t finished…”

“But you…”

“Do we need to have a conversation about how you keep interrupting me?” Although the tone was light enough, the steely gaze of the dark brown eyes impressed on Mike that he was already, and without even trying, in deep water.

*Great!*

“No, Sir.”

“I want to lay down a few ground rules for today, because frankly, you can be a mouthy little brat without someone to keep you in check. That might be endearing and funny at times but it’s not a quality I appreciate in my sub and as such won’t tolerate from you anymore. So, until you’ve learned to behave yourself tonight you’re only allowed to speak when you’re asked a direct question. And your answer better be respectful and truthful. Do you understand?”

Mike looked like a scolded little kid. “Yes, Sir,” he mumbled but didn’t dare move.

Harvey reached out his hand and softly touched Mike’s cheek, caressing his cheekbone with his thumb to take the sting out of his former statement. Carrot and stick.

“I have every confidence in you, that you will get the hang of it soon,” he assured the nervous young man. “Now go and do as I’ve told you.”

When Mike was settled in at the couch, sock-clad feet (Harvey had at least seen one hole in each of them) tucked in under his thighs, Harvey placed a glass of ice water and a legal pad in front of him on the coffee table.

“I want you to take notes on what we agree,” he explained. “When we’re done negotiating, you will draw up the contract while I make dinner. After that we’ll play, although you’ve already forfeited your signing bonus. Latecomers don’t get treats.”

Mike opened his mouth to protest but caught himself just in time.

“See, you’re already learning. I knew that you would be my good boy,” the Dom praised. Positive reinforcement was such an essential part in Mike’s training.
Mike’s gaze fell on a few pages, lying upside down on the coffee table near where Harvey had taken a seat at the other end of the couch.

When Harvey picked them up, Mike knew immediately what they were.

Harvey perused them for a few moments to build up a little tension.

“Although I appreciate the honesty with which you filled out the negotiation questionnaire, I found your answers or comments in parts somewhat lacking in respect if not downright rude. I can guess that this is mainly due to your excitement when you filled out the form but it shows me that you blurt out everything that’s on your mind, without giving it a second thought. And I guess that this has gotten you in trouble on more than one occasion in the past. So, we will try to address this particular problem of yours until you’ve developed the necessary filter between your brain and mouth. If you have an urgent question you may raise your hand and wait for my permission to speak. And of course you’re always allowed to use your safe word, no permission beforehand needed.”

Harvey waited a few moments but when Mike stayed obediently silent he went on.

“What’s your color, Mike?”

“It’s green, Sir.”

Harvey nodded satisfied.

“I will take it from the top and you will take the minutes. I know that you don’t need to but do it anyway.” Mike nodded.

“Now, first of all, have you decided whether you want our arrangement to be casual or in a permanent capacity?”

Mike nodded and when Harvey arched an eyebrow (the left with the moles) he took it as permission to speak.

“I would like the 24/7 arrangement, Sir. I think you’re right and I could benefit greatly if I knew that you would take care of me and hold me responsible at all times and not only during a scene.”

Harvey nodded satisfied. “Okay. Agreed. Note that down. Now, regarding the rules of the 24/7.” He frowned a little as his eyes drifted over Mike’s somewhat flippant responses regarding them.

“We can agree that, for now at least, our arrangement will be exclusively between us either in a scene as well as outside of one. That means, no other partner for either of us. And you’re right regarding rule #2. After you’ve signed the contract, your body will essentially belong to me, and so will your orgasms. I find orgasm delay or denial highly effective in the training of a sub so you will need to be a fast learner or you will indeed be a very frustrated boy.”

Harvey had watched Mike closely during his little speech and right on cue Mike had shown this little tells of his. He had licked and nibbled at his lower lip and his pupils dilated ever so slightly when Harvey told him that he would essentially own him now.

“Regarding your comment on rule #3: Yes, I like how you look but there is always room for improvement. A regular shave for example although I see that you made the effort tonight and I’m very pleased. Or combing your hair once in a while if not to speak of regular haircuts.” Harvey paused for a beat and shifted his eyes pointedly towards Mike’s crotch. “Or the waxing of certain areas.” Mike’s breath hitched a little at that and Harvey gave him a small sardonic smile.
“You’re not really hairy, but I would prefer you smooth down there.” As if Mike’s dick knew that the Dom was speaking about it or at least, its surrounding areas, it swelled visibly under the worn fabric of the faded jeans. Mike raised a hand questioningly.

Harvey nodded his consent.

“Wouldn’t a shave suffice? I mean, waxing is supposed to be really painful. Plus, it’s kind of humiliating to get it done, what with strangers seeing and handling my junk, since I don’t suppose that you would be doing the waxing yourself.”

“A shave doesn’t get you as smooth as a waxing. But let’s make a deal. You try it once for me and if you really can’t take it you can list it as a hard limit and we’ll make other arrangements. I know a place where some of the Doms from the club let their subs get waxed and believe me, the waxperts see so much junk in different sizes and shapes every day, they wouldn’t pay much attention to yours, although you’re quite pretty down there. Does that sound acceptable?”

Mike looked thoughtful for a moment, actually staring down into his lap as if to ponder how he would look, all bare and smooth. Then he gave a little shrug. After all, women did that all the time so how bad could it be?

“I will try it for you, Sir, although I’m not sure if my dignity could survive. But if it pleases you, I will get it done.”

He leaned forward a little, laying a hand on Mike’s knee giving it a reassuring pat, knowing that this demand could’ve been a deal-breaker as well. “It will please me very much. Thank you, Mike.”

He broke their contact and leaned back again, his eyes narrowing slightly.

“Now, your answers to the next rules are quite explicit if not downright insolent. So let me explain what is expected of you.”

Harvey took a sip of water from his own glass before he elaborated.

“As my sub you’re a reflection of me, so everything that you will say in public, wear in public or your general appearance and behavior in public will make me either look good or not. If you make me look bad, I will be very displeased with you and you will be punished. I’m well aware that you’re a bike-messenger and cleaner. I will not interfere with the way you need to dress at work. But when you are with me, you will look like I want you to look, which is like my pretty little boy. We already talked about grooming. If I want to make changes regarding your appearance and your clothes you will consent to my wishes. And before you say something, the costs will be on me. This is non-negotiable. Do you understand?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“Now, regarding the rules concerning nutrition, health care, drinking and using drugs. As I already told you before, and I got the distinct impression that you liked that a lot, you’re mine.”

Yep. Another little catch in Mike’s breathing and the bulge straining against the zipper of his jeans got a little more solid. This kid should never play poker. He would be broke within minutes, but then, he already was broke.

“Your body belongs to me. And I take care of what is mine, although you seem to think that you can survive solely on junk food, getting drunk on cheap booze and smoking pot.”

Mike had once again averted his gaze and looked down at the legal pad even though he wasn’t
writing anything down.

“Mike, eyes!” he was instantly reminded and obediently looked up again.

“You will be allowed to indulge yourself every now and then but I want you to change to a healthier diet. Don’t think that I haven’t seen all the pizza and junk food cartons at your place, not to speak of all the Red Bull cans. That stuff is pure sugar and chemicals. I despise the smell and taste of it. So, I don’t want to smell it in your breath or taste it in your mouth. Clear?”

“Yes, Sir.” Harvey could see Mike’s eyes shift slightly to the side away from his gaze and tapped his sub slightly on the knee to correct him.

“I want you to eat some vegetables and fruit every now and then and when we go out, I’d like to order for you. I will not force you to go vegan as you’ve so succinctly put it, or eat something you hate but I think it’s time to broaden your culinary horizon a little. Now, regarding your intake of alcohol; you may drink in responsible amounts when you’re with me, meaning, I will decide what and how much. When you’re alone at home or out with friends, you will ask for my permission to drink and I will tell you what you’re allowed to drink and how much. After you’ve exhausted your quota, you will switch to non-alcoholic beverages, preferably water or juice. Understood?”

“Yes Sir.”

“Regarding your health care, the ACA might be fine with you, but I reserve the right to send you to any doctor I deem necessary should the occasion arise. Meaning, if you get ill or hurt, I will sent you to a physician of my choosing, and you will do as you’re told. And do you know why that is, Mike?”

“Because my body belongs to you and you take care of what is yours, Sir.”

“That’s absolutely right. And since we’re on topic, I want you to get tested for STDs. I made an appointment at my GP for you. Monday at 6 pm and his address is in Manhattan so this shouldn’t interfere too much with your day job. I got tested last Thursday and got the results today. I’m clean, in case you’re wondering.” He leafed through the pages in his hand until he found the right one which he handed to Mike. The young man quickly scanned the lab results and handed the page back.

“Why did you get tested on Thursday?”

“Maybe getting tested was a little premature, but I was… optimistic,” he explained with a shrug.

“You know, one can hope and you seemed eager so I wanted to be prepared. Any further questions?”

“Does this mean that we will, you know, without…?” Mike actually blushed a little at the thought.

“Mike, you’re a grown up although you might look like jailbait. I’m sure you can say the word condoms without blushing like a virgin. And yes, I would prefer being with you without having to use them. And from your response further down the questionnaire I got the impression that you would prefer that too. Hence us getting tested. And we’ve already agreed that we would be exclusive. Or do you have second thoughts?”

“No, Sir. No rubber is fine by me. I think that I would like to feel you without anything between us.”

Harvey tried to suppress a smile but only succeeded half. To get himself under control he wanted to learn about Mike’s past conduct regarding safer sex.
“When was the last time you had sex without condoms, Mike?”

“Never, actually. My Grammy used to give me a lecture every time I had a new girlfriend and I was too afraid that I would get someone pregnant and my Grammy would have a stroke, so I took always care to use them. I still can remember her first speech. I was 15 and she put the fear of God in me. I think I’ve never been as intimidated by someone as I was by her when she described all the consequences unsafe sex could have. She even had a book with ugly pictures of diseased genitals which she forced me to look at. Plus, she always bought a box of condoms for me and leave them on my bed as a reminder as soon as I was going out with someone. I used to be really embarrassed about that but there was no way I would disobey her. And I haven’t been with someone long enough to do the whole getting tested and exclusivity thing yet.”

“I’m glad that we’re on the same page then.” Harvey nodded satisfied and made a mental note to arrange a weekly flower delivery to Grammy Ross from a secret admirer. He could only imagine in what kind of trouble his boy would’ve gotten himself into if not for the good influence of his Grandma. “I would still like you to get tested, just to make sure that you haven’t picked up something in another way, you know, due diligence. Would you do that for me, Mike?”

“Of course. I will visit your Doc on Monday.”

Mike seemed like he had another question but didn’t raise his hand this time, like he was afraid. Instead, his fingers fidgeted with the ball-pen, clicking it rapidly, much to Harvey’s annoyance.

“Mike, ask your question and stop fiddling with the pen.”

“What about smoking some weed? You haven’t said anything about that.”

“What do you think I will say?”

“That you want me to be happy and allow me to smoke the occasional bowl if I ask nicely?” Mike had put on an endearing smile, clearly in the attempt to manipulate Harvey a little.

“That’s your first strike, Lippy!”

“Strike?”

“And that’s the second right there.”

Mike looked frustrate, actually huffing a little with indignation, like they were playing a game and only Harvey knew the rules, but he didn’t dare open his mouth again. Smart kid!

Harvey let the silence hang between them a few moments longer just to make sure that Mike had gotten the message.

“Since you’re new at this, I invoke the tree-strick rule. Meaning, that for now you get 2 warnings before you’re being punished. So better watch yourself from now on because you already have a punishment coming and every new disobedience will now add to the punishment I already have in store for you. Do you understand that, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“Now, why do you want to smoke pot so badly? Is it a real addiction or just a bad habit for you? And before you try to bullshit me, I will sooner rather than later know if you have a serious problem so now is your chance to come clean with me. I promise that I won’t be mad.”
Mike actually took a few moments to think about the question and since Harvey saw that he wasn’t just stalling, he waited patiently.

“It makes my mind go quiet,” he finally said, as if that was all the explanation Harvey would need.

Well, it wasn’t.

“Please explain.”

“You read the file on me from the PI you hired. I have an eidetic memory which means I never forget anything that I’ve read, but I’m pretty good with auditory and photographic memory as well. There are all this pictures and words in my brain that need to be processed and it’s like there is a constant buzzing in my head. Like tinnitus of the brain. Something I can’t really shut off, as much as I want to. Most of the times it’s just like background noise but every so often it gets really annoying, like fingernails on a blackboard.”

Harvey had watched Mike carefully during that explanation and tried to keep a neutral expression although he finally understood, a little at least, with what kind of overload the kid must be constantly dealing. His heart grew a little heavy but he managed to keep a neutral expression.

“The weed shuts your brain off?”

Mike shrugged. “It makes it go quiet for a while. Peaceful. So I can sleep.”

Now Harvey really had a hard time to keep his feelings in check but he was too experienced a lawyer to let them show too much.

“Is there no other way?”

Mike thought about that, sighed and seemed to come to a decision. “I read something about subspace. And I thought that maybe…,” his voice trailed off.

Some gears in Harvey’s brain shifted into place and suddenly Mike’s previous behavior made a lot more sense. “That’s why you were so determined to meet with Steven and let him beat you. You wanted him to take you down.”

Mike confirmed his statement with a nod, eyes trained down in his lap, as if he was too embarrassed to look at Harvey.

The Dom laid once more his hand on Mike’s thigh and flexed his fingers slightly to gain his attention.

“I think I understand now. And you’re right, pain-play can result in subspace which can be described as a natural high created by your own released hormones during an intense scene. But this needs, as everything, practice. The chances that I will put you down so far that you fly during our first few scenes are slim, but not impossible. However, since we might need a little time to get you where you need to be, I propose a deal.”

Mike looked at him expectantly and nodded slightly but stayed obediently silent. Harvey’s 3 strike speech appeared to have worked.

“If you really need to shut your brain up I want you to call me. If I don’t answer your call text 911 and I will get back at you as soon as possible. We will talk about why you need to smoke and if I’m convinced that lighting up is the best solution in that particular situation, I will grant you permission.”
Mike smiled gratefully and Harvey nodded towards the legal pad in Mike’s lap. “Better write it down, eidetic memory or no.” After the scratching of the pen on paper had subsided, Harvey went on.

“Let’s get to the last two rules. Finances and personal contacts. Your little statement is of course ridiculous as you very well know. All I want to do is counsel you in financial matters. If some issues arise, like a debt or sudden unexpected expenses, I want you to trust me enough to tell me about it. Believe it or not, but I wasn’t born in a penthouse. There was a time when I worked in a mailroom and ate ramen at more evenings than I care to remember. I know how expensive New York is and how it feels to be broke. I want to give you advice before you do something stupid like selling yourself to a loan-shark or getting into your so-called friends drug business. Which incidentally brings us to the last rule. Cut Trevor Evans loose. I don’t want him near you, I don’t want you talking to him, neither in person nor by phone or mail or smoke-signals or whatever. This guy will get you into prison if you keep hanging out with him. Is that understood, Michael?”

Not quite unexpected, the kid dug his heels in.

“He’s my best friend,” Mike tried to explain. “He was there for me when I needed him most. I can’t, Harvey. I just can’t. Please, don’t make me choose between you two.” His voice had taken on a pleading tone.

Harvey knew instinctively that he couldn’t force the issue, not yet anyway. This was, unlike the waxing, indeed a deal-breaker, so he decided to cut his losses for now and work the issue from a different angle.

“All right. How about that? Before you meet with him, I want you to tell me where and when. I want you to keep your phone on you and I want you to call me if you’re on the brink of doing something stupid because of him. Well, I want you to call me anytime if you’re on the brink of doing something stupid, period. And I want you to call me as soon as you get home so I can stop worrying. Additionally to that, I want you to sit down and think about your friendship. Make a list with two columns, positive and negative. Be brutally honest with yourself and figure out how often your friendship with Trevor had cost you dearly. Try to leave emotions out of it, although I realize that this might not be possible for you. When you made the list, let’s talk about it some more.”

Mike’s gaze had once more found its way into his lap but he nodded his consent, obviously glad that Harvey had let him off the hook so easily.

Harvey decided that it was time for a reward. He shifted his weight forward, cradled Mike’s face in the palm of his right hand and made his boy look up. When the blue eyes finally met his, he slowly closed the remaining distance between them and trailed his lips softly over Mike’s, just the promise of a kiss rather than the real thing. For a moment they shared the same breath until Harvey broke the contact and sat back down on his end of the couch. Mike stared back at him dazed, like he couldn’t process what had just happened.

“Now, shall we get to the fun part?”

**********

With all the serious stuff out of the way, the rest of their negotiations went more or less smoothly. They were indeed a good match and only one thing gave Harvey serious pause.
“Why are you afraid of suffocating? I would’ve assumed that breath-play is something you might enjoy since it has the same effect as pain-play, only quicker and more intense. Is there a particular reason for your fear?”

Mike averted his gaze and began to fiddle with the pen once more. His eyes suddenly looked very sad. “I don’t really want to talk about it now. It still hurts and will kill the mood. You said that I’m allowed to not tell you stuff if I don’t lie about it.”

Harvey suppressed an eye-roll. Damn the kid’s freaky brain, but of course Mike was right. That’s what he had promised him. But it didn’t mean that Harvey couldn’t try to convince him otherwise.

“I don’t want to hurt you or to force you to talk about something you’re clearly not ready to talk about. But I need to know if this is something that has the potential to hurt you when we’re together. I want to avoid making mistakes, for your benefit as well as for my own.”

The kid seemed to get his point but Harvey could sense how much it cost him to get the words out.

“My mother,” Mike finally said, talking down to his lap. “She suffocated on her own blood when they couldn’t get her out of the car after the accident. I read it when I finally managed to get my hands on the accident report a couple of years ago. Ever since then I get these nightmares where I can’t breathe. It scares the shit out of me.” The last sentences was almost whispered, as if Mike was ashamed to admit it.

Harvey suppressed his urge to gather Mike into his lap to keep him safe. He wasn’t sure if he would be able to let go of the boy ever again and that would indeed kill the mood. And Harvey had the distinct feeling that pity wouldn’t help Mike anyway. But understanding and reassurance would.

“I see,” he said after a moment of silence. “And I will make sure, that this will never become an issue when we are together. I promise. And thank you for telling me.”

This subject had put a little dampener on their talk but soon enough, as soon as they came to the topic of sex, the excited atmosphere was back.

“You already indicated to me that you’re a virgin. I would like to hear the story behind that, Mike. You don’t seem like the wallflower type to me.”

“I’m not a virgin,” Mike protested indignantly. “I had my first time when I was 17 and since then I’ve been with a lot of girls. I just haven’t been with a man. Well, not really anyway.”

“Have you ever been fucked by a man?”

“No, but…”

“That means you’re a virgin.”

“Maybe technically but…”

“Please stop saying but and just concede that you have no idea how sex with a man would feel. What was the farthest you have gotten with another guy?”

“I kissed Trevor once when we were drunk but we never talked about it afterwards. A while later we jerked each other off, but we were drunk again and Trevor was... And a couple of month ago I met someone at a bar and we made out. I went home with him and we fooled around but he didn’t have any condoms and mine were old and not safe anymore so we just got each other off.”
His Grammy had really trained him well if he was able to keep his head in such a situation.

“Why haven’t you pursued the matter any further? You’re a good looking guy, Mike. At the right bars you could have your pick.”

Mike shrugged, looking a little sheepish.

“I don’t know. Maybe I’m old fashioned but I thought that the first time should be with someone I actually like and trust, not someone random. Someone who would take care of me and make it good for me. I thought that a one-night-stand would probably not be the right choice.”

“What about Trevor? You’ve known each other for a long time and you clearly have feelings for him.”

“Trevor isn’t gay,” Mike mumbled barely audible.

“Neither are you, or I for that matter, but even if that were the case, there is nothing wrong with it.”

“Trevor thinks otherwise. He made that very clear after the second time when we, you know, touched. He was really mad and then there’s Jenny. I couldn’t do that to her.” There was clearly a painful story behind that statement but Harvey let it go for the moment. He didn’t want to talk about Trevor, not now and preferably not ever again. Learning that Trevor was a homophobic jerk only strengthened his resolve to keep Mike away from the guy.

“So let me recap. Your sole experience with other men consists of two jerk-off-sessions and a little kissing. And yet you seem sure that you want to be fucked by me. Why is that Mike?”

“Because I’ve always liked guys as much as girls, I just never talked about it or admitted it to anybody. Back in high school I used to jerk-off to the mental images of half the football team. Taking showers after PE wasn’t especially fun back then. I took a lot of cold showers so I wouldn’t embarrass myself. And I’m seriously turned on by the thought of having sex with you. I get why you’re cautious but I’m sure, Harvey. I want you. I trust you. And I won’t suddenly back out.”

Harvey sighed. “You know that you could, though? Anytime you want to stop you can.”

“I wouldn’t want to stop. I want this so much.” Mike blushed a little but decided to confide in Harvey. “When I prepared for tonight like you asked me to, you know, in the shower, I imagined that it was your finger inside of me and I got excited. I did a little more than just clean myself, you know, trying to get it deep inside and then felt around a little and it was really good. Strange but good and although the angle was a little awkward, I think I hit my prostate once because it felt like someone had given me a jolt of electricity and I nearly came. After that I stopped but Harvey, it felt so good. And that was just me and one finger and the mental image of you.”

Harvey couldn’t help but smile. “So you found your happy spot. I’m glad that you liked it. This gives me a lot of options. But did you ever have anything bigger inside of you than a finger? A toy maybe?”

Mike shook his head. “But I’m really enthusiastic to try it.”

Harvey gave him one of his appraising looks with one eyebrow cocked. “I sort of got that from your responses on the questionnaire. So, let’s agree that I take it slow with you, a careful treatment befitting for the virgin that you are. You’re not allowed to ask for more or be your pushy little self. You will take what I give you when I give it to you. No more and no less. Got that, rookie?”

“Yes Sir.”
“So, regarding oral sex. You’re new to this too, aren’t you? I mean sucking cock. Licking pussy isn’t quite the same.” Although Harvey had opted for a neutral tone, Mike seemed somehow ashamed.

“I’m sorry, Sir. But I’m a quick study. I’m sure that I will be able to learn how to make it good for you in no time.”

“Mike, you misunderstand.” He once again laid his hand on Mike’s thigh to reassure his boy. “I’m sure that you already picked up on my mildly possessive streak.” He smiled a little when Mike only barely was able to suppress an eye roll.

“The fact that I’m your first very much excites me. Being the first one ever inside you, in your ass and your mouth, showing you how to make it good for both of us, is more than I could’ve wished for. You being inexperienced is not a flaw, not to me. It’s a whole world of possibilities. Something we can discover together. And I’m grateful that you want me to be your first. It’s a privilege, Mike, not a hardship.”

Mike smiled at him. “Then I’m happy that I can give this to you. That I waited for you, Sir.”

“You’re my good boy. And I will enjoy exploring you so much.”

After that, the rest was quickly negotiated. Essentially they agreed that they would play everything Mike had marked as unsure or as possible soft limit, as well as everything he had enthusiastically agreed to but hadn’t done so far, by ear, evaluating his reactions during play and adjusting the contract later accordingly if necessary.

Now, Harvey stood in the kitchen, actually wearing an apron to protect his suit from the sizzling oil in the pan as he was frying the steaks.

Mike had settled in with Harvey’s laptop but since Harvey had already outlined their contract Mike needed only to fill in the particulars, which shouldn’t take long.

Sure enough, as soon as the diner was ready, Mike was too. Harvey quickly read over Mike’s work and then printed it out for both of them to sign. The formalities finally out of the way, they enjoyed the simple meal together.

When they had finished Mike seemed to get a little restless. Harvey had a pretty good idea why. As they brought the dirty dishes into the kitchen, Harvey laid his hand on Mike’s shoulder and forced him to look up.

“Ready for play, Puppy?”

Mike was once again worrying his lip with his teeth. Harvey raised his thumb to Mike’s mouth to put a stop to it and then swiped it across Mike’s cheekbone in a quick caress.

“Yes, Sir.”

“Are you nervous, Mike?”

The kid let out a little relieved smile. He couldn’t fool Harvey.

“A little, Sir.”

Harvey pulled him into a hug, trailing his strong hands over Mike’s tense back.

“There’s no reason for that. I've got you. Everything will be fine.”
He could feel Mike nod his head against his shoulder.

“Tell me your color, Mike.”

“It’s green, Sir.”

Harvey broke the embrace and stepped back a little, his posture becoming more imposing.

“I want you to go into my bedroom and undress. Fold your clothes and put them in the top drawer of the dresser. Use the bathroom. You won’t have a chance for that in the next hours so better relieve yourself while you can. There’s a washcloth next to the basin in the bathroom. You can use it to freshen yourself up. After that I want you to kneel in the middle of the room, with your back to the door, and wait for me. Do you still remember the posture Steven put you in at the club?”

“Yes Sir.”

“I want you to assume that posture while you wait. Can you do that?”

“Yes Sir.”

“Give me your color again, Mike.”

“Green Sir.”

“All right. And your gag-order commences now. We’ve gotten a little lax during our sex-talk but that ends right now. Do you remember the rules?”

“Yes, Sir. I’m only allowed to talk when you ask a question.”

“Exception?”

“When I need to use the safe word.” Mike anticipated Harvey’s next question but stayed obediently quiet.

“Which is?”

“Yellow to slow down and red to stop, Sir.”

Harvey was satisfied and stepped a little closer into Mike’s space. His hands cradled Mike’s face as he let his brown eyes trail intently over Mike’s soft features. “I’ve waited so long for this,” he sighed. Actually, it had only been 4 days, but these days had felt like an eternity. Than he stepped back a little further and indicated with a nod of his head, that Mike should go and do as he had been told.

Chapter End Notes

Thank you for reading and all the kind comments and the Kudos. I really get a thrill out of your encouragement. And yes, I seem to have developed a praise kink like Mike. The next two chapters will be more or less pure porn and I will post probably one of them next weekend.

The quotes from Suits I’ve used in this chapter and in the previous chapters as well are
meant as homage to the show. All the hardcore fans will know anyway, that these words are not mine and no copyright infringement was intended.

This story is not beta-read and all mistakes concerning grammar and spelling are my own.
As always, comments and Kudos are highly appreciated.
You can take it

Chapter Summary

Mike gets a few of his cherries popped.

Chapter Notes

Warning! There’ll be (dragons) spanking and porn. You have been warned! Proceed with caution!

See the end of the chapter for more notes.

Harvey’s bedroom was as intimidating as the rest of the condo. Huge glass windows, or to be more precise, glass walls, on two sides allowed an unimpeded view of the city below. The floor was dark hardwood with a soft light grey rug in front of the bed. The bed itself was huge and quite high and Mike realized that if he would bent over it, the edge of the mattress would nearly reach up to his hip. Mike suspected that this had been the intention when Harvey bought the bed and not a mere coincidence. The bedframe was made of wood, complementing the floor in its shade and so were the rest of the furniture. A soft grey comforter covered the whole mattress and some throw cushions were propped against the headboard.

Behind one of these pillows Mike could see a dark metal ring, its color almost the same shade as the wood of the bedframe. He went to inspect this oddity, shifting the pillows out of the way, and sure enough, all around the bedframe, placed at strategic points were a few of these rings firmly screwed into the wood. Mike grinned a little, guessing at what their purpose might be.

At the foot-end of the bed stood a little bench and on the bench some items were displayed, ready for use. Mike knew that this display was for his own benefit, most likely to stimulate his fantasy. Some coils of rope, a bottle of lube, a black paddle, almost the same shape and size as a ping-pong paddle but made of leather, a silk shawl and a towel were laid out on the black leather of the bench.

The two walls which were not made of glass were painted white and monochromatic photographs of New York were the only decoration in this very masculine room. There were two wooden doors, aside from the sliding door in the glass wall leading to the deck, and one of them was slightly ajar. When Mike ventured closer, he could see that it led into the bathroom. The other one would most likely lead into a walk-in closet, home to Harvey’s innumerable suits.

Remembering his orders, Mike quickly undressed and threw his clothes haphazardly into the drawer, having never learned how to fold clothes properly. His Grammy had always done that for him. He hoped that Harvey would be too preoccupied to inspect his folding skills. Then he went into the bathroom to get rid of the huge amounts of ice-water Harvey had him drink during the evening and made quick use of the washcloth.

When he finally assumed his position in the middle of the rug, he could see his reflection in the glass of the windows. Mike was sure that this had been Harvey’s intention when he so explicitly told him where to kneel. He adjusted his posture until he was satisfied that his back was as straight as it could
get, his knees wide enough apart to accentuate his butt and strong thighs.

As Mike scrutinized his own reflection he tried to see himself with Harvey’s eyes.

A scrawny kid with shaggy dark blond hair, fair skin and huge blue eyes stared right back at him. A faint blush crept over the boy’s face down towards his chest with the sparse hairs and the rosy nipples. The cock, surrounded by dark blond trimmed pubic hair, was mostly flaccid right now since he hadn’t waited for the water to heat up when he’d used the washcloth.

While Mike waited, straining to hear what Harvey was doing in the living room, he thought about what would happen now. He knew that a punishment for his transgression was in store but Harvey had hinted that they would also play a little. He tried to imagine which of the items on display Harvey would use on him and in which combination and capacity. In the end he gave up though.

Mike knew that it was futile to guess what Harvey had planned and so he waited patiently, adjusting his pose every few minutes as soon as he saw himself losing his straight posture in his reflection of the glass. He wanted Harvey to be proud of him when his Dom would finally enter the room.

**His Dom!** Now that they’d signed the contract he could truly call Harvey his Dom and he was Harvey’s sub. He was Harvey’s. He belonged!

Mike could hear the soft noise of the door slowly being opened behind his back and the bright spotlights in the ceiling dimmed down into a warm glow. The reflection in the glass almost vanished completely and Mike could see the lights of the city behind it once more.

He could feel it when Harvey was mere inches away from him, as if his presence alone was enough to wrap Mike in a feeling of warmth and safety.

Cool fingertips touched him softly between his shoulder blades, the subtle pressure reminding him to keep his back straight. His fingers were interlaced at the back of his head, his elbows turned outwards but Harvey’s fingers trailed up to the nape of his neck, briefly caressing the short hairs before gliding over his knuckles and then vanishing.

Mike exhaled slowly, aware that this simple innocent touch had been enough to give him a semi.

Harvey circled him slowly, once, twice, dark brown eyes trailing over every inch of his body and he felt much barer than his nudity alone warranted. He felt like he had no more barriers, nothing to hide behind but instead of being terrified of this sudden vulnerability he felt warm and safe. Harvey saw him. All of him. All his flaws and faults and scars and imperfections. And he still chose him to be his sub.

Mike could feel pressure building up in his throat and he swallowed audibly, blinking rapidly to get rid of the moisture that threatened to spill out of the corners of his eyes. Right at this moment, he was so happy and this feeling almost overwhelmed him. He couldn’t remember when he had ever felt like that and given his freak brain, this really meant something.

Suddenly Harvey was kneeling in front of him, cupping his face in strong warm hands.

“Mike, are you all right?”

Mike could’ve gotten lost in those searching dark brown eyes but when he saw a growing concern in them he smiled happily to show Harvey how he felt.

“I’m just happy. This feels so right.” His voice sounded a little raw with emotion.
Harvey’s lips slowly stretched into an answering smile as he leaned forward. His hands left Mike’s face, finding their way to his wrists and guiding the sub’s hands down to lay on his thighs, palms down. Then he cradled the back of Mike’s head, fingertips brushing through his short hairs. Another searching glance trailed over his face but when Mike only showed him open curiosity and happiness Harvey closed the distance and placed a tender kiss on Mike’s lips, almost chaste and without tongue. Before he could really savor the feeling of Harvey’s lips on his own his Dom had already broken the contact and sat down at the edge of the bed.

“You can sit back on your heels, Mike. I’m proud that you held your position so well, but I don’t want to exhaust you.”

Mike obediently sat back but tried to keep his back as straight as possible. His hands lay where Harvey had placed them on his widely spread thighs, his slowly hardening cock on display for Harvey.

“You’re truly beautiful like this,” Harvey whispered as if he couldn’t keep the words in. Then he seemed to catch himself and his face got a little more impassive, his posture a little more erect and imposing. He still wore his suit, the sleeves of his dress-shirt folded up to the middle of his forearms but vest and tie still in place. Mike loved to see Harvey like this. And the fact that he himself was naked made this sight only so much hotter.

“I’m going to explain what I will do to you. I want you to listen and to think about how you feel about it. When I’m finished, I’m going to ask you to give me your color, and I need you to answer truthfully. Nod if you understand.”

Mike nodded.

“We will start with play. With a spanking, to be precise. And Mike, this is not your punishment. That comes later and will be something different.” Harvey took a moment to assess Mike’s reaction before he continued.

“I know that our contract says that pain-play can be a form of punishment. For tonight though, for our first attempt at pain-play, I want you to enjoy yourself. I want to link the pain with a positive experience so that you learn to appreciate it. I’m well aware that your last attempt in that area was a huge failure and I want to make you forget this trauma. So, for the warm-up I will put you over my knee and I will spank that beautiful butt of yours until the skin is slightly pink and the tissue thoroughly prepared. Then I will place you on the bed and will increase the force of the slaps. If you take it as well as I think you will, I will use the paddle for the last round, but that is optional, depending on your responses to the hand-spanking. I will stop every now and then and ask you how you feel and what your color is. If it gets too much, feel free to use your safe words. Otherwise you’re not allowed to speak unless I ask you a direct question. But I encourage you to make as much noise as you want.”

During Harvey’s description Mike’s cock had gotten fully erect and Harvey gave him an appreciative smile.

“Although I can see how you feel about it, I still need you to tell me your color, Mike.”

“It’s green, Sir. Very, very green.”

Harvey shifted back a little until he sat firmly on the edge of the mattress and grabbed a little pillow, which he placed to his side. Then he tapped his left thigh.

“Come here, Puppy.”
Mike came to his feet but stumbled a little since he had underestimated how numb his knees had
gotten.

“Easy Puppy.” Harvey’s strong fingers encircled Mike’s wrist as he positioned the young sub over
his left thigh. He used his right leg to hold Mike’s legs in position and pushed the pillow towards
him.

“If you hug the pillow to your torso, you will be more comfortable,” he explained.

Mike shifted a little until he found the most comfortable position. His sensitive dick was firmly
pressed against the inside of Harvey’s left thigh and for a moment Mike was worried that he would
soil the expensive pants with his pre-come but then he let go of this thought. Harvey was in control
and all he had to worry about now was to take what Harvey would give him.

“Relax your back and legs for me. I’ve got you.”

Warm broad hands stroked his back and ass and as he exhaled slowly he tried to let go of all the
pent-up tension in his muscles.

“Good boy.”

The hand on his upper back stayed in place like it was an anchor which would connect him to
Harvey, but the other hand now trailed circles over his butt-cheeks. Then the hand was gone and a
second later the palm made firm contact with his butt. The noise was louder than Mike had expected
and he flinched a little with the surprise, but the sting was barely palpable. It was more like a rough
care and he relaxed further. Harvey dealt out the slaps in a steady rhythm, each one hitting a
different spot to make sure that his whole hindquarter from his lower back down to where butt met
thigh, was prepared. After a while Mike became aware that the pleasant little stings got more intense,
ever quite fading away completely, one little pain overlapped by the next, ever increasing.
Interestingly, the more the pain amplified in his butt, the more intense got his arousal as well.

Suddenly the slaps stopped and the hand once more trailed firm circles over the cheeks of his butt.
This actually soothed the pain a little but Mike wasn’t quite sure if he was glad about that or not.

“How do you feel, Mike?”

Mike tried to turn his head around so he could look at Harvey and his Dom obliged by shifting him a
little.

“I feel really good. It doesn’t hurt much just smarts a little and it’s really hot.”

“Yes, I think I can feel what you mean.” Harvey’s voice sounded slightly amused but in a kind way
and not like he was laughing at him.

“So, are you ready to take it up a notch?”

“Yes, Sir. I would like that very much.”

“I want you to kneel down on the bed, parallel to the side. Put your forearms on the mattress and let
your head hang down relaxed between your shoulders. But I want your ass up high.”

Mike was a little disappointed that he couldn’t stay over Harvey’s knee but he assumed his position
on the bed obediently. Harvey made him shift a little bit more to the edge of the mattress and then
once more put both of his hands on Mike’s back and butt, stroking the now warmed-up flesh with
sure movements. Mike knew what Harvey wanted him to do and relaxed his back-muscles as much
as this new position allowed.

“I told you before, that I want to link the pain with pleasure. In order to do so, I will touch and stimulate your cock as well as your balls and your hole while I spank you.”

Mike could barely contain a moan and his dick twitched enthusiastically at this announcement.

“Please, give me your color, Mike.”

“Green, Sir.” *So fucking green that there was no greener green in the whole wide world.*

The hands vanished and Mike saw out of the corner of his eyes, that Harvey stepped back and out of his line of sight. When he tried to turn his head to see what Harvey was doing, a slap landed on his butt, more a warning than actually painful.

“Stay in position.”

So he focused his eyes firmly on the comforter in front of his nose but strained his other senses to anticipate Harvey’s next move.

He heard a cap being popped open and a wet squirting noise. Something fell with a soft thud on the mattress near his spread thighs but he didn’t dare look at it. Then Harvey was back beside the bed and suddenly a cool slick hand grasped his cock, jerking him slowly, thumb swiping over the head. His hips bucked forward into the touch, chasing the friction, but a firm smack on his backside made him aware of his mistake.

“You will not move from this position,” Harvey’s stern voice reminded him. “You will take what I give you when I give it to you. Is that understood?”

Harvey’s hand had continued to jerk his cock with long strokes and Mike was by now panting with want.

“Yes, Sir.”

As if Harvey could sense how close he already was, his Dom loosened his grip around Mike’s dick and with barely any friction trailed his fingertips softly up and down Mike’s length.

*Too little. Want more.*

Mike made a little whining noise but otherwise stayed submissively in position. Harvey had said that he could make noise and this was the only way he could think of to make his frustration known.

Before he could think any more about it, Harvey’s other hand, which had resumed trailing circles on Mike’s tender butt, landed a stinging smack on his right cheek and for a moment Mike lost his breath. *Holy cow!* That hurt so much more than the warm-up. His ass-muscles clenched involuntarily and the next swat, this time on his left cheek, hurt even more, reverberating through his whole lower body.

The soothing hand was back on his butt, rubbing the pain away, while the fingertips on his dick ghosted up and down his shaft.

“Try to relax your muscles. Clenching up will only increase the pain.”

Mike exhaled slowly and made a conscious effort to relax his whole body. He even needed to uncurl his toes, he realized slightly amused.
“Very good. Now, I want you to evaluate the next hits. Try to stay relaxed and think about how it feels on impact and the seconds after. I will give you enough time between smacks and will stop after the tenth.”

Without letting the anticipation built up too much, Harvey landed the next smack, again on the right cheek but a little further down.

Instead of shying away from the pain, Mike really tried to think about how it made him feel. The impact was like a sharp sting but it also felt a little thuddy. Then the sting vanished and a warm pain was radiating outwards from the initial contact with Harvey’s hand like ripples in water, until it nearly faded away far from the first impact point, leaving a dull residual pain in its wake. Then the next swat hit and Mike tried to evaluate this one as well. It felt the same like before, but the pain did something strange to him. It was like he hated it but on the other hand wanted it. Dread and want. Pain and pleasure. When Harvey completed the tenth hit, Mike became aware that by thinking about how the pain had felt, he had sort of detached himself from it like he was standing on the outside and watching a stranger getting spanked. He could still feel the pain, but it didn’t bother him as much. It still made him horny, though.

The soothing hand was back on his ass and the hand on his cock increased the pressure a little, stoking his arousal, as if Harvey wanted to override Mike’s pain with pleasure.

“You took that very well,” Harvey praised. “I’m sure you can take 10 more from me. And after the next set is completed I will give you a little treat. Would you like that, Mike?”

Mike panted a little, whether from the pain in his butt, Harvey’s stroking hand on his dick or the prospect of the treat, Mike didn’t know, and frankly didn’t care. A slight sheen of sweat was covering his whole body by now like the warmth from his butt was radiating through all of him and making him sweat.

“Yes, Sir. And my color is still green.”

“So eager and a little pushy.” Harvey sounded amused but Mike could also detect a hint of annoyance in his Dom’s voice.

The next swats felt even more painful. Mike didn’t know if Harvey had increased the force or if his skin had become so tender that it only felt this way but he tried to stay relaxed and take every stinging swat and the different stages of pain it issued one at a time, breathing through the pain when it got too intense. He discovered that a loud exhale and even a moan somehow helped with processing the pain and after that his noises filled the bedroom.

Sooner than he had expected, because he actually had been so caught up in letting himself embrace the pain that he hadn’t counted the strokes (which was a first for his freak brain), the swats ended and the soothing strong hand was caressing his tender flesh once more but only briefly. Than the hand around his dick vanished as well and for a second Mike wanted to protest. What kind of treat should the neglect of his throbbing cock and butt be? Not being connected to Harvey felt like a punishment at this point and he wanted to whimper in frustration. But then, something caught his attention.

Once more Mike could hear a wet noise and then a cool slick finger slipped between his surely by now bright red ass-cheeks, trailing its tip from his tail-bone down across his hole to his taint and a little further to briefly fondle his balls. Then the finger found its way back to Mike’s entrance and began circling the hole without breaching the tight ring of muscles. Mike pressed his forehead against the mattress and forced his eyes firmly shut to focus all of his attention on the probing, searching, caressing finger like his whole world suddenly consisted only of this sensation.
Mike could feel the mattress dip as Harvey kneeled down behind his spread legs to gain a better position. Then the other hand cupped his balls, held them in a warm palm, slightly weighing them before the fingers slowly started to roll them, play with them, while the searching finger in his crease teased the muscle-ring relentlessly without ever breaching it. The hand around his balls slipped towards his dick, jerking him a few times and Mike couldn’t take it anymore. He moaned loudly, begging wordlessly for more. The teasing seemed to continue endlessly but every time Mike thought that he would come, Harvey eased up a little, pulling him back from the brink.

Then Harvey pressed himself up against Mike’s butt and back, the soft fabric of his suit a soothing sensation against his sensitive skin. Harvey’s breath tickled a little as he whispered softly in Mike’s left ear.

“You have no idea how beautiful you are like this. You’re so good for me, Mike. I’m so proud of you. You’re doing so well. My good boy.”

Mike began to shiver all over as his Dom’s praise washed over him.

“I want you to take my finger up your ass, Mike. Do you think you can do that for me?”

Mike’s breathing became more labored with the sudden increase of arousal.

“Yes, Sir. Please! I want it so much. Please. I can take it.”

Mike could feel Harvey placing feather-light kisses down his spine until he reached the dimples right above his butt-cheeks. Then the teasing finger was back circling once again around his hole but still not penetrating it. Something wet and cool was dripped into the crease between his cheeks and the finger spread the slick moisture around.

“I would love to see your crack smooth and hairless,” Mike could hear Harvey whisper behind him and at this moment he vowed to himself that he would do everything Harvey wanted him to do, even if that meant getting all of his hairs plucked out by tweezers one at a time.

Harvey seemed satisfied with how slick Mike’s hole was because the pressure slowly increased and Mike could feel his sphincter giving way to the intruding finger. Slowly but firmly, the slender digit pressed in up to the second knuckle, making space where previously had been none. Than the finger retreated only to be once more pressed in with one firm stroke, this time a little deeper.

“You take my finger so Beautiful, Mike. The sight of your tight hole stretching around my finger, you opening up to me, is so fucking hot. I can’t wait to see how you will take my cock.” Harvey’s voice sounded raspy with arousal and Mike wanted to ask him what he waited for. But he knew, he wasn’t allowed to talk or to beg for more. He would take what Harvey gave him, but not more.

Instead, he moaned loudly as he was slowly stretched open, feeling only a slight burn in his muscles.

Harvey’s finger slowly fucked him and he relaxed even more around it the more used he got to this sensation.

“Do you think you can take another one, Puppy?”

“Yes Sir, please, I can do it. This feels so good. Please, more.” He couldn’t help himself, he simply had to beg but his Dom didn’t seem to mind.

The finger slipped out of him but after only a second of almost painful emptiness he could feel two fingertips eliciting firm pressure against his entrance.
“Exhale and relax for me,” Harvey instructed him and Mike promptly obeyed.

“You can take it, I know you can. Yes, there you go. You take that so well, my beautiful good boy.”

The burn was more intense this time but Mike liked how he needed to make an effort to be good for Harvey. And the slight pain went straight to his cock and he could feel a thick drop of pre-come spilling out of the slit and sliding down the head before dripping on the comforter. He couldn’t care less and he was sure that Harvey didn’t either.

The slow fucking, now with two fingers, commenced until he could feel Harvey’s knuckles pressed firmly against his crease and the tender flesh of his butt, the fingers as deep inside him as they could reach. Then Harvey crooked the fingers slightly and trailed the fingertips searchingly over his tight canal walls.

“Oh…!” Mike shouted out and jerked back to press his ass even more firmly against Harvey’s hand when his Dom found the right spot.

“Talk to me Mike. I want to hear how that feels.”

“So good. Please …more…please…. ah… good… want to come… please…. Harvey!” Mike was aware that he was a babbling mess of need, by now solely running on his base instincts and that the rational part of his brain wasn’t in control anymore, actually hadn’t been in control for a while now.

Harvey withdrew his fingers slowly, rubbing soothing circles on Mike’s lower back with his other hand, as if that could calm him down a little.

Mike went into a full body-shiver, pressing his eyes once more firmly shut and trying very hard not to shout out his frustration. The emptiness inside him felt so painful when all he craved was the sweet pressure of his Dom’s fingers, slowly stretching him open, massaging his prostate.

“I know, Puppy, I know,” Harvey tried to soothe him with whispered words. “But you have to wait a little while longer.”

The mattress shifted as Harvey got up and walked away a few steps. Through the blood rushing in his ears he couldn’t hear what his Dom was doing and since he kept his eyes firmly shut, concentrating just on his breathing to calm himself down, the warm hand on the nape of his neck came as a surprise.

“Mike, please look at me.”

He obeyed instantly (how could he not?) and forced his eyes open, looking at Harvey who was crouching next to the bed, his face now at the same level as Mike’s.

He slowly raised his hand, showing the sub what he was holding.

“I want you to take 10 more swats with the paddle for me, Mike. Do you think you can do that?”

Of course he could. He could do everything Harvey wanted him to do.

“Yes Sir, I will take them for you.”

“That’s my good boy,” Harvey praised. “And Mike, I want you to use your safe word, yellow or red, if you need to. And you can make as much noise as you like. Don’t hold back.”

Mike only nodded, not trusting his voice.
“Color?”
“Green, Sir.”

Harvey stood up, his left hand once more anchoring the sub with a firm touch between the shoulder blades. The cool leather of the paddle made contact with Mike’s butt, firmly being pressed against the already red skin of the sub’s backside, rubbing against it in circles the same way Harvey’s hand had rubbed his ass earlier.

“Relax for me and try to process the pain as you did before, then you will be fine. I know that you can take it for me, Mike. You’re my good boy.”

Without dragging it out any longer, the paddle briefly lost contact with Mike’s ass only to come back with a vengeance. Although Mike’s rational mind was sure that Harvey was holding back and hitting him with much less force than he could have, the impact still took his breath away. The shock threatened to overwhelm him, the intense sensation suddenly too much for him to process.

But Harvey had got him.

“Breathe, Mike. Come on. Take a deep breath. Yes, that’s it.” The hand between his shoulder blades rubbed slow circles on his back and Mike knew that he could trust Harvey to give him time before the next swat would hit him.

“You ready?” came Harvey’s question, when Mike finally managed to get his breathing back under control and he could unclench his muscles.

“Yes, Sir.”

“Remember to breathe through the pain. If you must, you can shout. I have excellent sound-proofing so don’t worry about the neighbors.”

The next impact wasn’t as bad as the first one although Mike had taken Harvey’s advice and shouted out his pain. With each hit it got easier to take the pain, to accept it and relax through it. Harvey had found a steady rhythm and took great care to spread the hits around and Mike could feel how everything slowly started to fade away until his whole world seemed to consist only of the pain Harvey was giving him. His dick was painfully hard, a counter-ache to his throbbing ass.

Then it was over and Harvey’s warm hands were all over him. Stroking his back, his ass and thighs and gently easing the pain.

“Stay like this a little longer,” Harvey whispered in his ear before he took once more position behind Mike.

He could feel cool lube being drizzled between his throbbing ass-cheeks and then Harvey’s fingertips were back, once again seeking entrance. In the wake of the ebbing pain, Mike felt boneless and the probing fingers slid into him easily, filling him up once more, giving him that sweet pressure he craved so much. Harvey’s other hand wrapped itself around his hard cock and while the fingers in his butt once again found his happy spot, massaging the bundle of nerves relentlessly, the firm grip around his cock gave Mike the rest. He moaned loudly as if keeping all the noise inside were an impossible task, as if vocalizing his feelings could ease and amplify them at the same time.

“Come for me, Michael!” Harvey commanded and Mike obeyed before his brain could even register the meaning of the words.

With a strangled cry he came so hard that for a moment a blinding white light flashed before his inner
eye and he lost track of time. Seconds stretched into eternity as his balls unloaded spurt after spurt of hot semen over Harvey’s still stroking fingers and onto the comforter. Mike couldn’t support himself any longer as his arms collapsed under his weight and he fell limply onto his stomach, losing contact with the stroking fingers in his ass. Before he could mourn the loss, his brain just shut off and Mike went to sleep.

*********

Harvey quickly wiped his fingers on the towel before he shifted the blissed out Mike into a more comfortable position on the bed. He trailed his hands slowly over his beautiful boy’s limp body, careful not to disturb the exhausted sub.

Mike’s face looked so young and open, every emotion clearly displayed on his features although right now his jaw had gone slack from exhaustion. The breathing was deep and even and Harvey knew that this slumber was the natural result of all the new sensations Mike had to deal with in the last hour.

He went to the bathroom to clean his hands and came back with the wet warm washcloth and a bottle of lotion. Sitting down on the mattress, he cleaned Mike up as well as he could. After that, he used some of the soothing lotion he had purchased from the club (they had the best stuff) to tend to Mike’s sore ass. The skin was a bright shade of red as Harvey noticed with pride. It had taken on the exact hue he wanted it to be, knowing that any redder and it would have bruised too much for Mike’s first time. The comforter on which Mike was still sprawled out needed to go into the washing since Mike had emptied himself all over it, but he had a spare one which he now fetched to keep Mike warm. With one last look at his boy, Harvey left the room to get some water and dark chocolate. It only took a few minutes and when he got back, Mike was still sleeping, making the little snoring noises, more like a snuffling really, he had found so endearing when Mike had made them in the club the night they’d met.

Harvey decided to get more comfortable and went into his walk-in closet, leaving the door ajar so he could hear it if Mike would wake up.

As he pulled his suit-pants down he became aware of a dried spot of white pre-come on the inside of his left thigh and some lube-stains on the crotch-area from when he had pressed himself up against Mike’s ass to whisper in his ear. Harvey sighed and made a mental note to give his dry-cleaner a huge tip. Well, it wouldn’t be the first time they had to deal with some uncommon spots and the results had always been excellent so far.

Harvey dressed himself in black sweat-pants and a black formfitting V-neck t-shirt but remained barefoot and padded back into his bedroom. Mike was still dead to the world and he decided to try and wrangle the soiled comforter out from under Mike.

His efforts were met by a few protesting noises and mumbled words, but Mike shifted obediently and promptly fell back to sleep.

Harvey placed himself beside Mike, leaning against the headboard, carding his fingers through the soft messy hair of his boy, petting him like he was a real puppy. He had read Mike’s comment on how much he liked that and was sure that, even though Mike was asleep, he could still feel Harvey’s caress.
The Dom replayed the scene in his head. He was sure that it had been the right approach and that Mike hadn’t been too overwhelmed. Pain-play was something one needed to learn, as a Dom as much as a sub, and during his training as Dom Harvey had experienced all sorts of pain himself. He didn’t particularly like it although he was able to take it (his boxing training had come in handy at that) but he wanted to feel it for himself before he would dole it out to one of his subs. He knew that not all Doms shared this view, but Harvey was a firm believer in his approach of the matter.

He had a mentor, someone who had taken him under his wing when Harvey had started out in the scene and he still went to Kieran, a red-haired man with a soft Irish lilt in his voice and very forceful arms, when he wanted to try out a new implement. After all, that wasn’t about submitting to someone, it was about needing help to fully understand what said implement could do, what kind of pleasure, pain and damage it could elicit. Kieran respected him for that and never tried to dominate him in any other way than showing him how the new toy could be used and what it felt like.

Over the years Harvey had drawn his personal line at the cane. He hated that thing, hated how it felt like being cut open with a red-hot knife. He occasionally had scened with a sub that had asked for the cane, but he never felt comfortable enough in its use, always afraid that he might miscalculate the force of his hit and break the skin.

Thankfully Mike was very far away yet from the cane and if he would never want to try it that would be more than fine with him.

Harvey shifted downwards so he could lay beside his sleeping boy, watching his features while he continued to let his fingertips glide through Mike’s short soft hair.

He would give his boy an hour to sleep the worst exhaustion off but then he needed to wake him and give him the punishment he had asked for earlier that morning.

Harvey was actually a little proud of his plan for said punishment because it would be befitting for the crime and educational as well. He was quite sure how his boy would react when he explained it to him, not knowing that this could indeed be punishment and not play, although on first glance it might seem harmless and pleasurable.

Harvey took out his phone and set the timer to an hour, then he shifted closer to his boy and cradled him in his arms.

He was so proud of his good boy. With a sigh he placed an affectionate kiss on Mike’s forehead before he allowed himself a little rest as well.

Chapter End Notes

This is the first spanking scene I ever wrote (and boy was I drunk). Since I’m neither experienced in being spanked / spanking someone else nor in the possession of male genitalia and hence only can guess how it would feel to have ones prostate massaged, this chapter is solely based on what my strange mind could make up. I apologize for any mistakes regarding spelling, grammar or in the plot itself. Thank you for reading and I would love to read any comments you might wanna make on this chapter. And Kudos is of course appreciated as well (did I mention my quickly developing praise-kink?)
An educational punishment

Chapter Summary

The Punishment.

Chapter Notes

There'll be even more porn than before. And since I'm not really sure about triggers, just to be on the safe side, I will be more specific on what's going on in this chapter at the end-notes. Proceed with caution and on your own risk.

See the end of the chapter for more notes

Slowly drifting awake like a deep-sea diver would drift towards the surface of the sea, Mike became aware of his surroundings in stages. At first, he just felt Harvey’s breath on his cheek, tickling him slightly. Next he felt the strong arms hugging him to a solid torso and a slow heartbeat under his fingertips that were resting on Harvey’s firm chest. He instinctively shifted closer to this center of comfort and warmth that his Dom had become for him. He burrowed his nose into the space between Harvey’s shoulder and neck, taking in this unique scent of expensive aftershave and the spicy aroma of pure Harvey. As he slowly opened his eyes he looked directly into Harvey’s, who was openly studying him with such an unguarded look of affection that Mike couldn’t help but smile. It seemed that not only his own walls had crumbled tonight.

“How do you feel, Sweetheart?” Harvey’s voice sounded soft and tender.

Mike took a moment to think about that. There were so many emotions going on inside of him right now but he focused on the major ones.

“Relaxed and tired and my butt hurts but it feels also really good.”

“No regrets?” Brown eyes studied him for any signs of second thoughts.

“None whatsoever. I liked it a lot.” He buried his head in the crook of Harvey’s neck again and breathed in deeply, letting Harvey’s scent wash over him. He loved how his Dom smelled, fresh and citrus-y from his aftershave or whatever he used but also warm and spicy, like sandalwood with a hint of nutmeg and a little musk. If he could bottle Harvey’s scent he would be rich in a few weeks.

“Can you tell me what you liked in particular?” Harvey interrupted Mike’s musing over his scent.

Mike closed his eyes as if to replay the scene in his mind. When he finally spoke, his voice was a little dreamy but Harvey thought that he could detect some hint of arousal as well.

“I liked it when you took me over your knee. Being close to you while you spanked me, feeling your body, your warmth. And that one hand was always touching me, my back or my cock. Being connected to you helped a lot. Like an anchor I could hold onto. When Steven… I felt so alone being bound to the cross without a touch, like I was lost. With you, I felt safe. And the way you talked to
me. The praise and encouragement. That made me feel like I could do anything for you.”

Harvey’s hands were rubbing slow circles on his warm skin on his back like he could feel how much the young man craved to be touched and he snuggled closer to the warm body of his Dom, resting his head on the solid chest, feeling totally relaxed and at ease.

Mike was someone who easily hugged and touched other people, for the most part only small gestures and always conscious of the reaction of the recipient, ready to back off should his touch be unwelcome. He just liked expressing his affection for someone through touch. Maybe because he had lost his parents when he was so young and his Grammy couldn’t make up for the lack of physical contact, despite her best efforts.

“And what about the pain? Did you like that too?” Harvey asked after a few minutes of comfortable silence.

Mike sighed a little. How could he explain his complex emotions? “Yes and no. It’s complicated. It’s like my body and my mind are a little at odds on the matter. I don’t like the pain as such. It doesn’t feel nice, you know. Pain’s pain and it still hurts even if I ask for it. Funnily, my dick obviously does like the pain. What I like is how it makes me feel when I have suffered through it. Like I achieved something, done something not everybody can do. I think maybe it’s a little like running a marathon. I imagine that it really sucks while you’re running but when you reach the finish line, it must be the best feeling in the world.”

“That’s true although only the last 10 kilometers seriously suck.”

“You’ve run the marathon?” Mike knew that he shouldn’t be surprised since his Dom was Bruce Wayne, but somehow he couldn’t picture Harvey in running gear. Maybe he had his stuff tailor-made and in a pinstripe design.

“Only twice and it was some time ago. Now I run 10 k twice a week. But I think I know what you mean. You’re battling against your own body which tells you to stop and when you push yourself through it, it’s the best feeling in the world.”

Mike nodded his head. That was exactly what he meant. “And for a moment, when you were using the paddle, it was like everything was going fuzzy and there was only the pain and your hand on my back and nothing else. Like I was floating in that bubble of pain and your presence and nothing else.”

Harvey seemed surprised. “Really? What happened then?”

“Then you stopped and rubbed my butt and made the pain ease a little. That pulled me back.”

Harvey sighed. “I’m sorry. I didn’t know. Next time I will pay more attention. Let you fly a little longer.” He sounded rueful, as if he had somehow failed him and a thought popped into Mike’s head.

“Was that what subspace feels like?”

“I’ve never experienced it myself, but the way you describe it I think you were at least beginning to get there. Did you like that feeling?”

“Yes. It was peaceful. The pain didn’t matter and I was just… existing, without anything else to do than to kneel for you on that bed and take what you gave me. That felt good.”

“I’m really glad you liked it.” He could hear that Harvey was smiling a little and then his Dom was
shifting Mike off his torso so he could lean over him.

Harvey placed a playful little kiss on his nose but when Mike thought that this would become a make-out session, Harvey moved away and sat up reaching out to the bedside table. When he turned around again, he held a bottle of water with a straw in it in his hand.

“Here. You need to rehydrate.”

Mike pushed himself up a little and obediently began to suckle on the straw. After the first couple of sips he realized how thirsty he had been.

“Hey, slow down a little.” The straw was taken away from him and something solid pressed between his lips instead. Mike took it into his mouth and savored the rich and sweet taste.

“Chocolate?” he mumbled around the large chunk of the sweet treat.

Another piece was pushed into his mouth and he took his chance to lick playfully over the providing fingers. Harvey withdrew them pointedly but otherwise didn’t comment on Mike’s pushiness.

“The sugar helps you to recover. You’ve burned a lot of calories and need to replenish. Low blood-sugar is the enemy of a healthy sub.”

Mike crawled once again a little closer to Harvey who had propped himself up against the headboard and rested his head on Harvey’s stomach. Strong fingers carded through his hair, massaging his scalp a little and Mike let out a contented sigh. This felt so fucking good.

“Here, finish your drink.”

Mike reluctantly opened his eyes again and lifted his head to receive the straw. After he had emptied the bottle he wanted to lay back down on top of Harvey again, but his Dom had other ideas.

Harvey shifted away under him and stood up. Mike let out a frustrated huff to express his feelings but didn’t dare protest in words. He was dimly able to remember that Harvey had set rules for tonight and he wasn’t sure if the rules still applied. Better to play it safe.

A warm hand was placed between his shoulder blades and Mike became aware that Harvey was crouching next to the bed, his face again on the same level as his own.

“Mike, look at me!”

Although right now he really wanted to go back to sleep he couldn’t ignore this request.

“Good boy,” he was praised when he made the effort to open his eyes. “I want you to wake up properly and sit up. We need to talk about your punishment.”

Oh, right. The punishment. Well, I’ve asked for it, so no sense in complaining now.

He slowly lifted himself on all fours and then folded his legs under him so that he could sit down on only one thigh and ass-cheek. It didn’t hurt as much as he’d expected and only then he noticed that he had been cleaned up and his ass treated with the soothing lotion. He had been so out of it, he hadn’t felt that Harvey had taken care of him.

As soon as he was sitting, Harvey stood up, now looming over him in his all black casual clothes (when had that happened?), which looked more formal than anything Mike owned in the clothing department. Trust Harvey that even his sweats were classy and magnificent.
“I want you to look at me, Mike.”

His eyes found Harvey’s and although the impulse to avoid the now again steely gaze of his Dom was very strong, he forced himself to meet the dark brown eyes. See? He was learning.

“I’m going to explain what your punishment will be and I want you to remain silent and just listen. You can ask questions after I’m finished with my explanation. Understood?”

“Yes, Sir.” Mike couldn’t help that he felt a little aroused at seeing Harvey back in his stern Dom-mode. He liked caring and sweet Harvey very much but stern, imposing Harvey was a class on its own and pushed all of Mike’s buttons at once.

“You will receive the punishment because you orgasmed without my permission and against my explicit orders,” Harvey explained. “I told you on more than one occasion that your body and thus your orgasms belong to me. Now, I think that you have no idea what that actually means so I will have to show you. I will tie you down on the bed, legs spread open and immobile and then I will play with you. I want to see how many orgasms I can draw out of you in one hour and you will take everything I give you. You will not hold anything back. You will be my sweet little plaything, my toy. You will stay silent, not allowed to talk or to beg, only allowed to make pretty noises for me. Your comment in the questionnaire regarding the subject of forced orgasms was something along the line that there is no such thing and that you would always want to come. Let’s put that to the test.”

The mildly sardonic smile on Harvey’s lips made Mike worry that he was in over his head.

Harvey wandered down towards the bench and picked up the coils of rope, showing them to Mike.

“I will use these ropes to tie your hands above your head. Then I will tie your ankles to your thighs and fasten your legs to the sides of the bedframe. You will be spread open for me, your hole, your taint, your balls and your cock on display for my pleasure, for me to touch and to play with.”

With one swift movement the comforter was pulled away from the bed and thrown over a chair in the corner of the room so that there was nothing left he could hide under.

“Do you have any questions regarding your punishment, Michael?

Mike’s mouth had gone totally dry as Harvey had described his impending punishment, his mind blank for once. After a few moments he managed to formulate a thought.

“Will you fuck me, Sir?”

Harvey’s face softened a little. “No, Mike. Our first time together will not be punishment. It will be pleasurable and tender as it should be and I want us both to enjoy it.”

Mike nodded relieved but another question obviously remained in his face.

“I will use my fingers and some toys to make you come. I will not hurt you, not in the literal sense anyway, but I can guarantee you that at some point you will want me to stop very much. You can safe word out if you really need to and the punishment will end and everything will be forgiven. But before you do use your safe word, I want you to think for a second if you really can’t take it anymore or if you just want an easy way out. Do you understand?”

“Yes Sir.” I can do this. I will not use my safe word. I deserve this punishment.

“What is your color, Michael?”
“It’s green Sir. But please, can I have some more water before you start?”

Harvey smiled and cupped Mike’s face with a warm hand, caressing his cheekbone with a gentle swipe of his thumb.

“Of course. You can always ask for basic necessities, like water or food or using the bathroom or being kept warm. Now, lay down in the middle of the bed, arms outstretched over your head, while I get you another bottle of water.”

Harvey laid down the rope he had held in his hands on the mattress and left the room. With a resigned sigh, Mike shifted himself to the middle of the bed and stretched his arms over his head, his fingertips nearly touching the headboard.

When Harvey came back Mike stayed in position and Harvey supported his head so he could drink some more.

“Do you want some chocolate as well?”

“No Sir, but thank you.”

“All right. Keep your eyes open all the time. I want to see what is going on in them.”

Mike nodded.

Harvey picked up the coils of rope again and trailed them over Mike’s prone form, from his right ankle across the inside of his leg and groin, the stomach and chest along his outstretched arms. The rope felt soft and warm against his skin and Mike noted with slight regret that his Dom had deliberately spared his cock when he’d trailed the rope over the length of his body.

Harvey sat down at the edge of the bed beside Mike’s head, uncoiling the rope and winding it around Mike’s wrists in a tight 8, the palms of his hands facing outward. He secured the shorter end of the rope with an elaborate knot between his wrists and fastened the longer end to one of the metal rings at the headboard.

Since Mike had been lying nearer to the headboard, the rope had some slack. Harvey fixed that by walking down to the end of the bed, grabbing Mike’s ankles and pulling him down until his arms were fully outstretched over his head, his fingertips now about a foot away from the headboard with the rope pulled tight.

He used another length of rope to wind around his right thigh, careful not to tighten it too much to prevent a disturbance of the blood flow. He then pulled the longer end of the rope to the side of the bed, threading it through one of the metal rings and looping it back up to the mattress.

“Bend your knee.”

A hand in the hollow of his knee guided his leg in the right position and the rope was looped around his ankle. The remaining couple of inches of rope were used to tie his ankle to the rope around his thigh and Mike had the distinct impression that he wouldn’t be able to move an inch as soon as Harvey was done with him. The thought aroused him so much that his cock, already erect, started to leak and a drop of pre-come oozed from the slit in his cock-head onto his stomach.

Harvey picked up on how Mike was feeling and gave him an encouraging little smile.

“You’re so eager and responsive. I like that very much, Mike. You are my good boy.”
When Harvey was satisfied that Mike’s right leg was securely in position he went to the other side of the bed and did the same with his left leg.

Mike was so turned on, that by the time he was firmly tied down, he was already breathing hard with arousal, his cock now leaking constantly, already a little puddle of pre-come on his fair skin with the soft hair of his pleasure trail matted by the sticky liquid.

When Harvey saw the growing wet spot that was pooling near Mike’s belly button, he gathered some of it on the pad of his thumb and brought it up to Mike’s mouth.

“Have you ever tasted yourself, Mike?” he enquired.

Mike shook his head and Harvey offered him his thumb with a questioning glance, clearly not wanting to force him if Mike would be appalled by the notion. Well, he wasn’t although he hadn’t thought about it before but now that Harvey had put the idea in his head, it seemed the most natural thing to do.

He opened his mouth invitingly for Harvey and suckled on the thumb when it was pushed in. The taste was odd, salty and a little bitter but not unpleasant and suddenly the urge to taste not himself but Harvey, Harvey’s come, was nearly overwhelming. The few drops were soon gone but Mike continued to suck on Harvey’s thumb, using his tongue to caress it as if it was a substitute for Harvey’s cock. All the while he held eye contact with his Dom, moaning slightly when the thumb was pushed a little deeper into his mouth. He imagined how it would feel to have Harvey’s cock in his mouth, slowly pushing into him, stretching his lips around his length. How the smooth head would feel on his tongue, how Harvey would taste, how his moaning would sound when Mike would make it good for his Dom.

Harvey’s breathing got a little louder, almost labored and the thumb was withdrawn from his mouth but trailed over his lips, spit slick and hot, in a messy caress.

“You are a little slut for this, hnnmmm?” Harvey’s voice sounded very low and raspy and for a moment Mike wanted to be offended. “I can’t wait to teach you how to suck my cock. You are a natural at this, I can tell from your little show right now.” He could see in Harvey’s eyes with the dilated pupils how much his Dom had liked his little impromptu thumb sucking and didn’t mind the slur any longer. After all, he had made his Dom lose a tiny bit of his composure.

Finally Harvey pulled himself together and got back to business.

He used one of the smaller pillows to elevate Mike’s hips and ass for easier access and since the rings on the side of the bed were positioned a little behind his hips, nearer to his chest, Mike now resembled a frog lying on its back, ass lifted up from the mattress.

Another bigger pillow was pushed under his head to support his neck and upper back so that he could watch what would be going on between his legs and then Harvey stood at the end of the bed, taking his time to just look at his tied up sub.

Mike fought hard against the urge to close his eyes and relax into the feeling of being so tightly held down, but he wanted to be Harvey’s good boy and make his Dom proud of him.

Harvey went to the dresser and opened the second drawer from the top. Mike could hear things being shifted and had an idea what Harvey stored in there. After a few moments Harvey was back on the bed, positioning himself on his knees between Mike’s widely spread legs.

He held up the items he was holding in his hands and Mike could see a slim black butt plug and a
slender dark blue vibe with an angled head, both in circumference not much bigger than two of Harvey’s fingers.

“I will use these on you as well as my fingers. And there will be lots of lube to make sure that you won’t get injured, but rest assured that at one point during the next hour you will hurt. Before I start I need you to tell me your color, Michael.”

“Green Sir.”

“Please tell me why you need to be punished.”

“Because I got myself off when you ordered me not to. Because I disobeyed you and was a bad sub.”

Harvey’s face grew a little softer and he laid the items on the bed near Mike’s thighs together with the bottle of lube. Then he shifted forward and placed his hands beside Mike’s outstretched arms to support himself on his knees and hands as he hovered over the boy’s immobile body.

Harvey’s nose was only inches away from his own and the dark brown eyes stared into his with a fierce determination. But his voice was very gentle when he spoke.

“You’re not a bad sub, Michael. You’re my good and beautiful boy and I don’t want you to bad-mouth yourself. You made a mistake and you took the responsibility and after this punishment it will be forgiven and forgotten. I don’t want you to dwell on it any longer, do you understand that?

“Yes, Sir.”

Harvey pressed a firm kiss on Mike’s lips before he shifted himself back between Mike’s legs.

“I want you to look at me, to watch what I’m doing to you.”

Mike nodded.

Harvey shifted himself forward again, but not to the level of Mike’s face. He supported his weight on his left forearm and then Harvey’s mouth found his right nipple. The wet hot tongue drew tight circles around the sensitive bud until it stood hard and erect. Then the lips closed around it and started to suckle. Mike groaned loudly, not able to stay silent. How did Harvey know that he liked it so much when his nipples were played with? He tried to arch his back a little to encourage Harvey to suck harder and his Dom seemed to get the message. Suddenly, Mike could feel the hint of teeth, scraping over his sensitive flesh and then the teeth closed around the nipple with a firm but careful grip and tugged a little while the lips continued to create excellent suction.

“Oh…. Har….ohh.” He just caught himself on time, remembering his gag-order.

Then Harvey’s fingers of his right hand found his left nipple and the fingertips circled and tugged at it until it was as hard and sensitive as its twin.

Mike was sure that he could come from this nipple-play alone but Harvey had planned something else. He ceased the torment and kissed his way down towards Mike’s groin, carefully avoiding Mike’s leaking cock and the mess he’d already made on his stomach. Then Harvey set back on his heels and watched Mike with a satisfied grin.

“You’re so beautiful for me, Mike. All flushed and hot and horny with your red nipples and leaking cock. It’s amazing how much pre-come you produce.”
Harvey’s strong hands caressed the insides of Mike’s spread thighs, sweeping over them with sure even strokes, as if he was a skittish horse that needed to be calmed down.

Then Harvey picked up the bottle of lube and poured a generous amount in his palm.

“Let’s see how fast I can make you come. I wager I need less than 5 minutes, seeing how hard and desperate you already are.”

Mike wasn’t sure if he could last that long because Harvey’s artful foreplay had already pushed him firmly towards the brink of the abyss.

“Remember to make those pretty noises for me but don’t talk. And don’t hold back. I want you to give yourself to me completely.”

Harvey coated the index and middle finger of his right hand in a layer of lube and used the rest of it to make his left palm slick.

Mike could see how Harvey brought his finger to his crack and getting the visual paired with the sensation was mind-blowing. The slick cool fingers trailed up and down his crack, stopped for a few moments at his taint, massaging him there and then began to circle his tight entrance.

Mike knew what to expect when the pressure increased slowly and he exhaled noisily, willing his muscles to relax.

“Yes, that’s it. Let me in. Relax for me.”

“Ohhhh…!”

Both fingers at once were slowly pushed into him up to the first knuckles, making his muscles burn a little with the unexpected stretch. At the same time Harvey’s left hand took a firm hold of Mike’s dick, trailing his fist up and down as he fucked Mike’s ass with long slow strokes, getting deeper and deeper with every retreat and push, until he could use the full length of his digits, withdrawing them till only the fingertips were barely inside Mike and then pushing them back in until his knuckles were firmly pressed against the butt-cheeks. Harvey actually coordinated his hand-movements so that every down-stroke of his left hand on Mike’s dick collided with a firm push of Harvey’s fingers inside Mike’s ass.

The sensation was… sensational. His tired and lust filled brain couldn’t come up with a more elaborate description as Harvey played him with both his hands as if Mike was a precious Stradivari and the Dom the reincarnation of Nicollò Paganini, drawing sounds from him that Mike didn’t actually knew he could make.

He was moaning non-stop now, not able or even wanting to stay silent.

The urge to throw his head back, close his eyes and lose himself in the feeling, the slow building pressure, the sweet pain when Harvey began to scissor his fingers on every withdrawal to stretch him more, was almost unbearable but he wanted to be Harvey’s good boy so he forced himself to keep his eyes open and watch his Dom play with him.

“Don’t hold back, Michael. I know that you’re close. Look at how my fingers vanish inside this tight ass of yours while your cock fucks into my fist. I can feel you clenching around my fingers. You’re so desperate for it, my poor boy.”

With a strangled cry Mike let go, letting himself being pushed over the edge by Harvey’s voice and words and the sight of Harvey’s hands on his body, the fingers vanishing inside his body, eliciting
such exquisite pressure.

His balls tightened and for a second all of his muscles clenched up until he found his release. Hot spurts of come flowed over Harvey’s strong fingers and splattered onto his already wet and sticky stomach.

“Such a good boy,” Harvey crooned as he continued to milk Mike’s cock with firm strokes of his left fist. “That was number one. And in under 5 minutes as I have predicted. You’re such a needy desperate boy.”

Mike was gulping big breaths of air into his lungs, his heart racing as if he had just won the Tour de France.

His cock slowly began to soften but Harvey continued to stimulate him, spreading his come all over his shaft and head, while the fingers in his ass stayed in place, firmly pressed into him as far as they could reach, filling him up.

When the teasing fingertips trailed over his crown, the blunt fingernail of the index finger brushed over his slit which still spilled drops of come and that sensation made Mike hiss a little with pain. He was oversensitive after his climax but Harvey wouldn’t let up. Suddenly it dawned on Mike what Harvey had meant when he said that he would hurt.

He bit his lip to stifle a moan but Harvey would have none of that.

“Stop that Michael,” he was reprimanded. “I want to kiss that hot wet mouth of yours when I’m done and I can’t do that if you bite yourself bloody. And I want to hear your noises.”

Mike let go of his lower lip and groaned loudly as Harvey continued to trail circles on and around his sensitive cock-head right at the seam where the head met the shaft.

“I guess you’re really sensitive. Even the lightest touch of my fingers is too much right now, isn’t it, Mike?

He took the question as permission to speak. “Yes, too much. Please stop.”

“I can’t do that Michael. And you know why. Tell me.”

“Ah…. Because… ah… my body belongs… ahhh to you and you need to teach…ahhh, please, Sir….teach me that my orgasms…oh god, belong to you….shhh….too.”

“And do you think that after the punishment you will have learned that lesson?”

“Oh god, yes, Sir. Ahh…yes. Lesson learned, Sir.”

Harvey lifted an eyebrow and looked quizzically at him. “Not quite yet, but you will have when I’m done with you. Only 52 minutes to go, puppy.”

Mike whimpered loudly and briefly closed his eyes but snapped them back open when the tormenting hand around his cock finally let go of his sensitive sticky flesh and slapped the tender inside of his thigh.

“And I haven’t even massaged your prostate yet,” Harvey commented with a slightly evil grin.

The deeply seated fingers in his ass began moving once more, the strokes getting longer and more forceful and the scissoring commenced as well, causing that exquisite stretching burn. Than the
finger-fucking stopped and Mike could feel the fingertips being pressed searchingly against the walls of his tight canal.

After a few seconds Harvey had zeroed in on his happy-spot and a jolt of lust surged through Mike’s whole body. Only his cock didn’t seem to get the message because it stayed dead to the world. Mike didn’t quite know if he should be worried or relieved at the sight of his limp dick but then he remembered that it had only been a couple of minutes ago that he had climaxed. Sure, he was young but he wasn’t Superman, or Dirk Diggler.

Harvey shifted his position so that he could lay on his stomach between Mike’s spread legs, his left hand on Mike’s thigh to prop himself up a little while Harvey’s right hand continued to finger his ass. Mike could only see the top of Harvey’s head now and the hot wet tongue on his balls came as a surprise.

“Ohhhh God!” He just couldn’t help himself but the awaited scolding never came. One should be thankful for small mercies.

He could feel a huff of warm breath against his wet balls as Harvey let out a small laugh. Then the tongue was back, lapping over his balls with broad strokes, bathing them in warm saliva. A cool stream of air was blown against his wet skin, making him shiver with the sudden change in temperature. Then the tip of the tongue started to prod at his balls, tease them with quick jabs, all the while the fingers in his ass kept stimulating his prostate.

Mike could see how his dick couldn’t resist the onslaught of stimulation and began to stiffen slightly, not as dead as he had thought.

Suddenly Harvey lifted his head and his dark eyes met Mike’s hypnotized gaze. The Dom smiled sardonically when he saw Mike’s cock slowly swelling between the spread legs. Smug bastard!

Then the head dipped down again and Mike could feel his balls being sucked into Harvey’s warm wet mouth, first one and then the other, always alternating between them but never both at once. The slight scraping of teeth against his skin made the sensation so much more intense as if the reminder of what Harvey could do to him, how much pain he could inflict if he wanted to, intensified the pleasure. Somehow Harvey’s thumb had found its way to his taint and started with firm little circles to massage him there and the combined sensation of the fingers brushing over his prostate, the thumb massaging his taint and thus stimulating his prostate from the outside and the sucking mouth on his balls was suddenly way too much for Mike.

“Nghhh…!” He arched his back as far as he could and yanked on his tied wrists as if the tension in his body could ease the growing tension in his balls and cock.

“You make such pretty noises for me,” Harvey whispered barely loud enough for Mike to hear.

As if his Dom knew that Mike was almost ready again, he shifted his head a little and kissed the inside of Mike’s thigh. Then he started to nibble at the tender flesh of Mike’s muscular bike-messenger thighs, alternating between broad licks, open-mouthed wet kisses and careful bites.

Mike could feel Harvey’s stiff, slicked-back hair brushing over his skin and then the wet mouth latched onto a patch of skin, high up near the groin and his Dom started to suck in earnest.

“Ohhh….. nnggghh!”

Mike shook his head on the pillow, eyes firmly closed, no longer able to obey his Dom and watch what was going on between his legs.
Suddenly a sharp pain bloomed on his thigh as Harvey increased the suction and used his teeth to worry the skin in earnest. Mike’s eyes flew open while he sucked in a stream of air, looking down to the source of the pain and its cause. He was sure that he would have a purple bruise on this spot and this jolt of pain went straight to his dick, making it fully hard and ready again.

Harvey’s face appeared between his legs once more as if he wanted to admire his work.

“Look at my pretty little masochist,” he crooned. “I knew your cock would like that. Do you like to be marked by me, Puppy?”

He could feel Harvey’s smooth cheek pressed against the insides of his thigh, his breath tickling over the tender flesh where he’d given him the love bite. The effort of keeping his eyes open became too much for him and he was breathing heavy as if he were running a marathon instead of lying immobile on his back.

“Yes, please Sir. Mark me as yours. The pain ... so good.” His voice sounded strange and hoarse to himself, as if a stranger was saying them.

Harvey kissed his inner thigh affectionately and then sat up again. All the while, the stroking, pressing, searching fingers in his ass never ceased to stimulate him.

“Mike, open your eyes and look at me.” The order was barely a whisper but Mike obeyed instantly.

He saw that Harvey held the bottle of lube in his left hand, flicking the cap open with his thumb. Then a stripe of the clear gel was applied along the length of his shaft.

With a firm grip, Harvey’s left hand took possession of Mike’s dick, beginning to slowly jerk him while it spread the lube all over the hot hard flesh. The fingers in his ass ceased to press against the nerve-endings of his prostate and he was finger-fucked once again. Then the fingers were withdrawn and the sudden feeling of emptiness made Mike wail a little.

Harvey reached behind himself, snatched the towel up from the bench and wiped his sticky fingers on the soft cloth. Then he shifted forward, left hand still jerking Mike’s cock while his mouth found the oh so sensitive nipples of Mike, sucking onto them like a leech out for blood, stimulating them with suction and the hard tip of his tongue until Mike thought he might pass out, his synapses firing in all directions, shifting his brain into overload.

Then Harvey bit him and at the same time swiped his thumb over the slick crown of his cock.

Mike instinctively tried to arch his hips but was held back by the tight rope around his legs before he could move barely an inch.

“I want you to come for me Mike. I’m gonna bite you again, right below the nipple and at the same time jerk you hard and I want you to come for me.” Harvey’s voice had taken on the steely tone, his Dom-voice and Mike knew that he would obey, no matter what the costs may be.

Mike panted hard, not able to get enough air into his lungs. Then Harvey made good on his promise and right below his left nipple a sharp pain bloomed and was intensified by the sucking mouth and the scraping teeth.

Mike could feel his balls tighten again although he was sure that they still must be almost empty but nevertheless, the firm strokes, executed with a little force, pushed him over the edge and he climaxed again, crying out a strangled moan. “Arrghhh….!”

Weak spurts of come, much less than before, wetted Harvey’s fingers and dribbled on his stomach,
on top of the already drying come.

“That’s it, Mike. Let it happen. Relax and come for me. Be my good boy.” Harvey’s breath ghosted over Mike’s hard nipple as he was speaking the words of encouragement.

Mike shivered all over and he closed his eyes firmly, not able to hold back the tears that were now streaming down his cheeks, whether from the actual pain of the over-stimulation or sheer relieve that he had managed to obey is Dom and had come, Mike didn’t know.

Only slowly the tides of his forced climax ebbed and all Mike wanted now, was the touching of his spent cock to stop and to be allowed to go to sleep for a week. But he knew that the hour of his punishment wasn’t over yet.

**********

When Mike came, he cried out and the sound told Harvey that his boy was already hurting a bit and this orgasm hadn’t been the blissful release it should have been under normal circumstances. For a moment he thought about stopping the punishment then and there, telling Mike that it was over and he was forgiven. After all, the punishment hadn’t been his idea in the first place.

But Mike wasn’t stupid. He would know that the announced time frame for his punishment wasn’t over and even if he would gladly take Harvey’s mercy on him now, later he would ask questions and probably think, that Harvey only had gone easy on him because he wasn’t worth the effort. His boy’s mind was twisted in that way. No, it was better to see it through. He would help his boy though, without advertising what he was doing.

When the spasms of his climax slowly subsided and Mike’s breathing evened out a little, Harvey let go of Mike’s cock. He knew that by now, even the slightest touch would be torture, no matter how much lube he would use to ease the friction on the oversensitive skin.

Harvey shifted back to sit between Mike’s spread legs, wiped his sticky hand on the towel and then let his hands trail up and down the trembling thighs of his sub, the touch intended to soothe and calm. After a few moments, when the shaking of the tensed up thigh-muscles slowly subsided, he pressed a tender kiss on each knee and then stood up and walked towards the headboard. He picked up the water-bottle and sat down on the mattress next to Mike’s head.

“Take a sip of water, Mike. You need to drink.”

He gently pressed the straw against Mike’s red lips and his boy, eyes still firmly closed, began to suckle. Holding the bottle with one hand Harvey used the thumb of the other to wipe away the tears that were still trickling from underneath the closed eyelids, by now not as sign of pain but just another form of release.

When Mike was done with the water, Harvey put the bottle away and placed a series of feather-light kisses all over his boy’s face, murmuring sweet endearments in between.

“You’re so brave for me” – kiss – “so good” – kiss – “so beautiful” – kiss – “my sweet boy” – kiss – “my good little sub” – kiss – “suffering so beautifully” – kiss – “for me”. When his lips found Mike’s he stopped talking and concentrated on thoroughly kissing that beautiful mouth. The kiss was tender and not intended to arouse. It was a kiss for its own sake, not meant to lead up to something more. Harvey could feel Mike relax under him and he cupped his face in his hands, not holding him
in place, only wanting another form of connection between them.

When Harvey slowly introduced his tongue into Mike’s mouth, he was met with welcome, Mike opening his mouth a little wider for him, his boy’s tongue greeting his own, and then their tongues danced around each other, not fighting for dominance, just wanting to taste and touch and caress each other. It was a kiss as sweet and innocent and thorough as two teenagers would kiss when they first discovered kissing.

When Harvey finally broke the kiss, Mike tried to lift his head up from the pillow to chase his lips, not willing to let it end. When he was held back by his restraints, he let his head fall back, making a little mewling noise but otherwise he stayed silent although he obviously wanted protest.

Harvey continued to caress his sub’s face with his thumb while he still cradled the left cheek with the palm of his right hand. Mike slowly opened his eyes and met Harvey’s enquiring gaze.

“How do you feel, Mike?”

“Better now.” His voice still sounded hoarse but that couldn’t be helped now.

“Do you want your punishment to stop, Mike?”

He watched him closely as Mike thought about it, the different emotions clearly displayed on his face. From hopeful over resigned to determined.

“How long to go?”

Harvey looked at his watch. “About 20 minutes.”

Mike winced. “I don’t know if I can take it, Sir. I want to… take it I mean, but I don’t know if I can.”

“You can always safe word out. I will not think any less of you.”

“I don’t want that.” Mike shook his head determinately. “I want to see this through.”

“All right.” Harvey reached out between Mike’s spread legs and picked up one of the toys he had placed there earlier.

“I will use this next.” He held the item up so Mike could see it. “It’s a vibrator, designed for prostate massage. It has 5 different settings and I will start it on low.”

Mike swallowed visibly at that announcement but didn’t protest.

“Please tell me your color, Mike.”

“Can I please ask a question, Sir?”

“Of course.”

“Do I need to come once more or will you stop after the 20 minutes no matter what?”

Harvey gave it some thought before he made a decision.

“I will stop after whatever comes first. Orgasm or reaching the deadline.”

Mike nodded, but more as if to reassure himself that he could do it.
“My color is green, Sir. But can you please talk to me while you play with me. It helps when I can concentrate on your voice.”

“Of course, Mike. If it makes it easier for you, I will talk you through it.”

“Thank you, Sir.” Mike shifted a little within the limits of his restraints as if to find the most comfortable position. Then he sighed once, his face taking on a determined (stubborn) expression. “I’m ready, Sir.”

Harvey couldn’t help himself. He was so proud of Mike that he leaned once again forward and placed another kiss on Mike’s lips. Then he stood up and steeled himself for what he was about to do to Mike.

When he had taken his position between his sub’s legs, he picked up the bottle of lube and squirted a blob of the gel onto the head of the vibe. Then he dribbled some of the slick liquid between Mike’s ass-checks, placing the bottle right behind his balls and just squeezing it, so that the contents slowly flowed from the taint down over his hole before the excess dripped onto the already soiled sheets.

Harvey used his left hand to spread Mike’s cheeks open slightly while he trailed the head of the vibe, for now still turned off, up and down the crack. Then he aimed for Mike’s entrance and slowly increased the pressure until the opening gave way and the tip of the toy vanished in his boy’s body. Mike gasped when the toy breached the tight muscle-ring but then exhaled slowly as he tried to relax.

The sight was breathtaking and the noises Mike made when his body was breached went straight to Harvey’s own cock.

He had been hard from the moment he had seen his boy kneel for him earlier that evening and only the time between the end of the spanking and the beginning of the punishment had been a reprieve for Harvey. Over the years he had learned to ignore his own arousal when he was playing with a sub, the need for self-control always more important to him than the need to give into his own baser urges. But today he was sorely tested, since the sight of his brave boy was almost too much even for him to bear. Then he remembered Mike’s request.

“Oh, Mike. Look at that. Look at how your body opens up for the vibe.” He slowly began to fuck Mike with the toy, every stroke a little deeper than the one before.

“You’re so beautiful. The way you’re stretched around it, so tight.”

Harvey’s gaze was fixed onto the few square inches of Mike where the toy was vanishing into the body and the thought of how tight and hot Mike would feel around his dick was enough to draw a thick drop of pre-come from his own dick. Harvey could feel it being soaked up by his tight boxer-briefs, the wet silky material now clinging to his sensitive cock-head. He grew determined not to need the whole remaining 18 minutes but to make Mike come again as quickly as possible and then to get off himself.

When the vibe was deep inside of Mike, he angled it a little until he could see in Mike’s widening eyes that he’d found the right spot.

“I’m going to turn it on now, Mike. On the lowest setting first, so you can get used to it.”

He pushed the button on the bottom of the toy and Mike’s whole body immediately went stiff as a board.

“Ohhhh…,” he moaned loudly, his breath coming in short puffs.
“Mike, you can talk to me now. Tell me how it feels.”

Maybe voicing this sensations would help him to process them.

“Oh God, Sir. That’s …ahhh…almost too much.”

Harvey began to shift the vibe slowly inside of Mike’s body, the pressure against the prostate now easing up a little.

“Is that a little better?”

Mike took a deep breath. “Yes, better. Good. Ohhh!”

Harvey had withdrawn the toy until only the tip was still inside of Mike and then pushed it back in with one long stroke, angling it on the last inch to brush against the prostate. By now he had memorized where exactly it was positioned inside of his boy and zeroing in on it was no problem.

He could see the muscles on his boy’s thighs tensing up, pulling at the restraints that held his legs wide open as he instinctively tried to close them and the palm of his left hand immediately petted the inside of the struggling limb to make it relax once more.

Mike moaned almost non-stop, only pausing to draw in some air with a shuddering breath every now and then. He seemed to have forgotten that he was allowed to use words or maybe formulating and articulating them was too much of a bother right now.

But despite Harvey’s best efforts, Mike’s dick stayed stubbornly flaccid although his boy was obviously aroused and enjoyed, at least to some degree, the attention to his prostate.

“I’m going to take it up a notch, Mike,” Harvey announced and increased the setting of the vibe while he pressed it firmly against the little bundle of nerve-endings.

“Ohhhhh,” Mike sighed, his lips forming an almost perfect o-shape. But still, Mike’s dick didn’t seem to want to play.

Harvey would have none of that and was willing to take extreme measures. Since his boy had been careful thanks to his Grammy the risk would be minimal.

Harvey shifted forward a little and took Mike’s limp dick into his left hand, holding it loosely at its base. Then he bent down and licked a wet stripe across Mike’s balls along the shaft up to the red cockhead.

“Ahhhh!” A quick glance up to his boy’s face told him, that his puppy enjoyed the attention of Harvey’s tongue and he repeated the action for good measure all the while shifting the vibe minutely around in Mike’s ass, brushing over the prostate every so often.

“Do you like my tongue on your dick, Mike?” Harvey’s voice was low and slightly growly and at the next moment he blew a stream of cool air on the wet skin.

“Ahhhh. Oh, yes. So good, Sir.”

“Then you will enjoy what comes next even more.” Without giving Mike time to ask, Harvey opened his mouth again and took the cock-head in his mouth, suckling softly at it. Then he stiffened the tip of his tongue and pressed it teasingly against the slit, as if he wanted to gain access.”

“Ohhh God!”
His left hand slowly started to make a pumping motion at the lower part of the shaft and Harvey was actually proud of how well he was able to coordinate both of his hands and his mouth to stimulate Mike in the most elaborate way possible.

The tip of his tongue ceased its attack on the slit and started to circle the head right at the seam where it met the shaft while his lips and mouth still created a slight suction. When he paused to take a breath he looked up to Mike’s face and saw, that he had thrown his head back into the pillow, eyes firmly shut and mouth open and moaning. The bound hands were balled into fists and he was pulling on his restraints as if he was searching for some kind of support.

He briefly licked over the head with a broad soft tongue and then opened his mouth wider, taking in as much of Mike’s slowly hardening cock as he could. Then he started bobbing his head while his left hand shifted downwards to his sub’s balls and started playing with them.

“Please, Sir. Too much. Please!” Mike suddenly cried out and Harvey stopped and let go of Mike’s half hard dick. His hands stopped what they were doing but he didn’t withdrew the vibe from his boy’s ass, although he turned off the vibrations.

“Mike, look at me.”

Taking some deep breaths, Mike finally managed to lift his head slightly and look at Harvey. His face was again tear-stained and flushed red.

“Did I hurt you, Mike?”

“No, no… Sir,” Mike stuttered, still a little out of breath. “But it’s too much. I can’t take it. It’s too intense.”

“Do you want to use your safe word? You only have to say it, Mike. I won’t be mad. I promise.”

Mike looked torn between what his body demanded him to do and what he wanted on a rational level.

“I don’t want to say it, Sir,” he finally whispered, shaking his head vigorously on the pillow.

“There’s no shame in using your safe word, Michael. I will still be proud of you. I am proud of you.”

Harvey really wanted Mike to give up, if only to teach him how to safe-word out properly. This was a lesson every new sub needed to learn sooner or later and his boy seemed to have reached the end of his tether.

“No, I don’t want to. I don’t. I won’t. But please, Sir. Help me.”

This proud and stubborn boy.

Harvey gave in with a resigned sigh. “All right Mike. What can I do?”

“Please, do it quickly. No more teasing. Just… end it. I can take it if I know that you won’t draw it out.”

Harvey looked skeptically at him. “You sure? It will be pretty intense if not painful.”

“It already is. Intense I mean. And a little painful. But also good. I hate it and I love it. I don’t know.”

Harvey nodded. “As you wish. But please, use your safe word if it gets too much.”
Mike nodded.

Harvey placed a kiss on the inside of Mike’s right thigh and flicked the vibe back on, dialing it up to its highest setting. Mike’s whole body immediately responded and went rigid, arms and legs pulling on the restraints, the tendons clearly visible under Mike’s sweat covered and flushed skin.

“Ohhhhh, God!” Mike shouted at the top of his lungs.

Without further ado, Harvey bent forward once again and swallowed as much of Mike’s semi-hard cock as he could in one go. He cradled the underside of the cock with his tongue and as he withdrew it from his mouth he trailed the vein on the underside of the shaft with the tip of his tongue, swirling it around the head before he bopped his head down again, taking as much as he could into his mouth and throat. Mike’s dick seemed to appreciate his efforts and soon reached its former size.

It had been a while since Harvey had last deep-throated someone, (normally he did the mouth-fucking) but his boy’s cock appeared to have just the perfect size for him. Long enough that it reached down his throat and he had to make a conscious effort to relax his muscles while breathing through his nose, but not thick enough to make him gag or stretch his lips uncomfortably.

His right hand pressed the vibe firmly against Mike’s prostate, only shifting it slightly while he continued to bob his head up and down Mike’s length, letting his boy fuck into the warm wet heat that was Harvey’s mouth.

Suddenly, he could feel Mike’s hips buck up the one inch he could move and a strangled cry reached his ears. That was all the warning he would get and then the hard cock twitched weakly in his mouth and he eased up a little so he could swirl his tongue around the head once more while his lips provided the necessary suction.

It was no surprise for Harvey when only a few drops of come spilled out of the slit and he let the dick pop out of his mouth, caressing the bright red cock-head with his soft tongue, lapping up the last traces of come, savoring its taste although he knew that his boy would’ve tasted a little different the first and second time around. Slowly the trembling in Mike’s whole body subsided when the last waves of the orgasm ebbed.

As soon as Mike’s climax was over, Harvey flicked the vibe off and removed it. His strong hands stroked the insides of Mike’s thighs with sure firm movements while he waited for his boy to get his breath back.

Then he shifted forward, propping himself up on his knees and forearms as he hovered over his boy’s still bound form, careful not to brush against Mike’s oh so sensitive crotch. He started to kiss his way up to Mike’s face from his left shoulder, over his neck, along his jawline until he reached his beautiful pink lips. Harvey pressed a chaste kiss on them. “I’m so proud of you, Mike. You have been such a good boy,” he whispered softly, his breath brushing against his boy’s cheek.

Mike met his gaze with his tired blue teary eyes, clearly by now running only on fumes. But still he managed a weak smile.

“I did it,” he mumbled, his voice slightly slurred with fatigue but unmistakably proud.

Harvey placed a playful kiss on the tip of his nose. “You did indeed,” he confirmed with an answering smile of his own. Then his gaze took on a longing expression.

“Mike, can I ask you for one more thing. You can say no. Your punishment is over, but…” Harvey trailed off, not sure that he could demand more of his exhausted sub. But his sudden yearning
seemed to overpower him.

“What is it, Sir?” Mike asked curiously.

“No, forget it. I can’t ask that of you. Not now.” Harvey started to shift back, intent on freeing Mike from his restraints and provide him with the proper aftercare.

“Please Sir, tell me. I want to know.”

Harvey stopped in his tracks. “You sure?” he asked skeptically.

Mike nodded, his eyes firmly on Harvey’s, as if he wanted to compel his Dom to talk.

Harvey swallowed once, not sure if he should give in to his urges. But Mike’s open gaze, the trust and affection he could see in his puppy’s beautiful blue eyes, gave Harvey the final push.

“I’m so turned on and hard, have been the whole evening, and you’re so beautiful like this. Can you stay like this a little while longer while I make myself come? You make such a pretty picture, all flushed and well fucked with dried come all over you. I won’t need long, I promise.”

Mike’s smile widened and Harvey could have sworn that if his boy, young as he was, hadn’t come three times within the last hour, there would be a spark of arousal in his eyes. Well, maybe not arousal, but definitely interest.

“I would like that very much, Sir,” his perfect little sub answered obediently. Harvey nodded once, than shifted back until he kneeled upright between Mike’s widely spread legs.

Harvey pushed his sweatpants and underwear down to mid-thigh and took his own by now painfully hard cock in his right hand.

“If you would let me lick your palm, make it really wet and slick, it would be more comfortable for you,” Mike interrupted him, but the offer was so considerate and perfect that he couldn’t reprimand him for talking without permission.

“That’s very kind of you, Mike, but not necessary.” Harvey swiped his palm once over his cockhead to slicken it up with pre-come and then closed his fingers firmly around his length. This wouldn’t take long enough that the friction would become painful without lubricant. While his eyes roamed over his boy’s beautiful body and face, remembering how he had tasted and how his tight hot hole had felt around his fingers, his hips fucked into his own fist, every now and then swiping the thumb over his slick head and teasing the slit.

Mike’s gaze was intently fixed on his cock and Harvey realized that Mike saw him now for the first time.

“You’re so fucking pretty, Mike. I can’t wait to fuck that beautiful tight ass of yours. I want to touch you everywhere, taste every part of you.”

Mike wet his lips with his pink tongue and then his teeth nibbled on his bottom lip. Harvey could’ve sworn that if Mike wouldn’t have been so fucked out and tired right now, he would’ve gotten hard again, just by watching Harvey jerking off.

He could see that his boy wanted to say something. “Talk to me, Mike. Let me hear your voice.”

“You’re cock is so beautiful, Sir.” There was real awe in his voice so Harvey was sure it wasn’t just meaningless flattery. “So big and dark. Most dicks get red but yours is just a darker shade of your
skin tone. I can’t wait until I’m allowed to touch it and maybe even taste it. I’m sure that you taste great. And I want to feel you inside me. Even right now, I would want you to fuck me if you wanted that too.”

That was enough for Harvey to be pushed over the edge. Two firm strokes and then his back arched, hips stuttering and he came with Mike’s name on his lips, hot spurts of come splattering on his sub’s stomach and chest, mixing with his puppy’s own, already dried, come. Mike moaned loudly when Harvey’s semen painted white stripes over his body as if he was participating in his Dom’s orgasm.

Harvey stroked himself through the aftershocks, eyes closed and his breathing labored. When his thighs began to tremble a little with the post-climax exhaustion, he sat back and opened his eyes again, his right hand still around his dick, coaxing the last drops of come out of the slowly softening flesh.

Mike’s gaze was still firmly raking over his body, such longing in the wide blue eyes, bottom lip bitten almost raw.

He felt a surge of affection for his beautiful puppy and his voice was slightly throaty. “Thank you, Mike. That was amazing.”

He reached behind himself to clean his hand with the towel but Mike made a protesting noise and Harvey stopped.

“What is it Mike?”

“Please Sir, can I taste you? Please?” Mike’s huge eyes were giving him such a hungry look, full of want and longing and the pink tip of his tongue darted out between the red lips in anticipation, like his mouth was already watering for Harvey’s come.

Harvey looked down at his sticky hand, remembering how much Mike had enjoyed tasting himself and sucking on his thumb. He smiled indulgently. His boy had deserved a treat.

With his left hand, he pulled his pants back up before he left his spot between Mike’s legs. When he sat down beside Mike’s head he reached for the ring in the headboard where the rope had been fastened, but Mike interrupted him again.

“Oh, what is it.”

He would have, no, should have reprimanded him there and then but Mike had been so good for him that he decided to let it go for now.

“You sure? Aren’t your arms hurting by now?”

Mike smiled at that, an almost dreamy expression in his eyes. “Yes Sir, it hurts a little. But it feels good as well. Being held down, unable to move, all yours.”

“All right then. Suit yourself.” Harvey cradled Mike’s face with his left and brought his right to Mike’s mouth. He held up his index finger so Mike could see the drops of sticky white come clinging to his skin. Mike opened his mouth and Harvey slowly pushed the finger in. The sub immediately started to suck on it, tongue swirling around, seemingly determined to collect every last drop of come. Harvey slowly withdrew his finger after a few moments, showing Mike his sticky middle finger before pushing it into the greedy wet mouth.

When Mike had cleaned all his fingers and thumb thoroughly Harvey held up his palm to show him the last remnants of sperm. Obediently Mike stuck his tongue out and licked the hand clean, from
wrist to fingertips, all the while slurping and moaning like Harvey’s come was the most delicious treat he had ever tasted. The tongue continued to lick in the spaces between the fingers and then Mike’s mouth focused onto his thumb once more, sucking at it like there was no tomorrow.

When Harvey tried to withdraw it, he could feel Mike’s teeth closing around it, as if he wanted to prevent his Dom from pulling it out by force. That was a little too much for Harvey, even in this generous state of mind he was in right now, post-climax. The thumb of his left hand shifted to the pressure point behind the jaw-joint and pressed down firmly. Mike gasped as the sharp pain shot through his jaw and immediately opened his mouth, giving Harvey a hurt and slightly indignant look.

“Pushy little subs need to learn their place,” Harvey explained sternly. “Remember what I told you more than once already.”

It took Mike only a moment before he knew what Harvey meant and his petulant expression made way for an apologetic one. “I will only take what you give me when you give it to me. I’m not allowed to ask for more or be my pushy little self. I’m sorry, Sir. I forgot myself for a moment.”

Harvey nodded once to show Mike that he had accepted the apology. Then he stood up to untie his sub, starting at the legs.

When the first leg was untied, he guided the limb with his hands into an outstretched position. Mike moaned and Harvey knew, that the joint and the sinews would be stiff from holding the unnatural position for so long. With firm strokes of his hands he tried to soothe the pain, massaging the stiff muscles a little and pushing his thumbs in the hollow of Mike’s knee to loosen up the stiff joint and ligatures.

When both legs were outstretched he went to the headboard and unraveled the restraints that held Mike’s arms. Harvey had chosen a simple knot that held firm but could be easily untied if you pushed the two ends of the rope together. He kept scissors nearby in case he needed to free his sub in a hurry but since Mike seemed to like the feeling of being bound, he took his time. Finally Mike’s wrist slipped free and Harvey guided both arms in a position beside Mike’s upper body.

His boy winced a little and Harvey sat down beside him and gave both arms the same treatment he had given to the legs. When he was sure that the pain had subsided and that there was only minimal rope-burn on Mike’s skin he placed a soft kiss on Mike’s mouth, surprising him since his exhausted sub had closed his eyes, nearly drifting off to sleep while his Dom took care of him.

“Stay like this. I will get you cleaned up in a minute.”

Harvey went to the bathroom to get the washcloth and some lotion to treat the rope burn. When he had cleaned Mike up as thoroughly as he could short of dragging him into the shower and rubbed the salve on his wrists and ankles, he got the comforter and settled in beside Mike, gathering his sweet boy into his arms.

“Good night, Sweetheart.”

“Can I retract my statement regarding forced orgasms, Sir?” Mike mumbled sleepily.

“Changed your mind, hunh?” Harvey chuckled softly. “All right, we make the changes in the contract tomorrow. Now sleep.”

“Night,” Mike mumbled barely audible, pushed his nose firmly against Harvey’s neck, snuffled once and promptly obeyed his Dom.
This chapter contains explicit descriptions of forced orgasms but Mike gets several opportunities to safe-word out, so it's not dub-con.

Thank you for reading and all your support and the nice comments and the kudos so far. You guys rock.

As always, this chapter hasn't been beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

I have no personal experience in BDSM and also no male genitalia so everything is a product of my weird imagination.

I would love to read your thoughts or comments on this chapter and Kudos is also very welcome (mild praise-kink here).
Chapter Summary

The day after their first night together. Mike misbehaves and Harvey has to enforce a few rules.

Chapter Notes

This chapter gave me some trouble but after nearly 3 weeks of editing I think it will not get any better so I’ve decided to put it up and stop fussing.

Thank you for all your nice comments and the Kudos so far. It is very much appreciated and I try to reply to every comment.

See the end of the chapter for more notes.

Harvey woke up at around 7 a.m., which was almost a little late for him, even on a Sunday. Normally he would get up early and go for a run in the park or work out at the gym before he would get himself ready for the day and then most likely be working for a few hours at least. But today, a warm slender body was firmly pressed against his own and the masculine scent of sweat and sex still lingered in his bedroom and on the sheets. For a moment he pondered the thought of waking Mike up and seducing him to lazy morning sex but although he’d sucked Mike off last night, he wasn’t prepared to have sex without condoms before Mike had gotten tested. He was sure that Mike would be healthy, Grammy had taken care of that, but years of discipline in that area couldn’t be forgotten just because a beautiful young man was lying naked in his arms, looking adorable with his ruffled hair and soft relaxed features.

He propped himself up on his elbow to study Mike’s face for a while. He had done this a couple of times by now but each time he discovered a new minute detail like the unnaturally long lashes or the little brown freckle on the rim of his left ear, or the twin spots on his left temple, and it hadn’t gotten old so far. Every now and then, a soft little snore would escape the pink and slightly open mouth and sometimes the young man wrinkled his nose a little after that like his own noise disturbed him.

Harvey sighed. He really needed to remember that Mike was not a sweet innocent kid but a grown man with serious discipline issues and a brilliant mind. Treating him like a puppy in a scene, especially when he was new to what was happening, was all well and good but during their normal day to day life his boy needed to learn discipline and self-restraint.

And it was self-restraint that forced Harvey to get up and leave his sleeping sub alone or he would have given into his urges and rubbed himself against Mike’s relaxed body until either he would’ve come or Mike had woken up and he would’ve made both of them come together.

Harvey took a quick shower during which he took care of his growing erection with practiced movements while thinking about last night and then got through his morning routine which included even on Sundays a shave and the careful styling of his hair. When he was finished, Mike was still sleeping and he was resolved to let him be for now, allowing him a few more hours of sleep. After
all, last night must’ve been a lot for Mike to process and the kid didn’t get much sleep during the week either.

Harvey was sitting at his breakfast-bar, dressed in tan slacks and dark-blue button-down shirt, his second cup of coffee almost empty and his open laptop in front of him, working on that damn merger he had been stuck with by Jessica.

He found that his mind worked always better when his sexual needs had been met and therefore intended to use his post-sex brain for the good of his client.

He was so absorbed in his work, staring at the screen while taking notes on the legal pad with his right hand, that he first noticed Mike when he was already standing in the middle of his living room, clothed only in his boxers.

“Good morning, Mike. Have you slept well?”

Mike scratched at his chest, a dark-red love-bite clearly visible below his left nipple, and yawned hugely before sauntering over to him, his blue eyes firmly fixed onto the coffee-maker.

“Yeah, thanks. Really good. Hey, can I have some coffee?”

Before Harvey could answer the question Mike had already started to open the kitchen cabinets in search for the cups, all of yesterday’s lessons clearly forgotten. The pushy little brat was back in town.

Harvey stood up and landed a quick forceful swat on Mike’s backside which made his sub jump with surprise.

“Harvey!” he protested loudly. “That hurt.”

Harvey, and not Sir, the Dom noted with growing irritation.

“Good,” he replied with barely concealed anger. “Stop touching my things without my permission. Go to the bathroom, take a shower and brush your teeth. Don’t bother to dress yourself but you can put on the bathrobe. You have 5 minutes.” He looked at his watch and then went back to his computer, ignoring Mike whose mouth was gaping open in shock.

When his sub didn’t move Harvey pushed a little. “4 minutes, 40 seconds. And the prospect of you being allowed to come during the next week is seriously dwindling if you keep up the shitty attitude.” His eyes had stayed fixedly on the screen of his laptop but he could see in his peripheral vision that Mike, without another word, hurried back to the bedroom.

It was a close call, but Mike managed to be back just on time, his hair still damp and sticking up at odd angles since he hadn’t bothered to comb it after toweling it dry. Harvey’s fluffy dark-blue bathrobe was a little big for him and he stood forlornly in front of Harvey, clearly not knowing what to do next.

Harvey looked up from the computer-screen pointedly before he gestured to one of the high barstools.

“Take a seat, Mike.”

Mike sat down obediently on the indicated place opposite Harvey, eyes fixed on the glossy surface of the kitchen isle.
Harvey reached out and forced Mike’s chin up with his right index finger.

“Can you tell me what you did wrong just now?”

A slightly stubborn expression flickered over Mike’s face.

“I just wanted a cup of coffee. You told me yesterday that I always could get something to drink when I wanted it, as well as food and the bathroom.”

Harvey rolled his eyes at him. “No Mike, that’s not what I told you. Use your brain and remember my words. My exact words.”

Mike’s eyes seemed to lose focus for a moment as he replayed their conversation in his mind. Harvey could see it in Mike’s eyes when his boy finally noticed his mistake.

“You said, you can always ask for basic necessities, like water or food or using the bathroom or being kept warm,” Mike quoted back verbatim at Harvey, who nodded his agreement.

“And how does this apply to the situation a couple of minutes ago?”

Mike sighed defeated, obviously a little troubled of being confronted with his mistake, but replied obediently. “Coffee isn’t water and anyway, I didn’t just ask but tried to take it myself. I didn’t wait for your permission. I’m sorry Sir, I was wrong.”

“And how do you think I should punish you for this transgression?”

Mike nibbled at his lip, clearly not sure how he should reply. Was this a minor transgression or would this warrant a spanking?

Harvey decided to go easy on him for now.

“Get one of the throw-pillows from the couch.”

When Mike handed his Dom the pillow Harvey let it drop beside his chair.

“Take the robe off, place it over the stool and kneel on the pillow, face towards my thigh.”

When Mike had taken his position on the pillow Harvey let his palm trail over the naked man’s back.

“Back a little straighter. Hand’s behind your back and grab your left wrist with your right hand. Shoulders further back. Yes, like this. Now, eyes on the floor in front of you. You will stay like this until I’m satisfied that you have learned your lesson. And no talking or making noises. I need to concentrate on my work.”

Harvey focused his attention back onto the screen but every now and then he surreptitiously glanced down at Mike although he refrained from petting him, like he had done before on similar occasions. This was punishment and not play and Mike needed to learn to live without his Dom’s constant reassurance.

To Harvey’s astonishment the sub seemed to cope remarkably well with his punishment. He swayed a little on his knees and every so often shifted minutely but otherwise held his position.

After 15 minutes Harvey decided to reward him for his obedience if he would pass one more test. He took his cup of coffee and emptied it with a large gulp. Harvey could see that Mike was very much aware of his Dom’s actions although his eyes were firmly fixed at the floor in front of him. The rosy tip of the tongue darted out briefly between his pink lips while his adam’s-apple bopped visibly,
Harvey stood up and went to the coffee-maker to get a refill. He added a dash of skimmed milk but no sugar, just like he preferred his coffee and went back to his seat. He turned a little in his chair towards Mike, watching him openly now while he took a sip of the fresh coffee, putting on a show for his sub. When Mike’s eyes stayed firmly on the floor Harvey reached out with his left hand and lifted Mike’s face with his fingers. Then he brought his cup up to his sub’s lips.

“It’s not too hot but I want you to take shallow sips nevertheless, just to be on the safe side.”

When blue eyes looked up at his face skeptically he could see Mike’s thoughts clearly displayed in them.

“Don’t worry, Mike. I won’t spill it on you. Your cock is safe. You can trust me.”

Mike opened his lips and Harvey tipped the cup carefully. Mike slurped a little as the hot liquid flowed into his mouth but they didn’t spill a drop. After a few sips, Harvey took the cup away and placed it on the table.

“I would’ve given you a cup of coffee, Mike, of course I would have, if you’d only asked nicely. But your course of action forced me to punish you instead. I didn’t want to do that. I would’ve preferred a nice and relaxed breakfast with you sitting at the table. But you asked me to set you boundaries and I can see now that they’re indeed sorely needed. So, you will stay where you are, not allowed to sit with me at the adult table, while I make you some toast. You will eat it down there and afterward we will have a talk about proper behavior and what is expected of you. I realize now that we haven’t been specific enough yesterday when we talked about general rules. We need to remedy that.”

Harvey stood up again and went to put some whole-grain bread into the toaster. When it was crispy and slightly brown he buttered it lightly, cut it into stripes and placed them on a plate. He also took a green apple out of the fruit basket and sliced it into bite-sized pieces. It was high time to include some vitamins into his boy’s diet.

“Any food allergies I should now about?” he asked as an afterthought.

“No, Sir.”

When he sat back down he took one of the pieces of buttered toast and brought it down to Mike’s mouth. Mike let go of his left wrist but Harvey took the piece of toast away before the sub could reach for it.

“No Mike, stay in position. I will feed you. This way you learn to only take what is given to you when it’s given to you.”

Mike obeyed and opened his mouth expectantly. Harvey popped the first stripe of toast in and his sub took a bite. Alternating between toast, bits of apple and sips of coffee Harvey took care of feeding Mike in comfortable silence. Only once he had to reprimand his sub. Mike tried to lick playfully at Harvey’s fingers and he quickly withdrew them. “None of that Mike. This isn’t play.”

When they were finished, Harvey cleared the plate and the cup away but instead of taking his seat at the table, Harvey went to the couch and settled in.

“Come here, Mike. And take your pillow with you.”

Harvey could see that Mike was unsure regarding the right protocol but he stayed silent, curious
what his sub would do. After a few seconds, Mike raised a hand.

“Yes, Mike?”

“Can I get up and walk or shall I crawl, Sir?”

A pensive expression flickered over Harvey’s face as he studied Mike intently.

“Would you do that for me, Mike? Crawl on the floor like a puppy?”

Mike seemed to think about it for a moment, eyeing the stretch of hardwood floor between them hesitantly. Then he appeared to come to a decision.

“If you want me to, yes Sir.” Mike started to shift forward and placed his palms on the floor in front of him but Harvey stopped him.

“Don’t Mike. You can stand up and walk. I gain no pleasure in seeing you crawl but thank you for your willingness.”

Mike nodded and slowly stood up. He winced softly when he stretched his legs and surreptitiously tried to shake them a little to get the kinks out.

“Take your time, Mike. You held the position for quite a while. I know that your legs must hurt by now.”

When he felt a little surer on his legs he went over to Harvey, handing him the pillow. Harvey placed it beside his feet but before Mike could get on his knees Harvey put a hand on Mike’s right thigh.

“Show me the inside.”

Mike turned his leg a little so Harvey could see the dark purple bruise on the inside near the groin. He brushed his hand carefully over the mark, noting the difference in temperature on the skin. Then he applied a little pressure with his thumb and Mike hissed because of the sudden pain. But his cock, until now flaccid, gave an interested little twitch. Masochist indeed. Well, he could work with that.

“Does it hurt badly?”

“No, Sir. Not badly. On the contrary. I like that I can still feel it.” Mike’s voice sounded a little embarrassed.

Harvey nodded and in his mind he planned a dozen future scenes in which he would mark Mike in all kinds of places and manners. Oh, the things he would do with his boy. But now he needed to deal with more pressing matters. He pointed towards the pillow.

“You can sit down. Kneeling must be painful by now, well, a different kind of painful, and I want your complete attention.”

Mike settled in and Harvey reached out and petted his by now dried hair lightly.

“You can sit down. Kneeling must be painful by now, well, a different kind of painful, and I want your complete attention.”

Mike nodded as a sign that he’d understood but stayed silent, which earned him a little scratch at the nape of his neck.

“Now, a few ground rules for when we are together as well when we are apart. I expect you to remember them from now on, so pay attention.”
Harvey took out his mobile phone and opened an app. “I will record this and type it up later, to add it to our contract. Therefore I need your verbal confirmation at certain points of our conversation. If you have a question you may raise your hand and wait until I give you permission to speak. Is that understood, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“I want you to maintain eye-contact for this discussion Mike.” Immediately Mike’s blue eyes found his and Harvey gave him a little reassuring smile.

“Like I told you yesterday, when you’re with me, you can always ask, nicely and respectfully of course, for basic necessities like something to drink or eat as well as using the bathroom and being kept warm. As your Dom it is my responsibility to see that your essential needs are met. But asking for something doesn’t mean that you can take it yourself or that you would get it immediately. This would depend on the urgency of your request. For example, if I plan to take you to dinner to a restaurant I would ask you to wait and not feed you immediately as soon as you feel a little bit hungry. On the other hand, if you would need to use the bathroom urgently, I would always grant you the permission to do so at the earliest possible time. Do you understand, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir. I understand.”

“Good. Another thing. Most of the time you call me Sir, and I like that very much and I think you do too. But sometimes you forget and you need to do better. From now on, when we are alone, either here or in public, you will call me Sir at all times and not just when you feel like it. You can call me by name when someone could overhear us though. I don’t want you to feel embarrassed in front of strangers.” He thought for a moment. “And you can call me Harvey when we’re having sex. I like how you say my name, how it sounds, when you’re aroused.”

Mike smiled slightly, remembering how he had called his Dom’s name when he had first been fingered open by him.

“Please give me your confirmation, Mike.”

“Yes Sir. I will do better from now on and call you Sir all the time.”

“Next rule. For now, I want you to kneel for me, unless told otherwise, when we are alone, either here or in your apartment as well as in my office when there is no chance that someone will come in. When you kneel upright your hands will be positioned behind your back like before and when I allow you to sit back on your heels your hands will be resting palms down on your thighs. If I want you in another position I will tell you at the time. And I will tell you where I want you to look, which will be either on the floor in front of you or up to me.”

Mike raised a hand and Harvey gave him his permission with a nod.

“What if I’m not sure if you want me to kneel for you? I mean, when we meet in your office at night. I wouldn’t know for sure if we’re really alone and I wouldn’t want to embarrass you.”

“Good point. When we’re at my office I will tell you when I expect you to kneel.” Harvey’s gaze shifted towards the huge windows, eyes staring in the distance for a moment as if he was thinking. Then he seemed to come to a decision.

“From now on, you’re not allowed to touch yourself without my explicit permission nor are you allowed to come or to find any other way to pleasure yourself. This rule applies when you are with me as well as when you are alone. And before you ask, yes, of course you can touch yourself when
you dress or shower or go to the toilet, but no touching for your own pleasure. Do you understand, Mike?"

Harvey could see that this rule and all it would entail gave Mike serious pause. After all, touching yourself in the morning or giving yourself a lazy little stroke while you adjusted yourself in your underwear every now and then was the most natural thing for most men. But this rule would give him a huge advantage in Mike’s training. At first he had intended it only to apply when they were together, but after this morning it became clear to Harvey that his boy needed a very strong hand.

“I… yes Sir, I understand.”

“You are allowed to ask me for my permission though, but that doesn’t mean that you would get it.”

“Yes, Sir.”

Harvey nodded and got to the next rule.

“From now on, I want you to check in with me at least 3 times a day. A quick call or text in the morning and at noon will suffice but in the evenings you will call me and tell me about your day. And I think that I don’t need to remind you of our very first rule, or do I, Mike?”

“No Sir. Our first rule was, that I’m not allowed to lie, not direct nor through omission.”

Harvey nodded satisfied and carried on.

“During the next couple of weeks I will make several appointments for you, to some of which you will need to go alone, for others we will meet. The first appointment is tomorrow with my GP. I will text you the address. The next appointments will be for the waxing, a haircut and I think a mani-pedi wouldn’t be amiss either. You’ve done okay on your own so far but a proper grooming by the hands of professionals is something entirely different. And I will take you shopping sometime next week. I want to take you out for dinner one of these days and if you show up in your usual grubby jeans and ratty t-shirt the Maître ‘D might have a heart-attack. I will text you all the dates and places I want you to go to. I will try and schedule them according to your work-hours. If you’re not able to make it in time due to work, text me and I will re-schedule for you.”

Mike nodded but when Harvey pointed to his cell phone he gave his verbal confirmation.

“All right. Last rule. I want you to take a picture from everything you eat and drink, except water, when you’re alone and to send it to me before you eat or drink it. I want to keep tabs on what you put in your mouth and how much of it.” He saw his boy’s stubborn expression. “Mike, stop glaring daggers at me. I want you to think about what you do to your body and this will force you to eat some fruit and vegetables once in a while. I won’t forbid you pizza or burgers or even the Red Bull when there’s no chance I might smell it but I want you to be more conscious about nutrition. You’re not a child anymore and it is time that you eat accordingly.”

Mike sighed resigned. “Yes, Sir.”

“I think that’s it for now. I will type it up later and send you a copy. It will be an addendum to our contract.”

Mike nodded.

“So, what are your plans for today? Still going to see your Grandmother?”

“Yes, Sir. I haven’t seen her for almost two weeks and besides, there is something I need to clarify
with the nursing home.”

Harvey was curious. “Anything serious?”

For a second Mike was tempted to lie because he felt embarrassed that he needed to ask the nursing home for a delay in payment but he hadn’t enough money in his account to pay their latest bill.

“I really don’t want to talk about it because it’s hard, Sir. I feel like such a failure.”

Harvey patted his knee. “Put your head here.” Mike obliged and Harvey carded his fingers through his hair and rubbed his scalp with strong fingertips. When he could feel Mike relax against his leg he picked up their conversation.

“So, what is it that troubles you, Puppy?”

Mike sighed. “I need to ask the administrator for an extension of payment. Their latest bill was more than I have in my account. It seems that Grammy has been on new meds for a couple of months now and they’re really expensive.”

“Mike, can I help you with the bill? I could give you a loan. It would be no trouble.” Harvey’s tone was carefully neutral. He would’ve gladly paid the bills but he wasn’t sure how Mike would react. Their relationship was already based on an imbalance of power. Adding a monetary element to it would most likely complicate matters way beyond Mike’s comfort zone. And he was right.

“Thank you, Sir, but no. I don’t want you as my sugar-daddy and taking money from you would feel that way. It would make things really weird between us. And you’re already paying for all the other stuff. Grammy is my responsibility and I will figure something out.” He paused for a moment as if he needed to make up his mind. “Maybe I can get another job, but that would mean that we have even less time together, at least for now.”

“What kind of job were you thinking of?”

“My friend Jenny mentioned something about a gig as a waiter for a catering service. You know, handing tidbits and drinks around at fancy events. She says that it pays really well and it could be a few nights a week if they like me enough. Maybe I could give up the cleaning gig after a while. Then I would have more time for us, Sir.”

Harvey hated that Mike had to struggle so much but he knew that his boy had to figure it out for himself. He already had a vague notion of a plan in his mind but he needed some more time before he could set the necessary wheels in motion. Maybe Mike’s plan wasn’t so bad and would tide him over in the meantime.

“We’ll figure something out, Mike. Just do what you have to do in order to provide for your Grammy. And maybe I could keep my ears open for you. My firm hosts several parties and other occasions each year for which we hire a catering service. I could make inquiries, see if they have a job opening and maybe get your foot into the door for an interview. But only if you want my help. You would still have to do all the rest, though. This wouldn’t be charity.”

Mike raised his head and looked at Harvey.

“You would really do that for me, Sir? Get my foot into the door?”

Harvey shrugged. “Sure. Why not? I have every confidence that you wouldn’t let me down. After all, it’s for your Grammy.”
Mike grinned. “Yes, it’s for Grammy. And you, Sir.”

“Very well. Then it is decided. So, when do you need to leave?”

“Visitor time is from 3 p.m. till 7 p.m., Sir.”

Harvey looked at his watch. “That gives us a few more hours if you want. It's your decision. I know that yesterday had happened a lot. If you need some time alone, I understand.”

Mike thought about it for a moment but his empty apartment held no appeal for him.

“Can I stay a little longer, Sir?”

Harvey smiled. “Of course. Is there something you want to do specifically?”

“Just being with you is fine. Or do you have something in mind, Sir? I would do anything for you.”

For a moment, Harvey shifted through his mental folder of possibilities before he found one he liked.

“Yesterday you gave me the strong impression that you liked to have something in your mouth you can suck on. So, how about I give you your first lesson in how to suck me off? Would you like that, Mike?”

Mike’s face lit up like a Christmas tree and a faint blush crept over his face right down to his throat. Harvey could see that Mike’s dick also seemed to like the idea since he went from a semi into a full hard-on within seconds.

“Yes, Sir. I would like that very much.”

His sweet little sub was so eager and Harvey couldn’t help himself. He reached out and ruffled Mike’s hair. Then he stood up and went to the middle of the room.

“Come here and bring your pillow.”

As soon as Mike was kneeling in front of him, wrists placed at the small of his back like he had been instructed previously, Harvey shifted into his Dom-pose, back straight, chin up and shoulders back, suddenly radiating an aura of power.

“Eyes up here, Mike.”

When the blue eyes with the huge pupils met his, he continued to set the rules.

“This is for me, Mike, for my pleasure only. You are not allowed to touch yourself or pleasure yourself in any other way while you suck me. And I haven’t decided yet if I will allow you to come today. I, on the other hand, have every intention of coming since you are a little ahead of me in that department after last night.”

Mike nodded but Harvey thought that he could detect a flicker of disappointment in Mike’s gaze. One would have thought that after last night’s punishment he wouldn’t want to come for the whole next week, but obviously that wasn’t the case. Well, his puppy had to learn some self-restraint sooner or later.

“I will tell you exactly what to do until I’m satisfied that you won’t accidentally bite my dick off. Since you like being given instructions, that should suit you just fine. When I’m content that you’ve obtained the needed skills, you will get my permission to get creative. Do you understand?”
“Yes, Sir. Can I ask a question, Sir?”

Harvey nodded his permission.

“Will I be able to safe word? I mean, since I would have my mouth full and all?”

Harvey was actually a little proud that Mike had come up with that question. Most new subs would’ve missed this problem.

“I will not hold your head and fuck your mouth forcefully. Maybe at a later time, when you’ve mastered the necessary skills, but definitely not today. You will be able to pull your mouth off at all times if you need or want to. But for future reference, another way of safewording while having your mouth otherwise occupied is to pinch my thigh or any other appropriate body part of me you can reach at that time. Now, I know that you are concerned about breathing issues. That is why I’m going to instruct you every step of the way. You might be struggling a little at first or even need to gag, but that happens to the best of us. As with everything, this needs practice and I don’t expect you to be perfect. So, are you ready?”

During the speech Mike had started to look less concerned and more like he couldn’t wait to finally get his lips around Harvey’s cock.

“Yes, Sir.”

“Color?”

“Green, Sir.”

“Good boy!”

**********

The prospect of getting Harvey’s cock into his mouth was enough for Mike to get him hard in an instant, something he hadn’t thought possible after last night. But his dick seemed to have a short memory. Lucky him. Especially since Harvey had basically told him that he most likely wouldn’t be allowed to do something about it. Well, at least he would be able to taste Harvey and feel him in his mouth. Mike had always liked to use his mouth and his girlfriends had praised his skills in that area. He liked to taste his partners and give them pleasure in every imaginable way and oral sex was a great way to do that.

Now Harvey stood in front of him, back in his Dom-mode and Mike started to shiver in anticipation.

His eyes were firmly fixed on his Dom’s gaze but when Harvey started to unzip his fly, his eyes dropped down to Harvey’s crotch right in front of him. Harvey’s fingers opened the button of his slacks and in one movement he pushed his pants and boxer-briefs down to mid-thigh.

The already half-hard dick of his Dom bounced a little and twitched lightly when it was freed and Mike gazed at it mesmerized. He could see that the smooth cockhead of the circumcised cock was a few nuances lighter in shade than the shaft. The cock was only a little longer than his own but much thicker and had a slight curve to the right. A thick vein was visible, running along its underside.

Harvey had trimmed his dark pubic hair neatly and shortened it until it was only a few millimeters
long. Mike wondered whether the hair would feel scratchy or soft but he wasn’t allowed to touch. Harvey’s balls were as pretty as his cock, if one could call balls pretty. The sack was hairless and the skin firm, not hanging too low and the balls inside were seated symmetrically.

Mike could smell the musky aroma of Harvey’s growing arousal and his mouth began to water like he was a dog and someone had just rang a bell.

Harvey’s fingers briefly petted his head before his face was cupped and his gaze forced upwards to meet his Dom’s eyes.

“I want you to place your hands on my hips to steady yourself. For now you can look at my cock so you can see what you’re doing. Now, open your mouth and stick your tongue out.”

Mike obliged immediately and Harvey shuffled a little closer to him. The Dom’s right hand gripped the cock at its base and the smooth head was rubbed over his tongue.

“I want you to lick it. Just the head and make your tongue soft and broad. Ah… yes, that’s it. Just like that.”

Harvey tasted mostly of clean skin and a little salty as well, since his morning shower hadn’t been that long ago. Mike wondered how Harvey would taste after a day’s work when his natural flavor could have developed itself.

“Now, stiffen the tip of your tongue and tease the slit. You liked that very much when I did it to you last night so you know how good that feels. Yes, exactly like this. You are my good boy. Ahhhh! Very good.”

Mike could taste the first drop of pre-come on the tip of his tongue as he pushed it playfully against the slit in the smooth and now spit-slick cockhead. The taste, salty and bitter but with a hint of sweetness as well, was as arousing as he remembered it from yesterday and his own cock began to twitch with want between his slightly spread thighs. For a brief second he wondered when he would start to drip. He knew from past experience that after this exercise was over there would be most likely a wet puddle on Harvey’s floor from his own leaking dick. But then, Harvey had said that he liked how wet Mike got, so there was no need to be embarrassed about that.

The soft touch of fingers in his hair brought Mike back to his task. “Now I want you to trail your tongue around the seam of the head but make it soft and broad for now. Yes, very good Mike. You really are a natural. Hmmm.”

The pleased sigh and Harvey’s hand on his head, not holding him, just providing another connection, felt great and Mike licked his way around the cockhead, first clockwise, then counterclockwise. Every now and then he had to pull off a little to swallow but Harvey let him pick his own pace and never tried to hold him in place or force him in any other way.

“Now open your mouth but guard your teeth. I want you to take the head into your mouth and softly suck on it, like you sucked my thumb yesterday. Your tongue is to stay in place on the underside of the head for now. You know that there is a sensitive spot.”

Mike closed his lips firmly around the smooth flesh and started to suck while he breathed through his nose.

The fingers in his hair started to give him a light scratch as reward and at the same time Harvey’s own breathing picked up noticeably.

“Yes, that’s it. That’s… very good. Now try to swirl your tongue around the head while you keep up
the suction. Yesssss… just like that. Hmmmm. Do that for a few minutes. Try to swallow around my cock but remember your teeth.”

Mike glanced up to Harvey’s face and could see, that his Dom’s head had fallen back slightly, eyes closed. Before he would get caught, he looked back down but the sight of how much Harvey enjoyed his ministrations made Mike smile a little which was no mean feat since his lips were already very stretched. Harvey was really a mouthful even if it was just the cockhead right now. Mike had no idea how the rest of Harvey should fit into his mouth, but he trusted his Dom enough that he wasn’t concerned.

Mike needed to concentrate on what he was doing and coordinating his tongue and his lips, especially when he needed to swallow the quickly accumulating saliva down, was no easy task but somehow he managed although a little saliva found its way beyond his lips and dribbled down his chin. He wasn’t sure if he had permission to take his hand off Harvey’s thigh to wipe it away so he let it be.

“That was very good, Mike. That felt incredible.” Mike could feel his face blush at this praise. He loved it when Harvey told him how good he was and that he was beautiful and his good boy. He wondered briefly where that need for praise and encouragement came from, but then he shrugged this thought off. It was what it was and since Harvey seemed to enjoy praising him and telling him nice things, there was no problem at all.

“I want you to place your tongue once again on the underside of the head and stop sucking. Now, try to relax your jaw.” Harvey’s fingers touched him softly at the right cheek, thumb caressing the taut skin around his stretched lips and then he wiped the saliva away that had dribbled down his chin.

“Take a deep breath trough your nose and relax a little further. Yes, that’s it. I will start to fuck your mouth a little, Mike. Don’t worry, I will push in only a few inches and not the whole way down. You’re far away from being able to deep-throat yet, but that’s okay.” Harvey caressed his cheek with slow circles of his fingertips for a moment to give him time to relax further before he continued with the instructions. “You don't need to do anything right now. Just stay relaxed and breathe through your nose. When you need to swallow, tap my leg once. You can trust me, Mike. I will be very careful.”

Mike looked up at Harvey and blinked once to show him that he understood. Harvey chuckled.

“Ohay. Blinking once for yes and twice for no. Very good Mike. So, you ready?”

Mike blinked again.

“For now, continue to look up at me. I want to see how you feel.”

Mike took a deep breath and Harvey shifted his hip forward only an inch. Mike could feel the smooth shaft being pushed into his mouth, sliding in between his moist lips but before it could get uncomfortable, Harvey pulled out again until only the head was in his mouth. Then he repeated the motion slowly. Every push inside was carefully and slowly executed and Mike could see that Harvey’s whole focus was on his face, ready to pull out at the first sign that Mike might have a problem. When his saliva threatened to choke him, he tapped on Harvey’s leg. Harvey pushed his cock in and then stilled his movements.

“Try to swallow around my cock. I’m not yet in your throat but nevertheless I know this feels weird. Relax your jaw and breathe through your nose. Very good, Mike. Now, press your tongue firmly against the underside of my cock and swallow.”
Mike tried a couple of times put couldn’t make his muscles work around the hot flesh in his mouth. After a few seconds and several futile attempts he began to panic. With one swift movement Harvey pulled out and Mike swallowed down the accumulated moisture in his mouth, throat working hard, and breathing noisily through his nose.

“Are you okay, Mike?” Harvey asked concerned. Mike’s issues regarding his fear of choking seemed to be quite serious if the freaked look in his eyes could be taken as an indicator.

Mike looked up to Harvey, a little panicked. “Yes, Sir. Sorry. I tried but I couldn’t do it. I don’t know why. It was like I had forgotten how to swallow. I’m so sorry, Sir.”

“Mike, there is no need to be sorry. This is new for you and given your issues it is no wonder that this is a little scary. But we’ll figure it out together.”

Mike nodded and Harvey had an idea. He let go of his cock and offered Mike his thumb.

“When you sucked at my thumb yesterday you had no problem swallowing around it although it was quite deep in your mouth.”

Mike opened his mouth invitingly, immediately picking up on what Harvey was suggesting.

When the thumb was deep inside his mouth he sucked a little until his mouth was full of saliva. Then he looked up at Harvey.

“Ready?”

Blink.

“I want you to take your hand and put it on your throat, very lightly. Then swallow. Try to remember how it feels and which muscles you need to work.”

Blink.

Mike’s right hand found its way to his throat and when he swallowed around Harvey’s thumb he could feel the muscles constrict and relax again. He had no problem so he sucked a little longer to repeat the exercise for good measure. This time he focused on the placement of his tongue. When he once again encountered no problem, he pulled his mouth off.

“Do you want to try again, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir. I think I can do it now.”

“All right. But don’t try to force it. I don’t want you to panic again.”

“Yes Sir.” Mike opened his mouth again and Harvey took himself in hand and pushed slowly in. When he was inside Mike’s hot wet mouth about one third of his length he stopped.

“You could try to hum a little. It relaxes your throat,” he advised Mike.

Mike tried it and the vibration the vocal chords created had the added bonus that they felt really good around Harvey’s dick. The Dom closed his eyes briefly to enjoy the sensation before he came back to the matter at hand.

“Don’t wait until your mouth is completely full. Try it now. I can feel how much spit is already in your mouth.”
Mike, his hand still at his throat, closed his eyes in concentration, summoning up the memory from before. Then he pressed his tongue firmly against the underside of Harvey’s shaft and willed his throat-muscles to obey, which after only a moment, they did.

“Very good, Puppy.” Harvey pulled out but Mike made a protesting noise and Harvey stopped, cockhead hovering between Mike’s stretched lips.

“Again?”

Blink.

“Okay.” Harvey gave in. His sub seemed to have an ambitious streak but since facing his fears and working through them was a good thing in his opinion he let Mike have his way for now. But of course he had noticed the pushiness. He would simply address the issue later.

The Dom pushed forward once again before he retreated, fucking into Mike’s mouth slowly and in even thrusts, enjoying the sensation of the smooth tongue and the spit-slick lips gliding around his length. When Mike tapped his leg, he stilled and with great effort, Mike swallowed around him once more.

“Very good, Mike. I knew you would get the hang of it soon. Do you want to continue?”

Blink.

Harvey slowly continued to fuck into Mike’s hot wet mouth, increasing the depth of the thrusts slowly, stilling his movements every time Mike tapped his leg, and when he was halfway in he could feel the roof of Mike’s mouth brush against his head. Mike’s hands tightened suddenly on his thighs and the kid started to push him off, once again panic showing in his eyes. Harvey obliged, pulled out all the way and looked down at Mike, fisting his slick cock with lazy strokes to keep up the stimulation.

The sub was panting heavily and Harvey could see that he was fighting against his gag-reflex. His left hand continued to pet Mike’s head to calm him down a little.

“I think that is enough for now. We don’t want to overdo it.”

After a few moments, Mike could breathe normally again. “It felt weird, Sir and I almost gagged,” Mike tried to explain what had happened.

“That’s okay Mike, I know that I’m a mouthful. We can try it again next time. For today you did very well. I’m quite impressed with your progress.”

Harvey caressed his cheek with his left hand while his right hand continued to jerk himself with slow movements.

“Do you think that you can make me come with what you’ve learned today?”

Mike broke out into an eager grin. “Yes, Sir. I think a can do that.”

“All right. Here are your rules. You can touch my cock and my balls with your hands as well as with your mouth. You’re not allowed to touch my hole or my crack, in fact anything behind my balls is out of bounds. And you will not try to take me deeper than halfway down. I don’t want you to gag or accidentally throw up. I know that you’re ambitious but that would kill the mood. Understood?”

“Yes, Sir.” Mike couldn’t hide his enthusiasm.
“If you can get me off in the next 15 minutes I will allow you to make yourself come afterwards.”

Now Mike’s happy face reminded Harvey of a kid in a candy store. “Thank you, Sir.”

“Color?”

“Green, Sir.”

That were the last words Mike would say in the foreseeable future. Of course he would try everything to make Harvey come in time, no incentive needed, although being allowed to come was a nice reward as well. Harvey might be the king of self-control but when Mike really set his sights on something he usually was able to succeed. And he really wanted to make Harvey lose his shit.

Harvey’s cock felt warm and heavy in his hand and Mike tried to remember which moves worked best on himself.

He bent down a little and licked Harvey’s balls before he started to suckle softly at them, copying Harvey’s actions from the last night. When he heard the first soft moans from above, he licked his way across the underside of the shaft, trailing the prominent vein with the tip of his tongue and then licked across the smooth head before he took it into his mouth and started to suckle softly while he pressed the tip of his tongue against the slit. He could taste the drops of pre-come spilling out of it in a slow stream now.

When he glanced up, Harvey had tipped his head back, eyes firmly closed to better appreciate Mike’s efforts while his mouth was slightly open. The Dom’s right hand lay lightly on Mike’s head while his left was hanging loosely at his side, fingers slightly curled but relaxed.

Mike shifted his attentions back to the cock in front of him and teased it relentlessly with his tongue while his hand started to fondle Harvey’s balls. This seemed to push one of his Dom’s buttons since the breathing suddenly got much louder and another lengthy moan sounded above him.

During the next minutes Mike tried everything Harvey had shown him while Harvey held absolutely still, even when Mike tried to swallow him down. Mike could reach again about halfway down until the cockhead brushed against the back of his mouth and he had to pull off before he would start to gag.

How did all the porn-stars do it? There must be a trick to it. Maybe he should watch a little porn to figure it out. But watching porn without being allowed to rub one out would be sort of pointless. His cock might appreciate some pain, but he was sure that blue balls weren’t at the top of his kink-list.

When he noticed that his mind lost focus on the task at hand (mouth) he tried to get himself back on track.

While he was doing his best to make Harvey come, Harvey’s moans got a little louder, his breathing more labored and at one point his left hand balled into a fist, all the while a steady trickle of pre-come was leaking out of the slit much to Mike’s delight.

But other than that, he showed no inclination that he would be coming within the set timeframe. With a little frustrated huff Mike increased his efforts, slurping noisily as he worked his tongue around Harvey’s big cock, alternating between suction and stimulation with his tongue while his hands worked the shaft and balls, but no dice.

“Your time is up, Puppy!” Harvey sounded smug if a little strained and out of breath.

Mike let the cock pop out of his mouth, looking up shamefacedly at his Dom barely able to hold
back the signs of his disappointment. He had tried so hard to make Harvey lose his precious self-control but he just hadn’t been good enough.

“I’m so sorry Sir that I failed you,” he whispered, his face red with embarrassment.

Harvey gave him a self-satisfied grin. “You didn’t fail, Mike. I could’ve come anytime during the last 5 minutes if I had wanted to. You did really well.” When he saw Mike’s indignant look at that statement, he smiled even more, the laughter lines around his eyes increasing. “Told you Puppy. It’s all about self-control.”

Mike huffed a little but didn’t dare speak his mind. All of a sudden the embarrassment was gone and he felt angry. Angry at himself for failing but even angrier at Harvey for making him fail. The words that lay on the tip of his tongue would assuredly plunge him once more into deep shit with his Dom, so he swallowed them down with difficulty. But obviously Harvey could see his thoughts on his face as clearly as if he had spoken them.

“Someone is a sore loser.” Harvey’s voice had lost the amused undertone and sounded strangely devoid of emotion.

His face was cupped by strong hands, forcing him to look up at Harvey whose expression had now become very stern.

“Whether you like to admit it or not Mike, but you want me to be in control. You want and you need me to put you in your place. So suck it up and now suck me off. And I want you to swallow every last drop of my come. Is that understood, Michael?” Maybe his Dom-voice would snap the kid out of it. And Mike liked his come so being ordered to waste not a drop and swallow it all should be a consolation prize.

“Yes, Sir.”

“Color?”

“Green…Sir.”

The crease between Harvey’s brows became more pronounced when the Dom noticed the slight hesitation before Mike added the Sir and Mike knew that he shouldn’t push Harvey any more although right now, he really wanted to.

“Then open your mouth and get to it,” his Dom instructed him harshly and Mike didn’t dare to disobey. He leaned forward a little and guided Harvey’s cock back between his lips, swallowing down his anger along with Harvey’s cock.

Harvey hadn’t bragged. After only a minute of sucking and licking, Harvey’s breath became louder and his hips began to shift a little, unable to remain still.

“Ahhh, now Mike,” he moaned and then Mike’s mouth was filled with Harvey’s come, the first spurt splattering deep into his throat, making him nearly gag, before the force of the streaming sperm ceased a little. Mike sucked and swallowed as much as he could, but he could feel that some of it dribbled out of the corner of his mouth. Harvey had noticed to and used his thumb to collect it from Mike’s chin. When Harvey’s orgasm had ebbed he pulled out and popped his thumb into Mike’s mouth so he could suck up the remaining come so that not a drop would be wasted.

Although Harvey was the one who had climaxed just now he seemed to recuperate sooner than Mike, who was still a little dazed after having performed his first blowjob ever. Harvey pulled up his pants, zipped up and went back to the couch where he sat himself down, leaving Mike behind on his
knees in the middle of the room.

“Mike, come here!” He pointed at the spot at his feet.

Mike stood up shakily and went obediently to Harvey, dropping his pillow at the indicated place and dropping to his knees once more.

“You can sit back down on your heels, Mike.”

Harvey’s hand guided his head towards his thigh and at first Mike relaxed against it. Harvey’s fingers began to rub through his hair and massaged his scalp and Mike closed his eyes for a moment and reveled in this feeling of being petted and in the memory of Harvey shooting his come into his mouth. Exhaustion began to claim him and his eyelids started to drop but his other emotions soon canceled all this nice feeling out and the restlessness and frustration was back. He couldn’t get rid of the slowly growing tension in his shoulders and neck, like his mind fought against the relaxation Harvey’s petting would bring him. And Harvey picked up on that.

“How do you feel, Mike?” Harvey sounded a little concerned, like he could feel that something was up.

Mike hesitated. He was still angry and disappointed and although he had made Harvey come he’d gained no real satisfaction from that since it had been on Harvey’s terms and not on his own. So he only shrugged, not wanting to put his feelings into words.

“Don’t you shrug at me, boy. I asked you a question and I expect an honest answer.” Harvey wouldn’t let it slide, wouldn’t give him a way out.

“What do you think how I should feel? Frustrated of course.” Harvey had demanded total honesty so that’s what he would get.

“And why is that Mike.” Harvey’s voice was neutral and calm, the opposite of how Mike’s voice had sounded, but some warning bells started to ring loudly in Mike’s subconscious. Sadly, he choose to ignore his instincts.

“I did my best, really I did. But you set me an impossible task, knowing that I couldn’t make you come if you didn’t want to, and that seems a little unfair to me. Like you had cheated. Like you wanted to see me fail so you could gloat and revel in your superiority.”

Harvey sighed indignantly. “Mike, I can understand that you’re a little frustrated right now, but that orgasm you seem to think I have cheated you out of was never yours to begin with. It is my decision if you get to come or not. You have agreed to that and now you need to learn to accept it as well, or the next few weeks will be hell for you. As long as you think I owe you your orgasms or that they are rightfully yours, you haven’t submitted properly. And I can’t have that. So, for today and tomorrow you are not allowed to touch yourself in a pleasurable way or to make yourself come in any other way. And you’re not allowed to beg me for permission either or to try to initiate anything like that. Do you understand that, Mike?”

“Yes. I understand.” He couldn’t keep the sulky undertone out of his voice as he forced the words out through clenched teeth. And as sure as hell, Harvey wouldn’t let it slide. Not this time.

“Michael, snap out of it or I will put you over my knee and spank it out of you. And don’t think that it will feel as good as it felt yesterday.”

The formerly stroking fingers in his hair took a tight grip at his short strands and forced his head back, making him look up at Harvey’s face. When he couldn’t hide the resentment and anger he felt,
Harvey seemed to have enough.

“All right, that’s it.” Harvey stood up and grabbed Mike’s wrist, dragging him towards a corner of the large living room. Unfortunately it was a corner without glass-walls.

The pillow was thrown down with barely concealed anger and then a strong hand on his shoulder pushed him down.

“Down! On your knees. Back in upright position. Hands behind your head, elbows out. Stay! If you want to behave like a sulky child, I will treat you like a child. And don’t you dare move. Not a muscle and don’t say a word. That spanking isn’t off the table and you don’t want to accumulate any more strikes than you’re already getting.”

Mike faced the wall and assumed the position. He could feel Harvey still standing behind him, clearly angry but Mike was so angry himself and his cock still painfully hard. It had yet to catch up with what was happening.

Then Harvey’s footsteps retreated and Mike was left alone with only a blank wall to stare at.

Shit! How had he gone from performing his first blowjob to his first corner-time in just under 5 minutes?

Chapter End Notes

Thank you for reading.

As always, all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own. This story isn’t beta-read and I don’t own the characters of Suits. All references and quotes should be seen as an homage to the show and no copyright infringement is intended.

I would very much like to read your comments and Kudos is always appreciated.
Wrestling for control

Chapter Summary

Mike has maneuvered himself into a corner and Harvey is more than willing to show him a way out of it. But there is a prize Mike has to pay.

Chapter Notes

This chapter doesn’t contain porn (the poor guys needed some rest) but Mike has another punishment coming.

See the end of the chapter for more notes

Mike was fuming inside. In fact, he was spitting mad at Harvey.

This was so unfair. He couldn’t help that he felt betrayed and played. Why had Harvey dangled the orgasms, his own and the Dom’s, in front of his nose when he never had planned to let him succeed? Why set him up to do an impossible task, knowing from the get go, that Mike had a snowballs chance in hell of actually achieving his goal?

Mike had been fine with the blowjob being just for Harvey and not being allowed to touch himself, not allowed to come. Really. It had been okay, well… sort of. But when his Dom had offered him the 15-minute deal only to see Mike fail, and that smug smile on his handsome, composed face when he told him that it was all about self-control… arghh!

He was so furious at Harvey right now. How could he do that to him? He must know that it would hurt him. And telling him that he behaved like a child and making him kneel in the corner. He was a grown man, damn it! If he wouldn’t be kneeling he would’ve stomped his foot in frustration or thrown something across the room or screamed his rage at Harvey.

Mike blinked when his mind waved a red flag at him and a thought started to niggle at the edge of all that rage.

Stomping and screaming and throwing stuff would be… kinda childish.

Yeah, shit!

Mike slowly exhaled, trying to break the cycle of thoughts and emotions that threatened to get out of control. Instead, he applied a technique his therapist had shown him, when he had been made to go into therapy after his parents had died and his anger-issues had seriously gotten out of hand. He tried to focus on his breathing, letting the air in and out in a steady stream, picturing how it filled his lungs.

When he finally got a little calmer, he focused on how his knees felt (sore), the fabric of the pillow against his skin (soft), the skin of his knuckles under his fingertips (a little rough, he should moisturize more like Jenny had told him so often). After a while the spinning in his head slowed down. Well, not the thoughts but the accompanying emotions that had threatened to overwhelm him
got a little less overwhelming.

This technique was something his therapist had taught him and later, when he’d studied psych at Columbia he’d learned the science behind all that.

The negative emotions were generated in one part of the brain, the limbic system with the amygdala. Sometimes, when everything seemed to be spinning out of control, it helped to stimulate another part of your brain, the pre-frontal cortex, to calm the amygdala down and the emotions, especially fear and rage, would become more manageable.

Mike had learned during therapy that focusing on sensations on his skin helped. Ice-cubes were pretty helpful but not always available when needed. Other stimuli to his senses, like strong smells or tastes could help to calm him down a little as well. For a while back then his Grammy had bought him extra sour bubblegum which he was supposed to put in his mouth every time he felt like he might be overwhelmed by his rage. It had actually managed to break the cycle of his spinning emotions enough to use another technique. Dissecting emotions, really thinking about why he felt them and what had caused them, was another way to override the amygdala and calm it down. So that was what he did next.

Okay, think Mike. What had just happened? Focus just on the facts for now.

He had asked Harvey if he could stay a little longer. Harvey had agreed and offered him to teach him how to suck him off. Mike had liked that very much and Harvey had set as a rule that Mike wasn’t allowed to touch himself. And he had stated that it wasn’t decided yet if Mike was allowed to come today. Mike had agreed and at that time it really had been fine. After all, he had consented to the whole orgasm delay / denial thing and he could see the point that Harvey wanted to use this in his training. And, to tell the truth, it was hot as hell that Harvey had that kind of control over him. So, why had he flipped suddenly?

Mike went on replaying the scene in his mind. Harvey had instructed him how to blow him and that had been really hot. The instructions as much as the feeling and taste of Harvey’s cock in his mouth.

And the fact that he had been kneeling and naked while Harvey had been almost completely clothed and towering over him in the middle of the open room. The power Harvey had displayed and his own vulnerability.

But he had never felt vulnerable or alone even so he probably should have, but instead he had felt always cared for and safe. He needn’t to be strong or powerful because Harvey was that for both of them. He could be weak as a kitten and Harvey would always make sure that he was safe.

And the fact that, if only in the first part of the lesson, his sole task had been to do as he was told, no decision making necessary, that had been also very nice and peaceful, like if he only followed Harvey’s instructions, he couldn’t go wrong, couldn’t fail.

And then, when he hadn’t been able to swallow around Harvey’s thick cock in his mouth. The way Harvey had dealt with that situation. How he had immediately picked up on Mike’s trouble and how he had come up with a solution all the while soothing him and telling him that everything was alright and he wasn’t a failure. That had felt so great. He could really rely on Harvey to take care of him, trust him to pick up on when he was in trouble and what he was feeling.

A warm sensation blossomed in his chest when he thought back to his own emotions when Harvey had taught him how to swallow around him, his patience seemingly endless.

And suddenly it dawned on Mike that he had been pushing his Dom when he had insisted that they
try it over and over again. Which he wasn’t allowed. The rule was that he would take what Harvey would give him when he gave it to him. No begging or pushing allowed. And yet, Harvey had indulged him, had let himself be pushed by Mike. And he hadn’t even scolded him for that. Surely Harvey must have noticed at the time, even when Mike himself hadn’t. He had been so intent on getting it right, so focused on the task in front of him, that he had lost sight of the bigger picture.

Maybe setting Mike up had been the punishment for his earlier transgression. Mouthy and pushy Harvey had called him. And he was right, of course he was. Mike was mouthy and pushy and needy.

Mike went on in his reminiscence of the blowjob. Harvey had given him card Blanche, well except for his ass, and dangled the carrot (orgasm) in front of his nose as an incentive so Mike would give it his best shot. But he would’ve done that anyway, orgasm or no orgasm. And suddenly, everything had changed.

When Mike thought back at that moment, he suddenly picked up on how his own contentment with the situation had shifted. His ambitious streak, buried under a lot of bad decisions, tons of low self-esteem and several years of weed-consummation had suddenly flared up and lit a hungry fire deep inside of him and suddenly everything had been about winning.

He had wanted to show Harvey that he could do it. That he had learned and could remember everything his Dom had taught him. He so desperately had wanted to be a good sub for Harvey, to show him that he was worthy of his attention and his kindness and maybe even his… no, better not go there.

And when he couldn’t get Harvey off within the set timeframe, he hadn’t been disappointed that he wouldn’t be allowed to come. He had been mad at himself for not being able to make Harvey feel good. For being a failure once again. For not being good enough for his beautiful, awe-inspiring Dom. He had felt so bad about that and Harvey, instead of comforting him, had mocked him.

But had he really? Mocked him? Or had it just felt that way in that moment because he had felt so bad about himself? Mike tried to remember Harvey’s words as well as the tone of voice.

“You didn’t fail, Mike. I could’ve come anytime during the last 5 minutes if I had wanted to. You did really well.”

Harvey hadn’t mocked him. And he had told him that he had done well and didn’t fail. But Mike had only focused on the negative, on not having been able to push Harvey over the edge.

“Whether you like to admit it or not Mike, but you want me to be in control. You want and you need me to put you in your place.”

And Harvey had stayed in control when he hadn’t allowed Mike to make him come within the 15 minutes. It had been a display of his control and power. It had been meant to show Mike that his Dom was the one who called the shots. And Mike needed that. Needed to know that Harvey was able to control Mike and himself at all times.

So basically, what had gotten him so mad was, that Harvey had stayed in control and Mike hadn’t been able to take it away from him. But wasn’t that what submitting was all about? Giving up control and handing it over to your Dom?

Mike groaned inwardly. It had been a lesson and he had been too stupid to understand it. Instead of accepting that Harvey truly held all the power and he himself could truly let go and just trust that his Dom would take care of everything, he had taken it as a challenge, had gotten ambitious and had
gotten so riled up that he had accused his Dom of cheating and cruelty.

And he had refused to call him Sir. He had wanted to punish Harvey when he’d deliberately left out the honorific title. He wanted Harvey to hurt the same way he himself had hurt. Quid pro quo. An eye for an eye. Or that’s what he’d thought at the moment.

*Stupid, stupid, stupid! Pushy, needy stupid Mike. No wonder everyone leaves you. You’re a worthless piece of shit and Harvey is better off without you.*

Mike swallowed hard when the negative inner voices pushed all rational thoughts away, the amygdala once more firmly in charge of his brain, and this time with a vengeance.

And now Harvey was mad at him. Really and truly mad. He had told him that he was like a child and put him in this corner. He wasn’t even allowed to tell Harvey that he was sorry. That he understood now.

Shit! How could he make amends? What could he do to make Harvey like him again? What if Harvey had enough of him after this display of all his bad habits? The thought made Mike cringe inwardly.

But he couldn’t do anything right now. If he spoke, even to tell Harvey that he was so sorry, he would break another rule. No, he had to stay here, stay silent and wait for Harvey. He was powerless, helpless to remedy the situation. He had to accept that he had no control whatsoever about this situation and it felt awful. Now he really felt like a child. Naked and vulnerable and not in control and the world all of a sudden a scary, cold and lonely place. And his Dom was not nearby to catch him from falling down into that bottomless pit of self-loathing and loneliness.

Mike started to tremble, not from the exhaustion of his knees and thighs, but from the onslaught of all the negative emotions he couldn’t keep at bay anymore. He tried to breathe only through his nose to calm himself down like he had done before but his eyes started tearing up and his nose began to produce snot and he couldn’t get enough oxygen in. So he opened his mouth and took large gulps of air in, while his tears silently started to flow over his cheeks and dripped from his chin down onto his heaving chest. He felt so lonely and cold right now.

Suddenly a strong arm wound itself around his chest and he was pulled back against a firm warm body.

“Shhhhh! I’ve got you. Everything is all right. Just let go.”

He leaned back, no longer able to support himself and let his head drop against his Dom’s shoulder. Harvey, who had knelt behind him, shifted back and sat down, pulling Mike between his spread legs so that he could sit down between the V-shape they made, bare ass on the cold floor.

He couldn’t hold back the tears, couldn’t make them stop and Harvey seemed to understand that he needed to get them out of his system. He pulled Mike around, so that he could bury his face in the crook of Harvey’s neck and just held him tight, comforting him with his warmth and touch and smell.

The crying went on for a long time but Harvey never tried to stop him, never told him to pull himself together, and never scolded him for wetting his nice shirt with tears and snot. He just held him in his arms and rocked him a little like one would rock a child, and waited patiently until Mike had cried himself out.

A lot of pent-up emotion needed to be processed and it hurt like a bitch. Under normal circumstances
Mike would’ve smoked some weed to numb himself so having to deal with an avalanche of feelings like this was something he wasn’t used to anymore.

“Let go Mike, let it all go. I’m here and everything will be fine. Just let it all out.” Harvey’s voice was like a lifeline Mike could cling to and suddenly it burst out of him.

“I’m so sorry, Harvey. Please forgive me. Please, Sir. Please!” His voice was raw from all the crying and his throat hurt. And underneath it all he was aware how he must look. All red and blotchy and with snot coming out of his nose.

“It’s all right, Mike. Just calm down. Everything is gonna be all right.” A handkerchief appeared miraculously almost like Harvey had read his thoughts and Mike blew his nose noisily.

“Please say you forgive me, Sir. Please!” Mike couldn’t stop begging now that he was finally allowed to speak.

“Yes, Mike. I forgive you. But you need to calm down now. You’re trembling.”

“I’m cold.” He had meant it metaphorically but as soon as he’d muttered the words Mike became aware that he really felt like he was freezing.

Harvey patted his back lightly, noticing the goosebumps on Mike’s skin. “Okay Puppy, time to get up. The floor is getting a tad uncomfortable.” But Mike held onto him, not willing to lose the connection between them.

Harvey waited a moment and brushed his lips soothingly over Mike’s temple. “Mike, let go. We need to get you off the floor. Your skin is very cold and I need to get you warmed up.”

Mike looked up at Harvey and was rewarded with an encouraging little smile. He willed his fingers to let go of Harvey’s shirt and together they slowly stood up. Harvey guided him toward the couch and when Mike wanted to drop to his knees in front of it Harvey stopped him.

“Sit down on the couch, Mike.” After Mike had taken a seat he turned around and got the bathrobe that was still lying on the chair at the breakfast bar.

“Put the robe on, Mike. You’ve got goosebumps all over.”

Mike obeyed and then pushed his hands between his closed thighs, shoulders slightly hunched over, looking down at the floor, still so ashamed about his behavior and his tears and everything really that he couldn’t bear to look up at Harvey. He could sense a little bit of snot dribbling out of his nose and sniffled noisily not daring to wipe his nose on the sleeve of Harvey’s robe. The handkerchief he had balled up in his fist was already sodden and of no use.

Another handkerchief appeared in his line of sight and he cleaned himself up as best as he could, balling the drenched thing up into another ball when he was finished and shoving both into the pocket of the robe.

Harvey sat down beside him and then guided Mike down, so that he was laying on his back, his head resting in Harvey’s lap, looking up at his Dom’s face while his hair was petted by Harvey’s strong fingers in sure and even strokes.

Harvey made sure that the fluffy robe covered Mike up completely and then swiped his thumb over his cheekbone, wiping the last remnants of his tears away.

“Can you tell me what got you so riled up? Why you behaved so willfully?” Harvey’s voice sounded
very soft and concerned and not reproachful at all.

Nevertheless, new tears of shame threatened to spill out of Mike’s eyes and he had to swallow them down with difficulty.

“Mike, I want to understand what just happened and for that I need your help. I can read you good enough to get that you’d been angry with me, but frankly, I’ve no idea what triggered that.”

The look in Harvey’s eyes wasn’t one of impatience, or pity or even anger. No, Harvey looked at him with open curiosity and a little concern but under it all Mike could see a deep fondness, and that gave him hope. Maybe Harvey wouldn’t give up on him yet.

“I’m sorry, Sir.” His voice was almost a whisper, rough after the crying.

“Yes, Mike. I can see that. But I need to understand what pissed you off in the first place. So please explain. I want to know what makes you tick so we can avoid a meltdown like this in the future.”

“I was stupid and didn’t understand why you were doing it. But now I do.”

“Okay Mike. But I need a little more details. What was going on in that head of yours? And you’re not stupid Mike. You just have a very unique way of seeing things.”

Mike snorted a little. If ever there was a backhanded compliment, this had to be it.

“It wasn’t about not being allowed to come. Not really anyway. It’s about having failed you, Sir.”

Harvey’s brown eyes looked confused down at him. “Mike, you haven’t failed me. And I never said that you did. In fact, you did incredibly well for your first time. I told you that you’re a natural at this. And nobody is perfect the first time around anyway. But you really made me feel so good and I’m very proud of you.”

“But I couldn’t make you come in time, Sir. I couldn’t make you lose control.”

Harvey’s face took on a pensive expression.

“Mike, do you know why I haven’t allowed myself to come within the time limit, although I have to admit that you gave me quite a challenge?”

“Yes, Sir. I think I get that now. But I didn’t back then. Then, it felt like you had set me up to fail and that hurt so much. Made me feel so small and worthless, when all I wanted was to show you that I could do it, that I could be your good sub and make it so good for you that you couldn’t control yourself anymore. And you took that away from me and it felt like you rubbed my nose in it to humble me.”

The look in Harvey’s eyes became a little stern, like something suddenly had become clear to him and he didn’t particularly like it.

“Mike, have your ever read or heard the expression *topping from the bottom*?”

The sub shifted through his mental library until he found it. “It means that the submissive party in a Dom / sub relationship tries to control a situation or a scene or even the whole relationship through means of manipulation, persuasion, seduction or provocation.” Mike’s eyes grew wide when realization hit him. “Oh…!”

“Yes, Mike, oh!”
“Please, Sir. I didn’t mean to. I didn’t even know until now that I had been trying.”

“But you wanted me to lose control, didn’t you Mike? That’s why you acted out when you couldn’t achieve it.”

“Yes, but… it’s not like this. I just wanted you to enjoy yourself.”

“No Mike, you wanted to be in control. Whether you actually were aware of that at the time doesn’t matter. Fact is that this is not submitting. And this can’t happen again, ever. I won’t allow it.”

Mike’s eyes had become very wide and Harvey could see all the different emotions in his face as he tried to come to grips with this revelation. After a few moments Harvey could feel Mike’s whole body becoming lax, like he was utterly defeated and he could see new tears well up under Mike’s now closed eyelids. Mike had turned his face away from Harvey but the Dom wouldn’t allow any avoidance. This matter needed to be dealt with now.

“Look at me, Michael.” His palm lay on Mike’s cheek and with a little pressure he forced Mike’s head around, so he would face him.

“What are you thinking right now, Michael?”

“That I’ve failed you even more than I thought. That I have tried to control you and that you have every right to be angry.” Mike swallowed down hard. “And that I would understand it if you’d sent me away now.” Mike looked like he’d given up, like every remnant of fight he might have left was now gone along with every hope of happiness and Harvey’s heart melted a little. This was submission in its purest, most raw form but it was not born out of trust and love and thus painful to watch.

Harvey bent down and placed a chaste kiss on his forehead. “Michael, I need you to get something in this genius brain of yours so you better listen up. I’m not going to send you away or leave you!”

“But…”

“No, Mike. No but. We started this roughly a week ago and I’m your first Dom. You’ve never done this before and although I’m sure that you know all the facts about BDSM, that doesn’t actually mean that you know what you’re doing. You’re a rookie and allowed to make mistakes. You’re even allowed to repeat your mistakes as long as I’m convinced that you didn’t do it on purpose. That’s why we have punishment, Michael. So you can learn from your mistakes. If you were perfect there would be no need for that. So stop thinking that I would cut you lose after every mistake. Trust me, Mike! I’m not going anywhere.”

During this little speech Mike’s eyes had lost a little of their forlorn and hopeless expression.

“I’m trying, Sir. I want to trust you so much, and most times I do. It’s just, every time something good happens to me it doesn’t last. I guess I’m just waiting for the other shoe to drop.”

“I won’t allow it to drop, Mike. Not this time.”

Mike smiled a little. “I believe you, Sir.”

“So, Mike, do you understand now why I didn’t allow myself to come when you blew me?”

“To show me that I couldn’t take over control? That you were in charge?”

“That is one reason but not the main one. I wanted to show you that you can depend on my self-
control. No matter if I’m inflicting pain on you for play, or if I’m punishing you or if we’re having rough hot sex, I will only lose control if I allow myself to lose control. I wanted to show you that, so you could feel safe with me. So you’d know that you could let yourself go because I will always be there and catch you, no matter what.”

“Yes Sir. I understand that now. I’m sorry I doubted your motives and thought you were cheating and wanted me to feel bad. And I’m sorry that I didn’t call you Sir.”

“You did that on purpose?” Harvey sighed when Mike nodded his head. “Well, I guess we’re bound to encounter a few bumps in the road along the way. But next time, before you get upset, try talk to me. You could use yellow to signal to me that something’s going on. Then we could talk without you earning a punishment.”

“Yes, Sir. I’ll try to remember that. And I’m sorry that I doubted you and tried to manipulate you.”

“I’m sorry too. I never wanted to make you feel bad. On the contrary.”

Suddenly, a huge yawn escaped Mike before he could cover his mouth and Harvey could see how exhausted Mike was from dealing with all his pent up emotions and all the drama.

“Now, close your eyes and try to take a nap. I can see that you’re exhausted from all this. I wake you in a little while.” His voice let no room for argument and for once, Mike seemed more than happy to obey his Dom without question.

Harvey reached out the get the blanket from the other side of the couch and spread it over Mike, making sure that his feet were tucked in. Then Harvey picked up the remote and turned on the TV, setting the speakers on low. His fingers then resumed the petting of Mike’s hair and within minutes, Mike fell asleep, his world once more safe and warm.

**********

“Mike, wake up.”

He could feel Harvey’s legs shift under his head and a hand touched his cheek. Slowly, he opened his eyes, blinking up at Harvey’s face.

“If you want to be with your Grammy at 3 pm you need to get up now.”

Mike yawned but remembered this time to cover his mouth with his hand. Then he smacked his lips, becoming aware that his mouth was very dry. He shifted into an upright position, shrugged the blanket off and then stood up to get himself something to drink. Remembering just in time, he looked down at the still sitting Harvey.

“Please, Sir. Can I have something to drink? I’m very thirsty.”

Harvey met his eyes, clearly liking what he saw in his sub’s demure expression.

“Yes. Of course Mike. Bottled water is in the fridge. You can help yourself. And be so good and fetch one bottle for me as well.”

Mike complied and they both drank thirstily. Then Harvey pointed to the pillow beside his feet and
Mike dropped down to his knees.

“You can sit back, Mike. But we need to take care of one more thing before you go home.”

Mike was curious, not knowing what Harvey meant.

“Although I know now that it was a misunderstanding which led you to behaving badly, I promised you a spanking for your sullen behavior. And you need to know that I make good on my promises. All my promises.”

Mike opened his mouth in protest but Harvey’s stern gaze made him think better of it and he pressed his lips firmly shut again.

Harvey nodded satisfied. “You probably think that the corner time was enough punishment but I beg to differ. The corner time was meant to give you time to cool off so you could think about your behavior. And it did the trick. But before that, I told you that I would spank the attitude out of you and I can’t go back on that. You need to know that you can rely on everything I say, the nice things as well as the not so nice so I have to follow through, for my sake as well as for yours.”

Harvey tapped on his left knee. “Drop the robe and position yourself over my knee.”

Mike wanted to argue, wanted to beg and plead but in the end he decided that Harvey was right. He needed to know that he could rely on Harvey, no matter what the circumstances were. He needed this punishment to earn Harvey’s forgiveness as well as being able to let go of his mistake himself.

Harvey was studying his face while Mike slowly shrugged the warm fabric off. As he bent himself over Harvey’s knee he felt vulnerable and safe at the same time. In this position, his face was pressed against the cool leather of the couch and he could feel how Harvey trapped his legs between his own, so he would stay in position.

“I want you to put your arms behind your back, left wrist grabbed by your right hand.”

Mike obeyed and when his hands rested on the small of his back, he had no more leverage to shift away, solely dependent on Harvey to keep him in position.

Like the night before, Harvey placed one warm palm high up on his back between his shoulder blades, but this time it felt like the purpose of the hand was to hold him down and if needs be by force. The other hand slowly rubbed over his ass.

“Does it still hurt from yesterday?” Harvey wanted to know.

For a brief second Mike wanted to lie so that maybe Harvey would go easy on him. It would have been so easy to fall back into old habits, to take the easy way out. But he caught himself just in time. After all, he wanted to become a better person and get rid of his bad habits.

“No, Sir. The pain is barely noticeable anymore.”

“We will change that,” his Dom promised. “Tell me why I need to put you over my knee, Mike.”

“Because you told me to stop my sullen behavior and I didn’t obey. I was angry at you and instead of talking to you about it, I was rude and didn’t call you Sir on purpose.”

“How many times did you fail to address me properly, Mike? I know that you know the answer.”

Mike thought back for a moment. “It was three times, Sir.”
“And why did you fail to address me as Sir?”

“Because I was mad at you and wanted you to know that and I wanted to hurt you. I’m sorry, Sir. I should’ve trusted you more.”

“Alright Mike. Let’s put this behind us. You get three strikes for every time you failed to address me properly and one strike for your shitty attitude in general, which makes it a nice round number. No warm-up. Tell me your color.”

“It’s green Sir.”

The analytic part of Mike’s mind was interested how this spanking would be different from yesterday’s play. Surely, slaps from a hand couldn’t feel so different. And only 10 slaps would be a piece of cake compared to the more than thirty he had taken for Harvey yesterday. Surely, Harvey only wanted to make a point without actually hurting him much. This punishment was only for show, of that Mike was quite certain.

“You will count each strike but otherwise I want you silent. No moans, no shouts and no talking,” Harvey instructed and then, before he could prepare himself mentally, the first strike hit home.

Mike could feel immediately that Harvey had put the full force of his arm behind that strike and for a moment, the sharp blossoming pain in his right cheek took his breath away.

“One,” he was barely able to pant out.

Fuck! How could a hand hurt so much? All of a sudden he became aware how easy Harvey had gone on him yesterday, how much he’d held himself back to ease Mike into the pain-play.

Then the next strike hit him at the exact same spot. This was a world away from the playful spanking Harvey had introduced him to yesterday. This felt so much worse. But beneath all the pain a low flicker of arousal surged through Mike and his dick, formerly relaxed from his nap, stiffened slightly and his hips pressed a little more firmly against Harvey’s thigh before he could stop himself.

“Mike, count or I add one more strike. And stop humping my leg.” He thought that he could detect a slightly amused undertone in Harvey’s voice but he didn’t dare push his luck.

“Two, Sir,” Mike corrected himself immediately while he tried to get his traitorous cock under control, willing it to go back to sleep.

The next strike hit his left cheek, for which he was very grateful since the skin of his right cheek was by now burning from being hit two times at the exact same spot.

“Three,” he forced out breathlessly while he tried to relax his clenched-up muscles. But Harvey didn’t give him enough time to force his muscles into submission let alone to process the pain like he’d been able to do yesterday.

“Four…ow,” he yelped as the hit reverberated through his lower body and now his whole ass burned as if Harvey had set him on fire. How on earth should he survive the remaining six slaps?

Slap number five hit his right cheek again, this time a little lower than before but still a little part of the hand overlapping with the burning skin from round one.

“Five!” he groaned loudly and tried desperately to relax his muscles. The blunt fingernails of his right hand dug into the flesh of his left wrist, creating a counter-ache which grew stronger as the sixth slap hit once more the same spot as before.
“Six,” he hiccupped as tears started to well up behind his eyelids and he suddenly couldn’t breathe properly any more since his throat was tensing up as well.

All of a sudden he could feel Harvey’s fingers on his hand as he pried the clenched up fingers lose from his mutilated left wrist. “Let go, Mike. You’re hurting yourself.”

When he let go of his wrist he became aware how tightly he had gripped at it and how much it had hurt. He could feel Harvey shift a little under him and then a pillow was pushed in front of his face. “Here, hug that to your torso. You can dig your nails into that if you must.”

Harvey waited till Mike had found his position, the little throw-pillow firmly clutched to his upper body, fingertips dug into the soft fabric. When Mike had shifted his weight a little to push the pillow under his body, his now rock-hard dick rubbed against Harvey’s thigh and the sensation nearly made him moan with arousal. What was wrong with him that his cock seemed to like the pain so much more than the rest of him? But before he could dwell on that any longer, Harvey’s voice interrupted his thoughts.

“Come on Mike, only four more to go. You can take them for me. Now, relax.”

Harvey sensed that Mike was really struggling with the pain by now, as had been his intention. His boy needed to learn the difference between play and punishment. Funnily enough, Harvey could also feel the hard erection pressing into the inner side of his left thigh. There really was a little masochist buried inside his boy, which suited his own slightly sadistic streak very well. When he felt Mike relax in his new, more comfortable position, he continued with the spanking, his hand already smarting from the harsh slaps he was doling out.

“Seven,” Mike shouted out when the pain bloomed on his left cheek and then his shoulders began to shake when he couldn’t hold back the tears any longer. The palm between his shoulder blades started to rub circles on his upper back to soothe him a little, letting him know that there was no shame in crying.

“Breathe for me, Mike. Come on. Take a deep breath. Don’t hold your breath or hyperventilate or I need to stop.”

With a huge amount of effort Mike managed to pull some air into his lungs and Harvey gave him enough time, so he could calm down a little.

“Ready for the next one?”

Although the words that came to mind were: Hell no! or Red! he forced a “Yes, Sir,” out. He knew he would hate himself later if he didn’t see this through. He knew that he’d earned every single one of these slaps. And he could take three more, he was almost sure of that. But Harvey wasn’t convinced.

“Mike, please remember that you can safeword out if you need to.”

“Green, Sir.” His pride was still a little stronger than the pain in his butt, if only barely.

Mike wasn’t sure if Harvey really sighed at that but he couldn’t think any longer about whether his Dom hated the punishment itself or the stubbornness of his sub when the next slap hit.

“Eight,” he sobbed, his breath hitching on impact.

“You’re doing very well, Mike. Only two more to go.”
The next hit was aimed again on his right cheek, this time almost where it met his thigh and this really, really hurt like a bitch. He sucked in a sharp breath, pressing his eyelids so firmly together that it almost gave him an instant headache. Then he exhaled in sharp little puffs.

“Mike, you need to count,” he was reminded by an almost gentle voice.

“Nine, Sir,” Mike was able to force out.

“Last one, Puppy,” Harvey murmured and then the palm hit his left cheek at exactly the same spot as he was before hit on the right.

“Ten!” He couldn’t help but shout it out, relived that it was over and he hadn’t embarrassed himself by safewording out.

Now he knew the difference between play and punishment and frankly, punishment sucked. How on earth did Harvey manage to make this 10 slaps hurt more than the 10 slaps with the paddle from the evening before?

Harvey’s hand rubbed firm circles over his abused hot skin, calming the sore nerve-endings and thus soothing a little of the pain away.

“Stay like this a little longer till you’ve got your breath back and calmed down a little.”

Mike was thankful that he was given some time to stop crying and get at least some of his composure back.

When his breathing finally evened out and he managed to relax Harvey indicated that he could get up.

“Go get the lotion from the bathroom. It’s the white bottle beside the basin. And you can wash your face before you come back.”

“Yes, Sir.”

He could feel the burn in his skin and muscles every step it took him to obey Harvey’s orders and knew immediately that this pain would accompany him at least for the next day.

After a few minutes Mike was back, face a little less red and puffy, and handed Harvey the bottle.

“Lay down back over my lap. You can prop yourself up on your knees and forearms. And no more humping. I don’t want any more of your come on my clothes.” The Dom had of course noticed Mike’s still half-hard cock and his tone made it clear to Mike, that he would indeed not be allowed to pleasure himself in any way, neither by touch nor by rubbing himself against Harvey.

When he lay relaxed over his Dom’s lap, he could feel the lotion being dribbled on his ass and for a moment he enjoyed its coolness on his hot skin. Then Harvey spread it all over his butt and made sure that the red handprints were entirely covered but his touch wasn’t particularly light. All of a sudden, Mike could feel one fingertip finding its way between his cheeks, trailing playfully over his hole, and his dick appreciated this action with a playful little twitch of its own, all the pain forgotten in an instant.

“With all due respect, Sir, but you make it quite hard for me, to obey your order.” Mike hoped that this manner of complaining might be met by Harvey’s approval.

Harvey barked out a little laugh. “All right, Puppy. Message received. And you’re right. I shouldn’t
tease you although that sweet little pucker of yours is too tempting.” He gave Mike an encouraging little push to make him stand up.

Harvey briefly inspected Mike’s left wrist and although the marks from his fingernails were still visible on the tender skin, there was no broken skin that would need treatment.

“Take the bottle and the robe back to the bathroom and get dressed. I’ll feed you lunch before I send you home and it would be a nice change if we could both sit down at the table. And if you behave yourself, I even give you a pillow for the chair.”

Mike smiled at that but before he could turn away to obey Harvey’s orders his Dom had gently taken hold of his wrist and stood up.

“You did good just now, Mike. I’m proud of you.” Kind brown eyes studied his face for a second and then Harvey leaned forward and kissed Mike firmly on his mouth. Just as he started to open his mouth to show Harvey that a little tongue-action would be more than welcome his still throbbing butt was lightly patted by his Dom’s hand and Mike winced.

Harvey looked at him slightly amused. His Dom had been well aware of Mike’s sly attempt of manipulation and firmly put an end to it. Always in control. Always having the upper hand.

“Now go and do as you were told. Lunch will be ready in 10 minutes.”

Chapter End Notes

I tried to describe a few things in this chapter and I hope I got the topping-from-the-bottom part right. If not, please let me know and I will fix it.

Like I explained before, I have no personal experience in BDSM so most of this chapter is a product of my weird imagination.

The technique Mike uses to stop his escalating emotions is actually something I haven’t made up. I tried to explain the science behind it very briefly but I’m not a psychologist and you should probably do some more research if you want to learn more about it. All I can say is that I learned this technique in therapy and it works for me. I had some issues with fear and anxiety in the past and the breathing and stimulating other senses helped me to break the cycle long enough that I could analyze what had triggered my emotions. It’s a process and it needs some practice but I still apply this technique if it becomes necessary even though I haven’t been in therapy for a few years now. And if you can’t do breathing exercises, like when you’re in class or in a subway, the very sour bubble gums worked for me.

This story isn’t beta-read and all mistakes regarding spelling and grammar are my own.

Thank you for reading. I would love to read your comments and Kudos is also highly appreciated.
Grammy knows best

Chapter Summary

Mike visits his Grammy and learns that she is way cooler than he ever could have hoped for.

Chapter Notes

Sorry guys, no porn, just plot. But seriously, the poor guys needed a break.

See the end of the chapter for more notes.

After they’d eaten the grilled-cheese sandwiches and the salad Harvey had prepared for them, Mike had left the Manhattan condo in a cab his Dom had called for him and, of course, paid for as well.

After he’d swung by his apartment to drop off his bag, he walked to the nursing home. It was only a 20 minutes’ walk from his flat and biking there hadn’t held any appeal since he had been barely able to sit at a normal chair, even with the pillow Harvey had provided with a little smirk, during their lunch. By now the soothing effect of the lotion had started to ease his pain but he would need to be sitting on his hard bike-saddle the whole day tomorrow and decided to spare his sore ass for the remaining Sunday. He still wasn’t quite sure that Harvey had only used his hand to spank him and not somehow used the paddle on him.

Before he visited his Grammy in her room he went looking for the head-nurse.

He found her in the nurses-office, preparing the medicine for the residents, counting out pills under her breath. He waited until she was finished so he wouldn’t confuse her. Then he coughed softly to make her aware of his presence. When she turned around he gave her a big smile.

“Hello, Nurse Roberts. You look very nice today. Have you done something new with your hair? It looks great.”

Her face lit up when she saw Mike. He always took great care to be nice to the staff and in that regard he was an exception. Most relatives of the residents seemed to think that the nurses were only good for handing out food and emptying bed-pans.

But Grammy had taught him better since her mother had been a nurse and Mike made a point to always be nice to the staff. It was easy for him to remember all the nurses’ names and even their birthdays but since they didn’t know about his special abilities, this endeared him to everyone, and also made his Grammy’s life a little easier.

“Hello Mike. Haven’t seen you in a while. How have you been, Sweetie?”

The middle-aged black woman with the kind smile had taken to him since his Grammy had first come to live in the nursing home, now three years ago. She took always special care to inform him of his Grammy’s developing health problems and the available options to deal with them. In a way, she
was much more important to his Grammy and him then the doctors. Plus, she would know all the insider information and that’s what he needed right now.

“Very good, Ma’am. But I had to take on another job to pay the bills. That’s why I haven’t been able to visit for the past two weeks. Ehm, I was wondering if you could help me with something.”

“Sure thing, Sweetheart. What is it?”

He pulled out the invoice and showed it to her.

“It looks like the doctors changed Grammy’s meds and I wondered if you could tell me what that’s all about. According to this bill they are really expensive and I’m a little behind with my payments. I was wondering if there might be an alternative.”

Nurse Roberts took the slip of paper out of Mike’s hands and studied the bill intently.

“Hm. That’s a little odd.”

“What is?”

“Well, according to this your Grammy has been put on Donezepil which is common enough for the treatment of her condition and it is expensive so it would fit the bill, but, wait a moment. I thought…”

She turned around and opened one of the large drawers in one of the cabinets where the patient’s files were kept.

“Yes, here it is. See, your Grammy has been participating in a trial-study for Beyer’s new Alzheimer’s drug, Asaxept, and from how her health is developing I would say that it works very well for her. But surely you must know that, Mike. You’re her legal guardian after all and you must have signed off on that since it is a blind-study and some of the patients are getting placebos instead of the drug and the drug isn’t FDA approved yet.” She leafed through the file and handed him a page.

“Here is the contract. See, you’ve signed it.”

He took the piece of paper and studied it for a few moments, committing it to his memory. When he came to the last line he got angry. Michael J. Ross had been scribbled barely legible on the dotted line.

“This isn’t my signature. I never saw this contract in my life. I would never have gambled with my Grammy’s health in such a careless way.”

“Maybe someone made a mistake and this is a mix-up.”

She went to the computer to look at the medicine-orders for his Grammy.

“No. It’s not a mistake. See, this order clearly states that your Grammy is to be given the Asaxept that has been prepared for her by Beyer.”

Mike glanced at the screen while Nurse Roberts looked into the medicine-cabinet, taking out his Grammy’s meds. One half-filled bottle with a Beyer-label clearly read Asaxept-study and his Grammy’s name.

“But why does the nursing home bill me for the Donezepil when this contract clearly states that all participants of the Asaxept-study not only get the drug for free but also get an additional 15.000 $ for
the 6 months the study runs. And, should the drug get the FDA-approval, free treatment for the rest of their lives should they stay on the drug.”

“I don’t know, Sweetie. Maybe you should take that up with the administration. You know, Mr. MacDougal. He has taken over from Miss Laing about 3 months ago. After all, I’m just the one counting out the pills.”

Three months ago. That’s when the bills had increased due to the new medication and shortly after that the fake contract had been signed by god knows who.

He laid a hand on her shoulder to let her know that he wasn’t angry with her.

“It’s all right. I know that this has nothing to do with you. But can I get a copy of that?”

She looked away, suddenly scared as the full implication of what all of it could mean, hit her. “I don’t know, Honey. I could lose my job.” She looked ashamed, barely able to meet his eyes.

He knew that he could press the point since he was his Grammy’s legal guardian and as thus clearly entitled to look at her patient-file but he could see why Nurse Roberts was scared. He’d met Mr. MacDougal only once but this guy gave him the creeps and he wasn’t the one whose pay-check depended on his good graces. He was the one whom he’d needed to beg to extend the payment but it seemed that this worry at least now could be a thing of the past.

“Tell you what. I think I hear some senior crying for help out there. Maybe you should go and check. And if I go around snooping and taking pictures of my Grammy’s file with my phone, nobody could blame you. Plausible deniability and all that.”

The nurse smiled relieved. “You know what, I think you’re right. Somebody is shouting for help.”

But before she left the room she patted his cheek lightly in a motherly fashion.

“Mike, whatever this is and however this came to pass, your Grammy is doing better now than she has been in the last 6 months so this could be a blessing in disguise. Think about that before you do something rash. And one other thing. Talk to her about taking her meds, and I don’t mean only the new drug. I mean all of her pills. She’s a little difficult lately. It’s seems that the more lucid she is the more she thinks that she doesn’t need her meds. Maybe you can persuade her.” She patted his arm lightly and left the room, leaving him to his own devices.

**********

“Hey Grammy, how are you today? I hear someone’s not taking their pills? What’s that all about?”

Mike closed the door to his Grammy’s small room behind him, looking around for a chair he could sit on, preferably one with a thick cushion.

“Michael,” his Grammy smiled at him and some of his tension left his body. Today she knew who he was just like Nurse Roberts had told him. One should be thankful for small mercies. “I don’t take the pills because they’re trying to poison me.”

Mike wasn’t sure whether his Grammy was teasing him or not, so he decided to make light of the statement.
“Grammy, that's crazy. Dr. Schrager gave me her word, she wouldn't poison you until January. She does it before then, she can't count it towards next year's quota.”

He went to get her the pills and gave them to her, then fetched her a glass of water and waited patiently until she had swallowed them down.

When he sat down opposite her, wincing slightly since the only visitors chair had no padding, he patted her hand to reassure her that nothing bad would happen to her. “So, how have you been? Still the terror of the nurses?”

They chatted a bit and he indulged her when she told him to set the checker's-board up for a game. She seemed a little absentminded and studied his face every now and then when she thought he wouldn’t notice, like she was seeing him for the first time after a long absence. Well, he knew that it had been two weeks but surely, she couldn’t have forgotten how he looked so quickly.

“Now Grammy, if you don’t up your game soon, I’m gonna take you for all the cookies you’ve got.”

At that, she snorted out a little laugh while she watched him as he helped himself to one of it.

“You’re very welcome to them, Michael since they’re so old that I would break my dentures if I tried to eat them.

He’d already bitten into it when Grammy made this statement and he had to agree with her. These cookies were awful. He coughed a little, imagining a dry cloud of dust coming out of his mouth and put the rest of the stale cookie down.

“I will bring better ones the next time I visit,” he promised her.

“If I would wait for that, I would starve. You’re already so busy with your two jobs that you never have time for me.”

He looked down ashamed. “Yes, and I’m sorry for that. But…,” he sighed, not wanting to worry her with his problems.

She patted his hand.

“I didn’t want to criticize you, Michael. I know that you’re trying to take care of me and I’m very proud of you. You’re a good grandson. And now that you have a new girlfriend, your time is even more precious, I understand that. So, don’t you worry about me. I’m doing fine.”

Mike was confused. Was she losing it again?

“Grammy, why would you think that I have a new girlfriend? I’ve not.”

She cupped his chin in her frail hand with the slightly swollen knuckles and studied his face pensively.

“But you met someone,” she stated matter-of-factly after a few seconds of scrutinizing his features. “You look different. Happy.” Suddenly she made a face. “Oh, I hope it’s not that Evans boy, Michael? Please tell me that it’s not him.”

“No Grammy. Why would you think that? You now that I like girls.”

“Oh Michael. Don’t take me for a fool just because I’m old. I know that you also like boys.”

That caught him by surprise and for a moment he wanted to lie to her and deny it. But then he
decided to come clean.

“But… how?” he asked, not denying her statement outright.

“I have eyes, Michael. I could see how you looked at Mr. Gonzales when he moved in next door when you were 15 years old. He was a very good looking fellow. I liked to look at him myself and you were always blushing when I talked about him or when you met him in the hallway. You really are not very good at hiding your feelings. And then there was this actor you liked so much. What was his name again? You know, the one from the movies with the big bat?”

“Christian Bale?”

“Yes, that’s it. You had that big poster in your room.”

“But,” Mike actually sputtered a bit. “It was a superhero poster. Boys can have posters of superheroes in their rooms. That doesn’t mean anything.”

“Yes, be that as it may. But you didn’t have that poster because you liked the superhero. You liked to look at the handsome actor.”

How obvious had he been? He had been so sure that he was hiding his inclination so well, and now to learn that Grammy had known all along, he felt just stupid. And somehow relieved as well.

“But…, you never said.” Mike was at a loss.

She raised her eyebrows. “Neither did you. I figured you would say something when you were ready. But now I’m getting older and the chance that you will raise the issue yourself is getting slimmer so, no time like the present.”

Mike was stunned. “You don’t mind?” He had always been afraid of what his Grammy would think about him being bi. She’d grown up in a different time and he knew that this must be difficult for her so he never had been brave enough to bring it up. If she’d loathed him for his inclination, he wasn’t sure if he could’ve taken that.

But as so often, Grammy took him by surprise.

“Why would I mind? You fall in love with a person and not their gender. I think it is beautiful that you can love like that, Michael. It’s a blessing and don’t let anybody tell you otherwise.” Her kind eyes erased all his worries and his heart grew light. How could he ever have doubted her love for him?

“I’m not sure that I’ve fallen in love with him. Not yet anyway. But the way things are going… well, maybe.”

“So it is a boy you’ve met.” She beamed at him when he finally revealed his secret to her. At least as far as she knew. Mike was sure that her open-mindedness would probably end at the whole BDSM-thing so he decided to leave that part out. “But not that Trevor I hope,” she continued with growing concern.

Mike smiled and shook his head. “No, not Trevor. I think Trevor and I are really done this time. We had a huge fight.”

“And about time too. This boy was always trouble. He’s an anchor Mike and you need to cut him loose.” Mike could hear how angry Grammy still was at his former best friend and deep in his heart he knew, that he should be too. Trevor had cost him so much. Columbia, Harvard, his whole future
as a lawyer.

“So, do you want to talk about him? Give an old woman something to gossip about?” Grammy’s eager voice broke his train of thought and he laughed out loud.

“You would really gossip about your grandson seeing other guys? How very progressive of you.”

“Yes, I would be the queen of the breakfast room and Loretta Davis with her single daughter with three kids from three different fathers could eat her heart out.”

“So you would use me to gain credit with the other seniors.” He slapped a palm over his heart theatrically. “That hurts, Grammy.”

She chuckled a little. “No, but really Michael. If you want to tell me about him, I would like to hear about the boy who makes my grandson glow with happiness.”

Glow, huh? That was a word he would’ve never attributed to himself.

“Well, actually he is a not a boy. Far from it. He is quite a bit older than I am. I would say mid to end thirties but we’ve never really talked about that, his age I mean. His name is Harvey and he is really great. In fact, he’s a lawyer.”

“A lawyer?” Her face scrunched up with worry. “Oh Michael, please tell me that you haven’t gotten yourself into trouble again.”

“What? No Grammy. It’s not what you think. I told you about the cleaning job I do at night. Do you remember?”

“Yes. Of course I remember. I’m not an imbecile.” He could hear in her voice that she was still suspicious.

“I clean the floor where his office is in this big law firm in Manhattan. One night he worked late and I walked into his office to clean it and we got to talk and well, we’ve been seeing each other only for a couple of days now, but we talk each day and he is really nice and anyway, that’s how we met.” At least that was the official PG 13-version and as far as his Grammy was concerned the only version of his first meeting with Harvey she would ever know of.

“Only a few days? Hm, I would’ve thought that you were seeing him for longer since you seem so happy. Tell me, does he treat you well, Michael?”

Mike thought back at the past 24 hours and his face lit up with a smile.

“Yes, he does. He really takes care of me.”

“Well, that’s nice. But Michael, I want you to be careful. Just because neither of you can get pregnant doesn’t mean that you can be careless.”

Oh, no! Mike could hardly suppress a groan. Not that old record again. Thankfully the medical handbook with the pictures hadn’t survived Grammys moving to the nursing home or she would’ve gotten it out right now and made him look at pictures of genital herpes again.

“Actually, we have decided to be exclusive and he had himself gotten tested last week. He showed me the lab results yesterday. My appointment with the doctor is tomorrow. See, no reason to worry.”

“He sounds like a very responsible young-ish man. But isn’t that awfully quick, since you’ve been
seeing each other only for a few days?”

“It’s just, I think we’ve hit it off from the moment we saw each other. We haven’t slept with each other yet, if that’s what you’re afraid of. But we both would like to sometime. And he is very responsible in this way so that’s why he asked me to get tested. So we are prepared when it feels right for us to do it.” Talking with his Grammy about having sex with Harvey felt really weird and he decided to chance the subject.

“I think he will make me a better person. You know, force me to make the right decisions for once, keeping me out of trouble.”

“He sounds quite the opposite of that Trevor. I think I like your Harvey already. So, when will I meet him?”

Mike could actually feel his jaw drop. Grammy had never wanted to meet any of the girls he dated before.

“I…you…why now? Because he is a man?”

“Oh Michael. Do you really think that this is the reason? I couldn’t care less about him being a man. But he is the first person to give you that dreamy and hopeful look when you talk about him. That has never happened before and I want to meet the person who makes you feel that way. He must be someone very special.”

“Yes, that he is for sure. But I’m not sure if he is into that whole meeting the family thing. That could be a little too soon, even at the pace we’re progressing. I don’t want to scare him off by seeming needy and clingy.”

But Grammy had other views. “You tell him that I’m an old woman and could drop dead every minute now. I don’t have time for him playing coy.” She crossed her arms in front of her bosom and Mike knew that this was the end of this discussion. Well, even Harvey was no match for his Grammy once she had set her mind on something.

Chapter End Notes

Thank you for reading.

All mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

Any comments are welcome and of course Kudos is highly appreciated.
My brain just does it

Chapter Summary

Mike seeks Harvey’s advise.

Chapter Notes

Thank you so much for all your support and the nice comments so far. I really get a thrill out of your responses. You guys rock.

Harvey had been called away to an emergency meeting in the office since the merger he had been working his ass off constructing with Louis suddenly was in jeopardy. One of the involved parties, their own client, seemed to have a sudden change of heart and all his work, along with his billable hours, was now depending on whether he could bring the errand CEO back on track or not.

So Harvey had dressed himself up in one of his power-suits and driven back to the office. Jessica had been waiting for him and when the wayward client arrived it had fallen to him to bully the CEO of RSC Network, Clive Waterhouse, back into line since Louis couldn’t be reached. Harvey wasn’t quite sure if that was a bad thing, though. Louis had the annoying habit of raining on his parade at the worst possible time so maybe Jessica hadn’t tried all that hard to reach him.

After nearly 3 hours of negotiations they found a way to make the merger work, even if he needed to go over the contract once more, adding a few clauses regarding some additional assets on which Waterhouse had insisted.

Now, he was sitting in his office, once more going over all the finances, debating whether he should leave that part for Louis, when his phone rang. He smiled as he saw the caller ID.

“Mike. Miss me already? How was your Grammy?”

“Hi, Sir. Sorry to bother you but I really need to talk to you. Can you tell the doorman to let me up?” The kid’s voice sounded odd somehow, like something was seriously off.

“Where are you, Mike?”

“I’m at your place, Sir.”

“I’m sorry Mike but I’m at the office. Something work-related happened and I needed to meet with a client.”

“Can I come by? It’s kinda urgent, Sir.”

“Has something happened to your Grammy, Mike? Or do you feel odd in some way? If that’s the case you might be experiencing sub-drop.”
Harvey was very concerned that Mike would need to see him again so soon after they had parted ways that afternoon. Maybe he should have taken more time to observe Mike closely after the punishment. After all, everything today had been very emotional for the kid. But Mike scattered his fears.

“No, Sir. My Grammy is well. More than well, actually. And I’m feeling fine too. It has something to do with the invoice the nursing home sent me. I could really use your advice.”

Harvey thought about that for a minute but then decided to go back home. After everything, it would be easier for Mike to stay there and he could work from home as well as from the office. He just needed to pack all the additional paperwork since the client hadn’t bothered to hand the added figures over in a digitalized version.

“Mike, I want you to go into the building to the doorman. I’m going to call him so he’ll let you into the condo. I will see you in about 30 minutes. You’re allowed to help yourself to water and food. And you can sit on the couch. But don’t snoop around. And hands off my records.”

“Yes, Sir. Thank you.”

As soon as the kid had hung up Harvey called the concierge and made arrangements for Mike. He was curious about what had happened. Maybe the financial matter had been more pressing than Mike had let on and he would need a loan after all. Well, he would see as soon as he got home.

He gathered all the necessary papers and his laptop and made his way to the garage where he’d parked his car since Ray had the Sundays off.

**********

Mike sat on the couch, a half-empty bottle of water on the coffee-table in front of him, munching noisily on an apple, when Harvey entered his condo. Harvey noticed that Mike had taken his shoes off and that today’s threadbare pair of socks had one hole less than the pair from the night before.

Harvey approached the couch after he had dropped his work-things on his desk in the corner and shrugged his jacket off, hanging it carefully over the back of a chair so it wouldn’t get rumpled.

“I’m really sorry to bother you so soon again, Sir,” Mike apologized around the last bite of apple he still had in his mouth. He’d stood up to greet his Dom properly and Harvey was very satisfied to see his training bearing the first fruits.

Harvey took the armchair opposite the couch and indicated to Mike that he should sit back down.

“It is okay, Mike. I told you that I wanted to give you advice in financial matters. So, how can I help?”

“I think the new administrator of the nursing home is running a scam,” Mike stated matter-of-factly. That announcement was not at all what Harvey had expected but the kid seemed quite sure about it.

“All right. Tell me how you came to that conclusion.”

He leaned back and listened while Mike presented his case. When he handed his phone to Harvey to
show him the pictures he’d made of his Grammy’s patient file and in particular of the forged contract with Beyer, Harvey took it but gave up after a moment. Damn shitty little screen. Mike’s phone was about half the size of his own and at times like this Harvey realized that he, or rather his eyes were getting older, especially after having already spent hours in front of a computer screen.

“Please get me the tablet from my desk, Mike. I need to see it on a bigger screen. Your tiny phone makes my eyes hurt.”

Mike went away in the indicated direction, getting rid of the remnants of the apple since he needed to walk by the kitchen anyway. Suddenly Harvey heard a pile of paper shift and cascade onto the floor, followed by a mumbled profanity.

“What have you done now, Mike?” he asked exasperated. The kid was an accident waiting to happen.

“Sorry, Sir. Just a little mishap.” With a few hurried footsteps Mike came back to the sitting area and his tablet was handed to him. Harvey sent the pictures from Mike’s phone via Bluetooth to it.

“I’m just gonna clean up that mountain of paper, Sir.”

Mike retreated back to Harvey’s desk to clean up the mess he’d made. To be fair, it hadn’t been his fault entirely. Harvey had placed the stacks of files haphazardly onto his desk right on top of his tablet and when Mike had tried to ease it out from under them, the mountainous files had shifted in different directions and he hadn’t been able to catch everything in time without dropping the expensive tablet.

Harvey only listened with half an ear to Mike’s announcement since he was now studying the pictures Mike had taken from his Grammy’s file and comparing them with the latest invoice.

Damn. The kid was right. They had signed his Grammy up as a participant for the drug-study all the while billing him for a different medication. And on top, the 15.000 $ that were rightfully Mike’s since he was the legal guardian of Edith Ross and as such responsible for all of her financial matters had also vanished.

He became aware that Mike was standing in front of him, stacks of papers in both of his hands. When he looked closely he could see the logo of RSC Network on top of the papers.

“Oh Puppy, please tell me that you didn’t made a mess of the files. I need to go over them later and for that I need them to be in order.”

Mike looked embarrassed. “Yeah, sorry. It happened when I got the tablet. But I will fix it for you, Sir.” He began to shuffle the pages as he sat down after Harvey had nodded his consent. He couldn’t see any harm in Mike seeing them, since there were only a lot of numbers on the pages, surely meaningless to Mike.

Well, he didn’t know what Mike’s freak brain could do – yet.

After a few minutes Harvey was interrupted by Mike’s hesitant voice.

“Ehm, Sir? Sorry to bother you and really, I didn’t mean to snoop, I barely looked but it’s that my mind just does it and I can’t help it but anyway, are you aware that the numbers here don’t add up?”

“Hm,” Harvey was still thinking about Mike’s case and what action they could take to make the new administrator pay. Then Mike’s ramblings suddenly registered. “Wait. What?”
Mike held up a few pages. “There’s a discrepancy between listed assets and potential assets. It’s kinda hard to spot between all this numbers so I wasn’t sure if you’ve seen that.” His voice sounded apologetic like he wasn’t sure if he had overstepped some line.

“Give me that.” Harvey held out his hand and when Mike leaned forward and placed the paper in his hand, he studied the two pages closely, without seeing what Mike was getting at. Only when Mike stood up and pointed the numbers out to him, Harvey suddenly noticed.

“Sorry Sir. It’s just, I’m good with numbers like that.” Mike seemed embarrassed by his actions.

“That son of a bitch,” Harvey muttered since it became now crystal clear to him why Waterhouse had pulled that little stunt of his today. He’d always planned to add this last minute to the contract, sure that they wouldn’t spot the doctored numbers on such short notice.

Harvey realized how much this could’ve damaged Pearson Hardman and since he knew now, that Waterhouse had doctored one asset, he was sure, that there would be more to find. A greedy bastard like Waterhouse wouldn’t limit himself to just one deception.

Harvey made a decision.

“Mike, I have no idea how you did that, and frankly, right now I don’t care although I have to say that I’m impressed. This is obviously something that brain of yours can do and since I’m a little under the gun with this merger I would appreciate it if you could go over this numbers and see if anything else jumps out on you.”

Mike nodded, a relieved grin spreading over his face as he realized that he’d actually done a good thing. For once he could use his ability to really help someone out and not for cheating and committing fraud like he’d done in the last couple of years.

“Of course I can. Just give me 30 minutes, Sir.”

Harvey gave him that shit-eating grin of his. “Show-off!” But his voice sounded affectionate and even a little in awe – if the possibility that Harvey Specter could be in awe of another human being even existed in this universe.

He stood up, got a legal pad and some other supplies from his desk and returned to the couch where he dropped a highlighter in Mike’s lap.

“Here. I want you to highlight everything that doesn’t add up. In the meantime I will draw up a battle plan for the nursing home case.”

He settled back down in his chair when he heard Mike’s stomach rumble.

“Are you hungry?”

“Starving, Sir. The apple wasn’t all that filling and I haven’t eaten since lunch.”

Mike twirled the highlighter around his fingers absently, buzzing with nervous energy. The papers were spread out all around him as he sat cross-legged on Harvey’s couch and Harvey suddenly had an inkling on how Mike must have looked like when he’d studied at Columbia. So much potential simply wasting away, what a shame. Only with an effort he was able to shake that thought.

“What do you want to eat? I can order in.”
“Have you ever had the pizza with the cheese in the crust, Sir? It will blow your mind.”

For a moment Harvey wanted to roll his eyes and reprimand Mike for his eating habits but the kid sounded so eager that he decided to indulge him. After all, the little genius had just saved his ass.

“Peperoni and mushrooms okay?”

The huge grin on Mike’s face gave Harvey a warm fuzzy feeling.

“Perfect, Sir.”

**********

They worked a couple of hours in companionable silence only interrupted when the pizza arrived. Mike had been right. It was quite good although nothing Harvey would want to eat every week. From the way Mike had tucked in the young man had other views.

After their dinner Harvey had changed into something marginally more casual, if you could call designer jeans and a perfectly pressed designer t-shirt casual, but Mike seemed to be surprised at Harvey’s different attire.

“I hope you’re not too disappointed that I changed,” Harvey called him out on his slightly disappointed gaze he’d give Harvey when he came back to the living room.

“No, Sir. It’s just, I never pictured you in jeans. But you look good in them.” There was a flicker in Mike’s eyes though and Harvey had an idea what it was.

“Next time we play, I will wear a suit again. And if you’re really good, you can help undress me. Piece by piece. Would you like that, Mike?”

“Hm,” he mumbled, not able to look at Harvey. The kid’s ears actually glowed red with embarrassment that Harvey could so clearly read his deepest desires and thoughts but before this talk got out of hand, Harvey reminded him that they had some more work to do.

All in all, it had taken Mike only a little more than the predicted 30 minutes to compare all the numbers on the additional lists and Harvey could now see that this could have cost them Pearson Hardman’s reputation along with making them liable to possible lawsuits from the opposing side.

The assets Waterhouse had included into his numbers were only potential assets and as such not admissible into the merger. If they had included them, like Waterhouse had wanted them to do, his share of the pie would have been much bigger than was his actual due and once the other side would’ve noticed it, Harvey’s and the firm’s standing would’ve been in severe jeopardy.

He planned a serious ass-kicking for Waterhouse and after he’d told Jessica how their client had tried to blindside them, he was pretty sure that she would be on board with his plan if not wanting to do some kicking on her own. He hated negotiations done in bad faith and once the word would have gotten out that Pearson Hardman operated that way, deliberately or through negligence, they would’ve lost a lot of clients.

When Mike handed him the list with all the false assets and doctored numbers clearly pointed out, he went once more over the contract for the merger to right a few wrongs. In the meantime he had Mike
summarize his nursing-home case. Jessica always wanted him to do more pro-bono work and this once he would be more than happy to oblige her.

Harvey noticed that Mike’s pen had rested on the legal pad for a while now and the kid was fighting to keep his eyes open. His head dropped forward a little and this time it stayed down, chin almost touching the kid’s chest.

“Mike? Are you done?”

“What?” Mike jerked his head back up and blinked a couple of times rapidly. “Sorry, didn’t mean to doze off. Yes, I’m done, Sir.”

Harvey put his own work aside and stood up. He could do the rest tomorrow after he’d explained everything to Jessica and Louis.

“Time to get you home, then. Or do you want to spend the night?”

Mike grinned a little when he heard the offer but then thought better of it.

“Nah, Sir. My bike is at home and I need it tomorrow so I better go home.”

Mike stood up and stretched his arms but didn’t make to leave, like he was unsure whether he had Harvey’s permission.

“Okay. Come on then. I drive you home.”

Harvey went to the door, picking up his keys from the bowl on the bureau next to his front door, when he noticed that Mike followed him only hesitantly, obviously wanting to say something.

“Problems, Mike?”

The sub shook his head. “No, but you don’t have to do that. I mean, it’s very kind of you but I already imposed on you when I came by uninvited and it’s so late now and … .”

Harvey’s index finger placed firmly but gently on his lips hushed him up.

“Less talking and more walking, Puppy.” To persuade Mike, Harvey grabbed him by his wrist and led him to the elevator.

When they arrived at the garage Mike dawdled a little, clearly distracted by all the luxury cars parked there. In comparison to some of these cars, Harvey’s own ride, a new black Lexus LS, was almost understated.

“Come on, Mike,” Harvey reminded him. The kid was standing rooted to the spot in front of a highly polished black car with his mouth hanging slightly open. “That’s Eleonore,” he whispered in awe.

“Who’s Eleonore?” Harvey was a little confused at first but then he got the movie-reference. “No, sorry to disappoint but you’re one year off. This is a 1968 Ford Mustang Shelby GT 500. Eleonore was a 1967.”

“It’s still beautiful, though.”

Harvey nodded. “That she is.” He placed a hand on Mike’s shoulder and with a little soft pressure he guided Mike to his own parking spot without further delay.

They drove a while in silence and Harvey thought that Mike had dozed off again but then Mike
“Can I ask you something, Sir?”

“Of course.”

The traffic was light now at a little past midnight and Harvey wound his way toward the Williamsburg Bridge without needing to pay much attention to it. Soft music was playing on the radio and the street lights illuminated Mike’s face beautifully.

“Why do you want to take my case? Don’t you think that I could handle it alone? You gave me a lot of good pointers. And I know how valuable your time is. I think that I could be able to scare Mr. McAsshole enough that my Grammy could live for free the rest of her time.”

Harvey considered Mike’s question for a while. It seemed that Mike had taken his offer to represent him the wrong way.

Mike was a bright kid, more than bright. But he was inexperienced and wore his heart on his sleeve. That’s what had endeared him to Harvey since their first meeting. The openness and naïveté in this large blue eyes and his inability to hide his feelings.

Harvey dealt the whole day long with players and manipulative assholes and he was the king of them all. Mike was so refreshingly different, like a cool drink of fresh water after a day spent in the desert. But that also meant that Mike was easy to hurt since he seemed to take everything quite personal. The events of this morning were testimony to that.

In Harvey’s line of work one must grow a thick skin pretty quickly or the sharks would eat you for breakfast.

So he thought carefully how to best explain his motives for taking Mike’s case. The last thing he wanted was to hurt Mike again.

“I’m quite sure that you have enough knowledge of the law or could obtain it through reading quickly enough, that you could handle yourself. But people like McDougal are professional liars and your emotions are all over your face.” Mike made a face at that and Harvey patted his knee reassuringly.

“That’s not a criticism, just a fact and I prefer you this way anyway. But as soon as he has you riled up you will show your hand, whether you like it or not, that’s just who you are, and he will use that against you. I’m sure that you will be able to get some sort of settlement out of him, but I’m convinced that I can do better. After all, that’s what I do for a living. And anyway, we should think bigger. If he has done this to you…”

“… then he has done that to other people as well.” Mike suddenly sounded very excited and then his face fell. “Sorry, Sir. Didn’t mean to interrupt you.”

Harvey gave Mike’s knee another pat to let him know that everything was all right. Puppies sometimes get excited and couldn’t help themselves.

“Yes, and if Beyer learns with which kind of methods he’s operating, they would want to drop him quicker than a hot potato. After all, he’d made them liable to all sorts of law-suits.”

“So you’re thinking that you can get some more clients and if you go with it to Beyer, they will pay a shitload of money to make the problem go away. Some of which will find its way into your firms accounts. Plus, it’ll make you look good like a David versus Goliath thing with you on David’s
Harvey beamed at him with pride. “I knew you would get it. And as an added bonus, I can tell Jessica, who is my managing partner which makes her my boss, that I will take your case pro-bono. She always pressures me to do more pro-bono work so the firm looks good and this is the one case where I don’t mind.”

“So, it’s a win-win, except for McAsshole.”

“Yes.”

Harvey pulled into a parking-space in front of Mike’s building and got out of the car. Mike followed him a little bit slower.

“By the way. How’s your ass?” Harvey tapped it lightly, noticing the slight wince Mike couldn’t suppress while he unlocked the door.

“I think I’ll live. But really, you can tell me the truth. You used the paddle, didn’t you, Sir? There’s no way that a hand can hurt so much.”

Harvey chuckled. He knew that he could hit a lot harder with his hand than most people. Practice makes perfect and he always enjoyed giving a good hand-spanking so over the years his palms had gotten used to the pain. Most subs forgot that the same impact they felt on their butt he felt on his palm.

“Nope. Come on. I’ll walk you up.”

Mike knew by now that there was no use in arguing with Harvey so he simply climbed the stairs to the 4th floor and unlocked the door to his flat.

“Do you want to come in, Sir?”

Harvey nodded and followed his sub. Then he pushed the door shut and at the same time pushed Mike’s back against it, pressing himself firmly against the slender body, thus trapping him between door and his own body. A rock and a hard place, indeed.

His right hand cupped Mike’s cheek while he studied the sub’s face intently. The left hand was firmly pressed against the door right beside Mike’s face, holding him effectively in place.

“What do you have any idea what you did tonight?” he finally asked.

Mike nibbled at his lower lip, not knowing what Harvey wanted to hear from him.

“You saved us millions from a possible lawsuit and the reputation of our firm on top.”

Harvey couldn’t help himself any more. That kid was brilliant and needed to be rewarded for what he had done. And seeing Mike’s brain in action had been a serious turn-on for Harvey. So he pressed his mouth firmly on Mike’s lips and kissed him passionately until he could feel Mike’s body becomepliant under his, molding himself to his Dom.

They stayed like this for a couple of minutes and their moans filled the air. This time, Harvey dominated the kiss and he let it built up to something more, something primal and wild. When he felt Mike’s growing erection pressing against his thigh, he leaned into it and rubbed himself a little against it, letting Mike feel his own arousal.
“Please, Sir. Stop!” Mike panted suddenly and it took all of Harvey’s willpower to back off a little.

“What is it, Puppy?” he whispered with his face only inches away from Mike’s. The kid’s pupils were large as saucers, only a thin ring of the icy-blue visible.

“Please Sir. I’m not allowed. You forbade it,” Mike pleaded desperately, still slightly panting. It took Harvey a moment to realize what Mike meant. Than he grinned and pressed himself more firmly against Mike’s erection, shifting their groins against each other. The kid started to shudder and could barely suppress a moan.

“I said that you are not allowed to touch yourself or pleasure yourself in any way. But you’re not doing the touching and pleasuring. I am.” His hands grabbed Mike by the hips and he ground their bodies together even more firmly before he finally let go and stepped back, a little out of breath himself.

Mike leaned against his door for support. He looked like an advertisement for a porn-website, incredibly sexy with his face flushed a deep red which spread down his throat and up to his ears.

Harvey made a decision. Hell, he could change his mind if he wanted to. After all, he called the shots and Mike surely wouldn’t complain.

“I’m always willing to change my instructions if recent events should warrant it,” he justified his sudden change of heart.

Mike just looked at him with his huge eyes, like a deer caught in the headlight of an oncoming truck.

“You have 30 seconds to strip and assume a kneeling position on your bed.” Harvey stepped back to give his sub some room to obey.

Mike gulped visibly but his hands were already opening his jeans while he toed off his shoes.

“Don’t forget the socks.”

Harvey loved how eager Mike was, how well he responded to Harvey’s commands. The kid nearly jumped onto the bed as soon as the last piece of fabric had left his body.

Harvey had leaned against the back of the couch, watching Mike stumbling through his apartment while his clothes were flying in all directions and now he took a moment to drink in the sight of the kneeling Mike with the still faintly visible handprints on his fair ass.

Mine! He could barely suppress a possessive growl.

He waited a few seconds to let the tension build up before he took the few steps to the bed.

When he trailed his hands lightly over Mike’s firm round ass, he could feel the sub shiver under his touch.

He leaned forward and placed a kiss on each cheek, right in the middle of the faint pink blotches. Then he stepped back a little.

“I want you on your back, legs outstretched and spread and arms stretched out over your head. Grab the headboard.”

Mike immediately changed his position and Harvey could see how hard Mike was, his flushed pink cock bouncing a little against the taut skin of his stomach. While he watched, a drop of clear pre-
come oozed out of the slit and dripped on Mike’s stomach and Harvey licked his lips involuntarily.

“You’re pretty as a picture, Mike.”

Harvey sat down on the edge of the bed, facing his sub.

“You’ve earned yourself a reward for saving my ass and trying so hard to be my good boy.”

Mike nibbled at his lower lip in anticipation but otherwise held his position, his eyes staring intently into Harvey’s like an invisible connection was holding their gaze.

“You’re not allowed to move and you’re only allowed to speak if I ask a question. Noises are welcome, though. You will maintain eye contact at all times and you only have 5 minutes to come. The only thing you’ll get is my hand. And after that the previous rules apply until Wednesday evening. Got it?”

“Yes Sir.”

“What?”

“Green, Sir.”

“Stick your tongue out. I remember that you offered to lick my hand to make it slick when I made myself come after your punishment. Now you can do the same service for yourself.”

Harvey offered his right palm to Mike and the sub eagerly bathed it in his saliva, making it moist and slick, his tongue slipping wetly between his fingers and sucking at the fingertips playfully. When Harvey pulled his hand away he saw a slight regret in Mike’s eyes. Talk about oral fixation. With a little training, his boy will surely become a master cock-sucker.

“Your 5 minutes start now.”

Mike’s cock was grasped by Harvey’s strong wet hand and it took all of Mike’s willpower to keep his hips still. His eye’s locked onto Harvey’s, happy to obey the rule, since he was sure that, if he looked down at Harvey’s stroking hand on his dick, he would’ve lost it immediately. And if he wouldn’t be allowed to come for the next 3 days then he wanted to enjoy the next 5 minutes as best as he could and to their full extent.

As it was, it was hard enough for him to still his body and fight against the urge to close his eyes and throw his head back against the pillow. He wanted to lose himself in the sensation of Harvey’s strong fingers curled around his dick with perfect pressure, to shut every other of his senses off and just feel.

While Harvey jerked Mike’s hot twitching cock with practiced movements, giving it a little twist on every other upstroke, the sub’s mouth had fallen open and he started to moan between taking in large gulps of breath.

Harvey remembered how much Mike liked it when he talked to him which was no hardship for him, since he enjoyed talking to his subs during a scene very much. And Mike’s responses only stoked his own desire.

“Look at my pretty boy. So desperate and horny. Do you think that you will make it within the 5 minutes?”

“Yes, Sir,” Mike panted out. “That won’t be a problem.”
The Dom arched an eyebrow. “One of these days I will put a cock-ring on you and then I will play with you for hours. Desperate and needy is such a good look on you.”

Mike groaned as he imagined his cock trapped in leather or metal, unable to come, while Harvey would play with him relentlessly and this sweet little fantasy was nearly enough to push him over the edge.

Harvey’s left hand found its way up to Mike’s chest and began to play with his nipples. His fingers plucked and circled and pinched and swiped over the sensitive patches of skin until both buds were hard and a dark pink, a stark contrast to Mike’s fair skin. He could see how much his sub liked the abuse of his nipples and how much it cost him to keep his torso still, not pushing into Harvey’s touch.

“I guess you’re ready to come on my command, Mike. What do you think?”

“Oh, yes, Sir. Ready whenever you want me.”

*Screw the 5 minutes. He wanted to come now.*

The tendons on Mike’s neck became visible under his flushed skin and Harvey could see the carotid artery pulsing as the sub’s blood pressure increased with his ever growing arousal.

“I want you to wait a few more moments, Mike. You’re so beautiful like this. I want to enjoy you a little while longer just like this.”

Mike whined at that announcement and panted harder but Harvey could see how much he tried to obey him. Oh, he would definitely use a cock-ring on his boy but before he would put it on him, he would make Mike beg for it.

His strokes became quicker, the teasing hand on the nipples rougher, and when he pulled his hand firmly down the shaft and then swiped his thumb over the angry red cockhead, Mike wailed and Harvey took pity on him.

“Now Mike. Come!” At the same time he pinched the right nipple hard and pulled at it a little.

Mike held his breath for a moment and all his muscles clenched up. Then, after a couple of heartbeats the tension got unbearable and he exhaled. His cock erupted in Harvey’s stroking fist, the first splatter of come nearly reaching up to Mike’s chest and Harvey’s still plucking fingers.

“Yes, that’s it Mike. Come for me. Give it all up for me.” Harvey finally let go of the sore red patch of skin and placed his left hand lightly on Mike’s balls. He could feel them pulsing under his fingertips as they produced more and more semen and pumping it upwards through Mike’s shaft until the sticky liquid spilled over Harvey’s still teasing fingers.

“Argh…!”

His fingers eased up a little, now only lightly trailing over Mike’s spent and slowly softening shaft, draining the last drops of come from the slit. He could see that Mike was slowly coming down from the high of his climax.

“Do you have any idea, how beautiful you are like this? If I could, I would keep you at my condo like this, all flush and fucked out with come all over you. I would like to take a picture of you like that. I could frame it and hang it on my living-room wall. What do you think?”

Mike laughed a little at that, giddy with all the released hormones.
“I’m sure that your visitors would be a little taken aback by your taste in art, Sir.”

Harvey chuckled too. “Yes, you’re right. That would probably be a little too much advertisement regarding my tastes.” He finally let go of Mike’s cock and went to the bathroom.

Mike could hear the water running and after a minute Harvey was back. He had wetted one of Mike’s old and threadbare towels and now used it to wipe all the come off his skin. Then he leaned a little forward, placed a playful little kiss on Mike’s nose and got up again.

“Don’t forget your appointment with my GP tomorrow. And remember, no touching yourself or coming till Wednesday evening. Now sleep. You look like you need it.”

Before Mike could react to that, Harvey had made his way towards the door and left his apartment. Slowly Mike let go of the headboard and lowered his arms.

What the hell had just happened?

He shook his head slightly, all of a sudden bone-tired. But he forced himself to get up since he needed to take a piss and lock his door. When he got back into bed he remembered just in time to set his alarm before his head hit his pillow and the post-climax bliss sent him straight into dreamland.

Chapter End Notes

As always, this chapter is not beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own. I’d love to read your comments and Kudos is highly appreciated.
“Your balls are in my fist,” Jessica chuckled. “Really Harvey. I thought Waterhouse might have a stroke then and there.”

The Managing Partner had invited Louis and Harvey to her office and now they were replaying the more memorable scenes from their meeting with the CEO of RSC Network.

“I think it was your remark that I was speaking for the firm that gave him the rest. After all, he had expected you to put me in my place.”

Harvey was very satisfied that Jessica had backed him up although he knew that the manner of his dressing down of Waterhouse could be seen as controversial. But the CEO was a natural bully and needed to be dealt with in the harshest possible way. Men like him would see politeness as pussyfooting and weakness. So he’d put Waterhouse down in a firm and quick manner and the man hadn’t known what’d hit him.

“Well, I might have phrased it somewhat different but your little speech was quite effective in relaying to him our thoughts regarding his attempted con.”

Jessica gave Harvey a fond little smile. She knew that Harvey had been the best candidate between the tree of them to put Waterhouse in his place and she had no qualms about leaning back and letting Harvey lead.

As a passionate chess-player she knew that every piece had its own use and Harvey was her rook, bulldozing obstacles in a straightforward fashion. She on the other hand liked to think of herself as a knight. Nearly impossible to calculate what she might do next. And Louis, well Louis was, she hated to admit it, most of the time a pawn. Very predictable and when push came to shove she was prepared to sacrifice him first.

Jessica and Harvey became aware that Louis hadn’t participated in their play-by-play of the meeting. Instead, the plump man with the permanent sweat-shiny forehead displayed a sour expression like he’d just bitten into a lemon.

“What do you think, Louis? Aren’t you satisfied of how this potential catastrophic situation was dealt with?” Jessica wanted to know.

“Well, I’m not sure if it was the best course of action to terminate the retainer-agreement with RSC Network after the merger had been signed. After all, their billables are not to be sneezed at. And just because Harvey got into a cat-fight with their CEO is no reason to discontinue the contract. You could’ve let me run point instead of Harvey in the future. I could handle Waterhouse. In fact, I think we would’ve gotten along splendidly.”

_Mutual enemies_, was implied in the sour look he gave Harvey but Louis wouldn’t dare to attack
Harvey openly in front of Jessica. He’d tried that once too often and now had finally gotten the message that Harvey was, for the time being at least, Jessica’s golden boy and as such almost untouchable.

Jessica sighed inwardly. Trust Louis to make it only about the money.

“Louis, we need to send a signal that our firm doesn’t operate in bad faith. I want to get the word out that we’d rather lose a client, and a huge one at that, than to lower our standards when it comes to contract-negotiation. And if Harvey hadn’t caught the doctored numbers just in time, we would’ve been liable to all sorts of lawsuits, not to speak of the damage to our reputation. We even could’ve been accused of accessory to fraud and both of you could’ve been disbarred. I’d rather lose a dodgy client any day than sacrifice our good standing. I have worked too hard on that after Daniel left the firm and Waterhouse was one of his clients. So, all I say is good riddance.”

She picked her glass of water up from the coffee table and took a dainty sip before she continued.

“And the last bill for the merger is a sweet goodbye gift and will not only find its way into the firms account but also get you and Harvey a nice little bonus.” If Jessica had thought that she could placate Louis with the prospect of some extra money, she was disappointed because true to his leery and jealous persona, Louis wouldn’t let it go.

“I’m sure you’re right, Jessica,” Louis conceded only because he could see that Jessica was adamant in letting Waterhouse go. “But what I don’t understand is, how our Mr. I-don’t-care-about-mergers-cause-they’re-boring was able to spot the doctored numbers? After all, finances are my area of expertise and I only spotted the problem because it was already highlighted.”

Harvey gave Louis his trademark grin. “Louis, just because I don’t like mergers doesn’t mean I couldn’t do them in my sleep.”

He knew that he should at least feel a little bad about selling Mike’s achievement as his own, but he couldn’t tell Jessica, that a bike messenger whom he had taken on as sub and whose ass he had spanked several times now, had seen the confidential papers and with one quick glance had spotted the discrepancy. Jessica would most likely set his desk on fire. Louis on the other hand, oh it would be fun to see Louis’ reaction if he’d ever be confronted by his own little genius.

“That’s not an answer, Harvey.” It seemed like Louis once more was in the mood to do a little sparing with Harvey. Well, that was fine by him. Louis rarely made it to round two.

“Well, if you really want to know, a little puppy I was taking care of during the weekend made a mess of the files when the folder dropped accidentally from my desk to the floor and when the puppy was done sniffing around the pages, he pointed his little puppy-nose straight at the doctored numbers. All I had to do was rewrite the merger. Happy now?”

During the little monologue Harvey’s grin had spread over his whole face, laughter lines now prominent around his eyes, which seemed to infuriate Louis even more.

Harvey actually thought about what kind of face Mike would make if he could hear him now. Would he be aroused or offended that Harvey likened him to a puppy to his colleagues? When he called him that in private Mike seemed to like the pet-name very much.

An angry inhale disrupted Harvey’s train of thought.

“You know what, Harvey? You can mock me all you like but we both know that you’re full of shit. No way did you find the numbers on your own. I know that it was this PI of yours who must’ve
tipped you off. But that’s just like you. Claiming someone else’s achievements as your own.”

With that, he stood up, pulled his jacket straight, nodded towards Jessica and left the office in a huff.

“What bee has gotten into his bonnet?” Harvey asked innocently, like Louis was totally overreacting.

“Mocking Louis is not nice, Harvey,” Jessica chided. She was used to playing referee between these two but sometimes it annoyed her that Harvey didn’t seem to be able to play nice.

“But he makes it so easy.” The wide grin stayed in place.

“Well, he’s right on one account. So, how did you spot the numbers? And don’t you dare repeat that puppy-story. You know that you can’t bullshit me.”

“You don’t have enough faith in my abilities to believe I have spotted them on my own? Jessica, you wound me.”

She gave him that sphinxlike little smile that told him she believed not a word he said.

“Fine. Keep the secret to yourself, then. Maybe it’s better if I can claim ignorance. The important thing is that they got spotted. But if you did something untoward….” She left the rest of the sentence open so that Harvey could fill in the blanks with his own imagination, which was somehow so much worse than if she’d made an open threat.

Hurriedly he seized the opportunity to change the topic. He wiped his grin from his face and gave the Managing Partner one of his most sincere looks, the one he usually reserved for nervous clients or tax auditors.

“Actually, there is one other thing that I wanted to talk to you about.”

Jessica rolled her eyes. This sincere look on Harvey’s face could only mean two things. Either he wanted something from her or he’d done something he shouldn’t have and needed her forgiveness. She decided to pursue the most likely scenario.

“Whom did you make cry this time, Harvey? Do I have to send you to HR again? Remind me, how often have you done the course on acceptable workplace behavior already?”

This time he didn’t need to pretend to be hurt. His workplace behavior was at least better than Louis’ whom the associates hated with a fiery passion. Of him, they were merely afraid and in awe. And the last time someone had cried because of him must have been a couple of weeks ago at least. And he was quite sure that the female associate had boyfriend troubles and that’s why she’d cried when he’d barked at her for missing some things in the briefs he’d given her for proof reading.

“It’s nothing like that. Why do you always think the worst of me, Jessica?” The Managing Partner dismissed his wounded look. He’d get over it. He always did.

“Maybe because I’ve known you for more than 15 years?”

“Alright. I admit, I’ve done some things in the past that weren’t exactly, well, you know, but this is about something else entirely. So, I believe you will be very happy to learn that I have taken all your speeches regarding pro-bono work and how important it is for the firm to heart. I have decided to take on a case.”

Jessica eyed him suspiciously, remembering all the times Harvey had shied away from pro-bono work like the devil shied away from holy water. So she gave him the inquisitive eyebrow.
“Where’s the catch?”

“No catch. In fact, an honest to God David against Goliath tale, just the way you like it. Oh, and with the potential of gaining some new paying clients as well. And Beyer is also in the mix.”

“Beyer, as in the multi-billion dollar pharma-giant? And how did you manage to find this case, Harvey? You know that all pro-bono cases need to be approved and assigned by me.”

Harvey handed her the file Mike had compiled while Harvey had worked on the merger the previous night.

“That’s why I’m telling you now. Honestly Jessica, this is a good thing. The plaintiff is supporting his old and sick grandmother and the nursing home administrator is swindling him and using her as a lab-rat for Beyer. They’re doing a legitimate study on a new Alzheimer’s drug but the plaintiff, who is her legal guardian, didn’t sign her up for it. Someone forged the contract and pocketed all the money and on top he is billed huge amounts for a different medication which the patient doesn’t even take.”

Jessica took the file reluctantly but didn’t open it. “And how do you know about it? And don’t tell me any bullshit. You know I will be able to tell.”

Harvey had prepared a backstory because he couldn’t tell Jessica the truth. She knew a lot about his many skeletons but he doubted she knew about this particular inclination of his. And if she knew, which he wouldn’t put entirely past her, she would never talk about it with him. Some things were better left unspoken.

“During the time I had to clear up the mess with Velocity Data Solutions I was pulling an all-nighter. This kid came into my office to clean it. He’s part of the cleaning crew and somehow we got to talk. I don’t know why but I guess I was tired and my walls were down, but he made a comment on my music and before I knew it we were making conversation. It was nice and he seemed like a bright kid. Too bright to tell you the truth, so I had Vanessa investigate him, just to be sure that he wasn’t a spy for another firm. You know, like the thing a couple of years ago with Scott Bailey.”

Jessica nodded when she remembered the attempt at corporate espionage Harvey had discovered as a senior associate. One of the temporal legal secretaries had tried to steal confidential documents for a rival law firm and when Harvey had discovered the culprit and put an end to it, Jessica had fast-tracked him for Junior Partner as a reward.

“Long story short, he’s not a spy, just very bright with the stupid habit of making really bad life-decisions. Turns out the kid actually had a full ride at Columbia with the prospect of a full ride at Harvard as well before he got himself expelled. Well, anyway, I gave him my phone number that night because there’s just something in him… I guess that maybe I see in him the same potential you saw in me all these years ago. I didn’t hear from Mike again for a couple of days but yesterday evening he called and told me his story. He asked for my advice since he wanted to handle the situation himself but didn’t really know how. I had him come by my place and he told me about his grandmother and the bills for the medicine and what the nurse had told him. He also was able to take pictures of his grandmother’s patient file. I think there is a legitimate case here. And if the administrator did that to Mike’s Grammy, than I’m sure there are other patients as well.”

Jessica had leafed through the file while Harvey gave his explanation, fully capable of multi-tasking. Now, a slight smile began to play over Jessica’s full lips and Harvey knew that he had been made as soon as he saw it.

“Mike’s Grammy, is it? I think you must like the kid a great deal more than you let on when you call
his grandmother by his pet-name for her. And he came by your place yesterday, you say? Hm, I wonder if the name of the puppy you were taking care of yesterday isn’t Mike, too."

Her playful tone became suddenly steely and her dark eyes bore into his but the slight smile stayed on her lips which made her facial expression much more frightening.

“And don’t you dare lie to me, Harvey!”

Shit!

For a brief, very brief, moment he calculated the odds of lying himself out of this but Jessica knew him too well. So he tried something unexpected.

Harvey held his hands up slightly in a gesture of surrender. “Yes, you caught me. I confess. It was Mike who spotted that something was wrong with the RSC numbers.”

Now the smile was gone and the crease between the Managing Partner’s perfect brows displayed her discontent.

“And what for heaven’s sake made you show this kid the confidential files in the first place? Were you out of your mind? How could you break client confidentiality, Harvey? Haven’t I taught you better?”

He got why she was furious and so he told her everything that had happened the other night, minus the kinky stuff of course. So, as far as Jessica was concerned, he had taken Mike a little under his wing because he saw himself in the kid and wanted to help him.

“It was just pages full of columns of figures. Meaningless to anybody but Louis and me. I saw no harm in letting him put them back in order while I studied the pictures he’d taken. I didn’t knew that he’s a genius with numbers as well. Vanessa’s report only stated that he has an eidetic memory and he confessed that his auditory memory is nearly as good. How should I have known that he could spot the discrepancy with just a quick glance at a page packed full of numbers? But he saved us. And for that alone we owe him to take his case.”

During his whole explanation the Managing Partner had studied him intently. Harvey was almost sure that she didn’t spot that there was so much more going on between Mike and him. Almost.

“And do you still have Vanessa’s file on him?”

Harvey nodded, selected it on his phone and gave it to Jessica. Her manicured finger scrolled swiftly through the contents before handing it back to him.

After a long stretch of silence Jessica nodded once.

“Okay. I believe that you didn’t break confidentiality on purpose. But you broke it nonetheless. I’m sorely tempted to give the pro-bono to Louis just to teach you a lesson but I can see that this Mike Ross matters to you somehow and it’s good to see you care for somebody else for once. So, you have my permission to pursue the case and if you can sign some more clients, maybe make it a class-action lawsuit, then you have my blessing. Under one condition. The kid signs a non-disclosure agreement regarding RSC and we never speak a word about how the doctored numbers got discovered. Agreed?”

Harvey exhaled slowly, willing his poker-face to stay fixed. Since Jessica gave him another of her enigmatic smiles, he wasn’t quite sure if he’d pulled it off.
“Agreed.” He stood up after she’d handed the file back to him and made to leave the office. At the door he briefly turned around.

“Thank you, Jessica.”

He left a flummoxed Jessica Pearson behind, who tried to remember when Harvey Specter had last thanked her on behalf of someone else.

*******

Harvey’s phone beeped and when he opened his text-messenger-app he saw that Mike had sent him the picture of a greasy burger from a ShakeShack menu. Another beep sounded when a text message arrived.

(Mike 2:13 pm) *Please, Sir? Can I have some more?*

Harvey rolled his eyes. Although an orphan, Mike was neither starving nor living in a workhouse. But he would’ve been on his bike since around 8 am. The kid was thin as a rail and must by now be ravenous but Harvey decided to alter Mike’s lunch choice at least a little bit.

(Harvey 2:14 pm) *Okay Oliver, but instead of the fries take a salad. Drink water and get some fruit as dessert.*

Harvey could almost picture the eye-roll Mike would most likely be performing by now but his answer was impeccable.

(Mike 2:15 pm) *Thank you Sir.*

Harvey smiled. At breakfast-time Mike had sent him a picture of the Lucky Charms cereal box and Harvey had gracefully allowed him the sweet treat as well as the large mug of coffee. So far Mike had obeyed all his rules today. It seemed that a firm hand really was all the kid had needed.

(Harvey 2:16 pm) *Don’t forget your appointment at 6 pm. And I need you to swing by my office after that. I’ve got news regarding your case.*

(Mike 2:17 pm) *Alright, Sir. But what about your assistant? Won’t she be suspicious after last Friday? Or should I pretend to make another delivery?*

Harvey swallowed. Shit! He had completely forgotten about the little play they’d put on for Donna’s benefit. Well, he could only do one thing. Confess, put himself at her mercy and give her his AmEx for a spin around the shops.

(Harvey 2:18 pm) *Good point. I will need to put her in the loop.*

Rapid beeping of his phone followed his latest text.

(Mike 2:19 pm) *What?*

(Mike 2:19 pm) *You mean, tell her everything?*

(Mike 2:19 pm) *Sir?*
Harvey could understand why Mike felt uncomfortable with this but there was no way he could keep Donna in the dark, especially since Mike might become a constant in his life. And, unlike Jessica, Harvey knew that she knew at least a little bit about his more adventurous sex-life. He’d never told her but Donna had her ways to find things out.

(Harvey 2:20 pm) *Trust me, everything will be fine when Donna is on our side. But we need to get our story straight before you meet the other partners. We’ll figure something out. Just come by after you’d been at my GP’s. Now eat. See you later.*

*(Mike 2:21 pm) :-)*

**********

Harvey didn’t bother to hit the button on the intercom.

“Donna! Please come in for a moment when you have a little time.”

The redhead immediately left her cubicle and sat down in front of Harvey’s desk, crossing her long legs to better display her killer-heels.

“Are you feeling alright, Harvey?” Her face was showing a faux expression of concern.

“Yes, of course. Why are you asking?”

“Because you said please.”

“Oh, c’mon. I say please all the time.”

“No you don’t. So, what’s up? Jessica tore you a new one for getting crass with Waterhouse?”

“If you know about that than you know that Jessica backed me up and terminated RSC as a client.”

“Yeah, I never liked that weasel anyway. He was one of Hardman’s. So, what’s on your mind Harvey? You look a little like the dog ate your homework which would make me the teacher and I’m far too awesome to be a teacher.”

Harvey swiveled his chair a little to the left to look out of the window while he sorted out his thoughts.

“Have I ever told you how valuable you are as my assistant and… friend?”

She gave him a suspicious look. “You’re not dying, Harvey, are you? Your doc found a spot of cancer last Thursday?”

“What? No, of course not. Can’t I just tell you, every once in a while, how much you mean to me?”

“Okay. That’s it Harvey. You better fess up right now.”

Harvey stood up to pour himself a scotch. After he fixed a glass for himself he looked questioningly at Donna, showing her the crystal carafe with the amber liquid. She nodded.

“Better make it a large one, because frankly, you’re starting to scare me, Harvey.”
He placed her glass on the desk and sat back down.

After they both had taken a sip he finally had enough courage to throw himself at her mercy.

“You remember the bike-messenger from last Friday?”

“You mean the poor puppy with the beautiful eyes and hot ass you’ve torn to shreds?”

“Yes, him. Well, I’ve met him before. And I wasn’t tearing him to shreds. We were just... you know, putting on a show. Sorry.”

When Donna stayed silent and only stared at him with a stony expression he sighed. She wasn’t going to make that easy for him.

“I know him.” His eyes bore into hers, one eyebrow raised, like he was trying to deliver the subtext via telepathy.

“Oh! You mean you know him, know him?” She waggled her eyebrows suggestively.

Harvey nodded. “I met him at a club. About 4 weeks ago.”

“You go to clubs? Aren’t you a little old for that? Don’t tell me that you were dancing.” Her voice was only half mocking him.

“Not that kind of club. The other kind.”

Donna’s eyes suddenly grew wide when understanding dawned on her.

“You haven’t done that in a while. At least not to my knowledge.” She thought for a moment. “Well, at least that explains why you’ve been in such a good mood for the last couple of days.”

“Yes, we’ve come to an... arrangement.”

She gave him a mischievous smile.

“You know, I never asked which... role you’re assuming when you do your... thing. They say that very powerful men often like to be put down and... you know.” She let the sentence hang unfinished in the air between them while her eyes trailed over him in a calculating manner and her hand made a little slapping gesture.

Now he knew how women must feel when men undressed them with their eyes. He actually felt a little dirty.

Harvey put on his sternest voice to stop that notion of hers immediately. “Don’t even go there. I’m not Louis. You know full well which role I assume in this kind of... thing. And anyway, you’ve seen Mike and there can be no doubt about his role in all that.”

Well, she couldn’t argue that point. The kid had submissive oozing out of every pore of him.

“Mike. Cute name for that puppy.” She leaned forward a little and whispered conspiratorially. “And such a nice ass.”

Harvey grinned a little as memory flashed a picture of a fair firm ass with pinkish handprints before his inner eye. “You have no idea.”

“So, do you... you know.” She did that little spanking motion again and for a moment Harvey was
sure that she could see right into his head. But he wasn’t prepared to share bed-stories with his assistant.

“I’m not discussing our private life with you. Suffice it to say that he spent the weekend and later today he will come by the office.”

Donna leaned back in the visitor’s chair. “So, that’s why you’re telling me all this now. Why did he come by last Friday? And why the show you two put on for me? By the way Mister, I hope you know that you need to pay for that.”

He knew that had been coming and with a resigned little sigh Harvey retrieved his wallet and handed her the black AmEx. “Knock yourself out. But try to stay within 5 figures. And he came by because I’d given him some… homework, and he wanted to deliver it to me in person. I wasn’t expecting him or I would’ve warned you somehow.”

Donna snatched the card and stored it somewhere in her cleavage-region.

“Homework? What kind of homework?” Before he could explain she figured it out herself. “Oh… that kind of written homework you need to do before you can do…” she winked at him. “Got it.”

“So, now you know why he wouldn’t hand the envelope to you.”

She looked a little disappointed. “I guess there is no chance that you would show it to me now? It’s just, now that you’ve taken me into your confidence, what could it hurt? And I’ve never actually seen one of these so it would be for educational purposes.”

Now he could see that she was truly mocking him.

“Donna, my life is not a soap-opera for your personal amusement.”

“Oh, but it could be.”

“Anyway, Mike is my new client and that’s why he’s coming by later.”

Now he’d really managed to confuse her.

“New client? But he’s a bike-messenger. Or was that a ruse as well?”

“No, he really is. But the nursing home his Grandmother is staying at is running a scam and he came to me for help, so I took his case pro-bono. Already cleared it with Jessica.”

She opened her eyes wide. “You told Jessica?”

Harvey rolled his eyes. “Of course not. Well, not the whole story.” He gave Donna the version he’d given Jessica, the official version that from now on would be their story of how they first met.

“Well, I suppose it is good that Jessica can deny any knowledge regarding your… kinkier activities,” Donna conceded. “Credible deniability and all that.”

She leaned a little forward and placed one hand lightly on his arm.

“So I take it that your… thing is on hold while you’re his lawyer. You know, anything else would be… questionable. But it’s a shame, really. You know that these kinds of lawsuits can drag themselves out over years.”

Harvey lifted his eyebrow. “I think that Mike and I have crossed the bridge commonly known as
questionable a couple of times that weekend already. And he’s not a paying client so the ethic-rules of the bar-association can’t be applied so strictly.”

“You tell yourself that, Harvey. Whatever lets you sleep at night.”

“Thank you very much, but I slept like a baby.”

“Yeah, I hear that male stamina dwindles at around 40 so whenever you need to take a nap, just let me know and I’ll clear your schedule.” She gave him another of her suggestive winks.

Harvey handed her the folder of Mike’s case, ignoring her jab at him and his manly abilities.

“Here, create a proper case file for this and acquaint yourself with the details. And Donna, I would appreciate it if you could be nice to Mike. He’s a little worried already and I don’t want him to balk. After all, it’s not his fault that I made him lie to you.”

Donna swallowed down her snide remark. I was good seeing Harvey care for someone and not being afraid to show it.

“You got it, boss. And kicking puppies is not my style anyway.”

Taking the file with her to create the necessary paperwork, she turned on her heels and flicked her long hair back before she left his office.

Harvey exhaled slowly only when he could be sure that Donna’s back was turned. Well, that hadn’t gone too bad. But he needed to see next month credit-card bill until he could be entirely sure about that.

**********

When Mike arrived at Donna’s cubicle with his bike-helmet in his hand and his hair sticking up in every direction, he was a little nervous. Harvey’s assistant was a beautiful woman but somehow she put the fear of god into him. It had taken all his resorts to resist her last time and in his mind he’d given her the nickname Cerberus since she’d guarded Harvey’s office with such a fierce passion. Taking a page out of Psyche’s book, he’d brought her a gift.

Last Friday he’d noticed that the pink orchid on her desk had only one blossom left and when he’d by chance driven by a florist shop on his way to the Pearson Hardman building, which had exactly the same orchids in their display-window, he’d bought her a miniature one as a peace-offering. The little flower had been securely wrapped up in paper and he’d pushed his bike for the remaining two blocks so that it wouldn’t get damaged. Now, the little flower was sitting safely in his helmet while his right hand raked nervously through his sweaty hair.

With hesitant steps he closed the remaining space until he stood right in front of her work-station and gave a nervous little cough, since she was intently staring at the screen of her computer. He wasn’t sure if she was ignoring him on purpose or if she really was absorbed in her work. When she finally looked up at him, he’d expected a scowl. Instead, her face slowly lit up and she gave him a friendly smile.

“You must be Mike. Nice to meet you officially. I’m Donna.” The redhead stood up and walked around her three walls to greet him with a handshake. He hadn’t expected such a warm welcome and
hastily rubbed his sweaty palm against his thigh before he shook her hand.

“Hm, hi. I’m Mike. But you already know that. So…ehm, nice to meet you too, again I mean, since we’ve already met. But now it’s nicer and…”

He could feel his face getting red under her still friendly but somewhat inquiring gaze. She seemed to study him with such intent and he felt very uncomfortable, not knowing how much Harvey had told her. Out of the corner of his eyes he could see Harvey sitting at his desk, watching their encounter with a bemused expression and he decided to seek refuge with his Dom.

“Can I…?” He nodded a little in Harvey’s direction.

Her gaze became a little softer. “Sure thing, Mike. Just go in. He has been waiting for you for a long time.” She gave him a little wink and Mike was at a loss.

“But he knew that I had an appointment at 6,” he tried to defend himself. “I came as quickly as I could.”

Donna touched his arm lightly. “I meant he had been waiting for someone like you for a long time.”

Then she turned around and sat back at her computer once more but not without eyeing Mike’s butt with a connoisseur’s appreciation. Bike messenger! Not bad. Maybe she should change her hunting grounds.

Mike had taken a few steps into Harvey’s office when he suddenly remembered and hastily turned around. He retrieved the wrapped-up flower from his helmet and shyly offered it to Donna.

Now she was truly baffled. Nobody could say that her mouth actually gaped open, well nobody who wanted to stay in her good graces, but it had been a long time since she’d been so surprised. When she’d pried the wrapping-paper off and saw the miniature twin to her wilting big orchid she couldn’t suppress a small laughter of delight.

“How did you know?”

Mike rubbed his hand once more through his hair and his tongue darted out quickly to wet his lower lip. He gave her a little embarrassed shrug.

“Well, last Friday, when I came by, I saw that your orchid had only one blossom left and when I went by this florists earlier I saw these orchids and I thought, well, since I had lied to you and… you know, as an apology and anyway I just thought that you might like it.”

Donna, the tough, battle-seasoned assistant of Harvey-I-don’t-give-a-shit-Specter had to swallow hard. At that very moment this little flower, bought by this kid with so much thoughtfulness, meant so much more to her than any apology-shopping-spree she could indulge in with Harvey’s AmEx.

She carefully put the little flower next to its big brother than stood up and before Mike could process what was happening, she’d wrapped him up in an embrace. He felt a little uncomfortable since he had been on his bike since the morning and surely didn’t smell so good and Harvey was certainly watching them. But Donna’s embrace felt so honest and sweet that all his previous apprehensions simply vanished.

“Thank you Mike,” Donna said softly. “Now I know for sure what he sees in you. You’re very sweet.” She stepped back a little, breaking their embrace but a hand reached out to his cheek and petted him briefly before she got herself back under control.
“Now, don’t let him wait any longer. I can see him fidgeting behind his desk like a lovesick teenager.”

Mike nodded and went back into Harvey’s office. The lawyer gave him a stunned little smile.

“It seems like you’re forgiven.”

“Yes, Sir. Seems like it.”

“You know that you’ve just made a friend for life?”

Mike was confused. “But, it was just a small little orchid.”

Before Harvey could reply he heard Donna’s voice behind him. “But it was a very sweet and thoughtful gesture that you didn’t need to make since you’re my boss’ boyfriend. It’s not about the money you spent, it’s about the thought.”

“If that’s the case, how about you giving me my AmEx back and I buy you flowers instead?”

Donna laughed. “Nice try, Harvey. By the way, if you scare this puppy away, it’ll take more than your AmEx to get back into my good graces, if you manage it at all. And now I go home and leave you two alone. And you will be all alone since nobody on this floor is working anymore as I accidentally noticed when I went to the ladies the long way round a little earlier.”

Having had the last word, she turned around and left them alone.

For a moment they stayed silent, just looking at each other.

Then they both spoke at the same time.

“Have you been to the doctor?”

“Should I kneel, Sir?”

Both of them chuckled a little but it was Harvey who spoke again.

“Stay in the chair for now. So, how was the appointment?”

Mike showed him the inside of his arm where a little Band-Aid was sticking to his skin to cover the needle-mark.

“So far everything’s well. The test results will be in on Wednesday late afternoon or Thursday morning. I told them that they should e-mail them to you, Sir.”

Harvey nodded approvingly. That meant the next weekend he could have his boy bareback when everything was in order.

Then he opened a folder and slid several sheets of paper across his desk.

“I need you to sign these.”

Mike read the first page and signed the addendum to their contract. The next pages were a letter of engagement, basically hiring Harvey as his lawyer with it while promising that he wouldn’t sue Pearson Hardman for misconduct if they should lose his case and again he signed without hesitation. When he came to the third document he got confused. “A non-disclosure regarding RSC? I don’t understand, Sir.”
Harvey explained to him how he’d accidentally screwed up and that the Managing Partner had insisted on this. Mike could understand why Harvey’s boss had been furious and signed the non-disclosure agreement too.

“Was that the reason why you wanted me to come by today?” He gestured at the paperwork.

“Yes and no. I told Jessica about your case and she allowed me to take it on pro-bono as you can see from the engagement-letter. I want to go over it with you to explain what we’re going to do next. Oh, and you need this.”

He slid a much smaller slip of paper across his desk and when Mike picked it up he saw that it was a cashier’s check for 25,000 $ from Pearson Hardman’s accounts. Mike’s eyes bulged a little when he saw the figure and the kid opened his mouth like he wanted to say something but no sound came out.

Harvey could see in Mike’s face the onslaught of all the different emotions that the 25 grand triggered so he hastened to clarify his motives before Mike would come to the wrong conclusions.

“Don’t freak out. You’re going to pay us back after I’ve won your case. But your Grammy needs to stay at the nursing home and this will buy us some time to set all the necessary wheels in motion. This is not charity Mike, it’s strategy.”

That seemed a sensible course of action so Mike nodded without arguing and stored the check carefully in his wallet. It felt weird that all of a sudden he needn’t worry if his Grammy had a roof over her head tomorrow.

Harvey stood up and went to the couch, settling down comfortably. “So, let’s talk about what’s going to happen next.”

Mike stood up from the visitor’s chair and went to Harvey but remained standing. “You can sit down, Mike.” The kid’s gaze shifted from Harvey’s face to the spot right beside his feet where it lingered longingly for a second before he looked at the chair next to the couch.

“Or you can kneel, if you prefer. But I need your full attention, Mike. No drifting away.”

The kid licked his lower lip and nibbled at it a little, seemingly unsure of what to do. What he wanted to do though was written all over his face.

“Alright puppy.” Harvey placed a pillow at the floor. “But I want you to look at me. I need to be sure that you understand everything I tell you.”

Mike started to roll his eyes but caught himself just in time that Harvey could let it go without reprimanding him. Then the kid sank to his knees, facing Harvey. His hands found their position at the small of his back and Harvey saw that Mike’s posture had improved noticeably.

His hand swiftly petted Mike’s messy hair to show his approval and then he explained to Mike what would happen in the next couple of days.

One of the things was that Mike needed to pay the bill so that MacDougal wouldn’t be able to throw Mike’s Grammy to the curb. Another thing was that Mike needed to come in during office hours for a deposition. They needed his official statement that he never signed the contract with Beyer. After that Harvey would make an appointment with Mason & Unger, the law firm that represented Beyer and let them know that one of their partners in the Alzheimer’s study for Asaxepct was dodgy and watch them panicking. Harvey already looked forward to that.

Mike listened attentively while Harvey laid out the whole battle plan. It dawned on him that he
would’ve never managed to take on MacDougal on his own. The administrator would’ve most likely gone to Beyer and discredited Mike, making it out as if Mike would try to blackmail them or something like that. And with his shady past as a liar and cheater he would’ve most likely succeeded.

Harvey on the other hand had the right connections and was able to see the bigger picture. He would go to Beyer first, showing them the evidence of MacDougal’s fraudulent activities. And he would sent his PI, Vanessa, to snoop around the nursing home and see whether Mike’s Grammy was the only resident that had been signed up for the study under false pretenses.

While he listened to Harvey, Mike also tried to pay attention to his pose and he became aware how much it excited him to kneel for Harvey. And even more so in this office with the glass walls where everybody could see him.

He’d never thought that he liked the feeling of being exposed. When Steven had insisted that they play in the public room he’d almost balked but now, with Harvey, he had no problem with people seeing him kneeling at Harvey’s feet.

He wished that he could be naked for Harvey now, so that his Dom could see how much he enjoyed this. And it was not solely his dick, although he was already half hard and working his way up to a fully grown boner.

He enjoyed it also on an intellectual level. Kneeling here like this made him Harvey’s good boy, made him belong to this handsome, strong, powerful man. It was a way for Mike to show Harvey his devotion and knowing that Harvey liked that too, that this wasn’t a one-sided thing only for Mike’s benefit, made it so much hotter.

He was Harvey’s sub and Harvey was his Dom. They were like two sides of a coin. Ying and Yang. It was like the owned each other, each of them reveling in the role they could play for the other. It was exhilarating, really.

Mike became aware that Harvey had been silent for a while now and he shifted his full attention back to him.

“You were a million miles away, Mike.” Harvey’s voice sounded very gentle, almost like he had seen what Mike had been thinking of.

“Sorry, Sir. It’s just, I was thinking that this feels so right. Me kneeling for you I mean. I only wish I could be naked for you.”

Harvey’s lips twitched a little. “Do you now?” He kept his tone neutral but as past experience had taught him, that wouldn’t be enough to discourage Mike from getting himself into trouble again.

The sub licked his lips and a blush crept over his face. “Yes, Sir. Than you could see how hard I’m for you. How much it turns me on to be like this for you.”

The Dom’s eyes shifted down to Mike’s crotch, where his now fully erect cock strained against the thin fabric of the bike-shorts.

“Have you touched yourself today, Mike?” Maybe Mike would get the hint if Harvey reminded him of the rules.

Mike shook his head. “No, Sir. Well, only when I showered and dressed but not in a pleasurable way. And sometimes I had to adjust myself during biking but I did it only when necessary.”

“So, what you’re telling me is that you’ve been my good boy today?” Harvey’s face stayed friendly,
the slight smile still playing over his lips. If Mike had been more experienced he’d smelled the trap.

“Yes, Sir. For you.”

“And what do you want from me now, Mike? Do you want a reward for being good for me?”

“I… you said yesterday that you could change the rules if recent events would warrant it. Maybe me being good for you would warrant a touch?”

“Mike, are you begging me to touch you?” Harvey shifted forward in his seat gazing intently in Mike’s eyes, willing him to use his brain.

Mike shivered all over. “Oh, yes Sir. Please touch me. Wherever you want. My cock, my ass, my nipples. I’m all yours.”

Harvey stood up and walked towards the windows. For a moment he watched the city deep below him. Mike was young and eager but so quick to forget the rules. Harvey turned around, watching Mike who still knelt in front of the sofa although he was looking in his direction.

“You told me that your auditory memory is almost as good as your eidetic memory. Is that true, Mike?”

The sub seemed surprised. “Yes Sir. I wouldn’t lie to you.”

“Then I want you to recall what I told you before I put you in the corner. And what I told you before I’d jerked you off yesterday evening. Verbatim if you can.”

“You said: For today and tomorrow you are not allowed to touch yourself in a pleasurable way or to make yourself come in any other way. And you’re not allowed to… to beg me for it either or… to try to initiate anything like that.”

Mike looked suddenly dumbstruck, realizing where this would lead. His adam’s-apple bopped as he swallowed down the rising dread but he carried on nonetheless because Harvey had asked him to.

“And before you’d jerked me off you said: You’re not allowed to move and you’re only allowed to speak if I ask a question. Noises are welcome, though. You will maintain eye contact at all times and you only have 5 minutes to come. The only thing you’ll get is my hand. And after that the previous rules apply until Wednesday evening.”

“So, do you see your problem, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir. I’ve violated your rules when I told you I was hard and wanted you to touch me. Begged you to touch me. I’m so sorry, Sir. I forgot.”

“Yes, Mike. That’s your problem. When you’re horny you forget the rules. And I can’t allow that.”

Mike hung his head, suddenly not able to keep eye-contact with Harvey. There hadn’t been one day since their first scene in this office when he hadn’t screwed up in some way.

“I want you to stand up, go to my desk, drop your shorts and bend over it.” Harvey’s voice was very low and sounded almost pensive.

The sub came to his feet and obeyed his Dom instantly. He braced his palms against the cool glass-surface of the desk and pushed his bare ass out. Then he waited, and waited. He could hear Harvey moving behind him but he didn’t dare turn around. The surface of the desk showed Mike the image
of a young man with a haunted expression and huge sad eyes and he couldn’t stand to look at his own mirror-image. All he could see was the failure he was, so he closed his eyes firmly.

The light touch in the small of his back surprised him. The palm slid up his spine under his t-shirt till it was situated between his shoulder blades, eliciting only a little pressure. Then the other hand rubbed over his ass in a circular movement.

“I would much more like to spank you for play. I think we would both enjoy that so much more.”

“I’m so sorry Sir.” His voice sounded small and child-like.

“I know Mike. But you need to learn to remember such things. So, you get 3 slaps. And you know the rules for punishment. I want you to recite them for me before you tell me your color.”

“I am to count the strikes but otherwise I have to stay silent. My color is green Sir.”

“Hand me the ruler, Mike. Since it will be only 3 strikes, I will take it up a notch.”

Mike’s eyes searched the desk until he found the long wooden ruler which was lying beside Harvey’s laptop. He retrieved it and stuck his hand behind his back to hand it to Harvey. Suddenly he started to shiver. What would the ruler feel like? Harvey’s hand had been bad yesterday and surely a ruler wielded with full force would be so much worse. He’d been relieved when Harvey had announced that he would get only 3 slaps but now… oh god. Now he was really afraid. Before his fear could drag him down any further gentle hands pulled him upwards and turned him around.

“Mike. Look at me.” He shifted his eyes upwards to meet Harvey’s.

“Do you trust me, Mike?”

He nodded. “Yes, Sir. I do.”

Harvey held up the ruler. “I know that you can take 3 strikes with the ruler, Mike. I know that. I wouldn’t do anything to you that you couldn’t handle. And I know that you need to ride your bike later. I promise that you will be able to do so.” Harvey’s voice sounded so sure about that and Mike’s fear lessened. If Harvey was sure that he could handle it, than he could do it.

“Color?”

“Green, Sir.”

Harvey’s hand briefly touched his cheek, thumb caressing his cheekbone with one slow swipe.

“Turn around and assume position.”

As soon as Mike had bent himself over the desk again, the steadying hand between his shoulder-blades was back. He pressed his sweaty palms firmly against the cool glass briefly thinking that he would be the one who would wipe them away in a few hours.

He could feel the wooden ruler tapping against his ass lightly once and then the first strike hit home, striking both cheeks at once.

“One,” he panted out as the sharp initial pain dulled and flared out until it faded away. Before it was entirely gone, the second strike hit a little lower.

“Two!” He hissed the word because this time the sting was more intense like Harvey had used a little more force and the pain didn’t fade away as quickly as before.
The last strike hit him where butt met thigh, his sit-spot and this one hurt like a mother-flacker.

“Three.” He was a little breathless as his brain tried to process the pain but the three strikes weren’t enough to overwhelm him with endorphins and his eyes stayed dry this time.

The ruler clattered against the glass of the desk when Harvey tossed it away and a warm firm palm soothed the pain away.

“Such a nice shade of red. You have no idea, how beautiful your freshly spanked ass looks, Mike.”

He stayed in position while Harvey appreciated his work a little while longer, all the while stroking Mike’s abused skin.

“I need to stash a bottle of the lotion in my desk,” the Dom said, more to himself than to Mike.

After a while he took his hands off Mike and stepped back.

“Turn around and put your shorts back on.” After Mike was fully clothed again, his dick still hard, Harvey stepped closer and pulled Mike into an embrace, trailing his lips over Mike’s right temple.

“Forgiven and forgotten,” he murmured against Mike’s soft messy hair. “But you need to remember the rule until Wednesday evening. I don’t want to have to punish you again, Mike.”

“Yes, Sir. I don’t want that either” Suddenly his stomach rumbled and Harvey laughed out loud.

“Do you have a lion hidden in there?” He ended the embrace and looked at his rumpled sub with fond eyes.

“Sorry, Sir. I haven’t had dinner, yet.”

Harvey grinned at him. “Well, the least I can do is feed you. Do you know the little diner two blocks down, corner with Lexington Avenue? They have great sandwiches. And their salads are delicious. My treat.”

Mike grinned back, the pain in his ass almost forgotten. “How could I say no to that, Sir?”

Chapter End Notes

This story isn’t beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

I would love to read your comments and Kudos is highly appreciated.

Thank you for reading and sticking with this already very long story. There are another 30k words or 5 chapters already written and although I have a vague notion how my story will end, I’m nowhere near getting there. So thank you so much for your patience.
The first thing Mike did on Tuesday morning after leaving his apartment was to visit his bank and cash Pearson Hardman’s check into his account. He’d had a nightmare, dreaming that he’d lost his wallet with the check in it so getting rid of it was a huge relief.

The second thing he did was mail the check from his own account for Grammy’s bill to the nursing home.

The third thing was sending an e-mail to Schmidt Facility Management with his resignation. He offered to fulfill his two weeks’ notice but their reply only was that he shouldn’t bother.

So, for the rest of the week he actually had some free time and could sleep a whole night without getting up in between his two jobs. Harvey had known about his plan, had actually encouraged him to give up the cleaning job last night when they talked about it over dinner.

Mike still wanted to apply for a job at a catering service since money was always scarce but now, without the threat of Grammy’s eviction haunting him, he could take his time and look for a job that really suited him. And most likely he needn’t work every evening and still would make enough to get by. His life had changed in only a few days and now Mike waited for the other shoe to drop. He wasn’t used to having some luck and Fortuna had always been a fickle lady for him.

His work as a bike messenger sent him all over Manhattan and by not quite chance he was in the vicinity of Pearson Hardman around midday so he decided to send Harvey the mandatory second text of the day.

(Mike 1:26 pm) Hi Sir. I’m nearby. Had to make a delivery to the Seagram Building.

(Harvey 1:28 pm) Excellent. Meet me at the hot dog cart 54th corner with Lexington. I’ll buy you lunch.

(Mike 1:29 pm) Need 3 minutes.

Mike leaned his bike against a bike stand while he waited for Harvey. The sun was out and since it was almost summer he was happy that he could wear shorts and a t-shirt.
When he finally spotted his Dom weaving his way through the crowd of pedestrians it hit Mike how well Harvey looked in his suit, even so he must be very hot in it.

Compared to all the other suit-wearing manager-types on the street Harvey oozed cool and composed out of every pore like he could prevent his body from producing sweat through pure will-power. The only concession to the weather he’d made were his sunglasses.

Without thinking about it, Mike stood a little straighter as Harvey approached. Since they were in public he couldn’t greet Harvey like he wanted to so he decided to follow the lawyers lead.

“Hello Mike. What a great coincidence that you were in the area.”

Mike smiled a little sheepishly at that since it hadn’t been a coincidence. “Well, Si… Harvey. Actually, when the assignment came in I happened to be at the office and since I knew it was near your office I volunteered to take it. I hope you’re okay with that.”

Harvey only nodded, not sure if he should praise Mike for his quick thinking or reprimand him for pushiness.

“You like hotdogs?”

Mike grinned. “Is the pope catholic?”

“These are the best in New York.” Harvey turned to the cart and ordered two with all the trimmings, handing one of it to Mike.

They ate in companionable silence but Mike was aware that they made an odd picture. The high-power lawyer having a street-lunch with a scruffy bike messenger. When Harvey finished, he wiped his mouth and hands carefully with the napkin. Mike had somehow managed to get a blob of mustard on his sweaty t-shirt and was ineffectually dabbing at it, spreading the mess even more around.

“How on earth did you manage that?”

Mike couldn’t see the eye-roll behind the dark glasses his Dom was wearing, but the exasperated tone of voice made it clear what Harvey was thinking of Mike’s table manners. “I hope you can behave better when I take you to a fancy restaurant.”

Mike thought that this was a little unfair and since they were in the public he decided to chance his luck a little when he protested.

“This is the first time I spilled something in your presence and it happens to everyone once in a while. My parents and Grammy taught me how to behave in a restaurant so there’s nothing for you to worry.”

Harvey studied him for a moment. “Fair enough. I guess it can happen to everyone, well, except me of course.”

Now it was Mike’s turn to roll his eyes and this time he didn’t bother to hide it. “Of course.”

Harvey’s hand landed a quick slap on his ass before he resumed his composed posture. If Mike wouldn’t be feeling the lingering little pain of the slap he wouldn’t be sure that that slap actually had happened.

“How’s your butt?” Harvey asked innocently, reminding the sub that just because his misbehavior
couldn’t be punished right now didn’t mean that he would be scot free.

“Fine, Harvey, but thank you for asking.”

“Let’s keep it that way, shall we?”

Mike nodded his agreement and changed the subject.

“I mailed the check to the nursing home and handed in my notice with Schmidt. They don’t want me to carry out my two weeks’ notice so as of tonight, I can actually sleep more than a couple of hours at a time. But I’m still looking for another job.”

Harvey nodded his approval. “I asked Donna to contact our caterer. As soon as I hear something I’ll let you know. So, when does your shift normally end now that you only have your day-job?”

Mike shrugged. “It depends. But most days at around 6 since the majority of our clients close around that time.”

“That’s very good to know. Don’t make any plans this week. There will be some appointments that you need to keep. I’ll text you the details.”

Mike knew what kind of appointments Harvey was talking about and although he had no problems with being send to a hairdresser and he could endure a shopping tour as well, there was one thing he wasn’t looking forward to at all.

“What about tonight, Harvey? I was hoping that I could visit Grammy tonight.”

“Wouldn’t that make the administrator suspicious? Mike, you need to stick to your routine. We can’t show our hand prematurely. And you can’t tell her. The risk that she accidentally let it slip is too big.”

“Yes, I know. I won’t tell her. But Sunday she complained that she didn’t have any edible cookies and I thought I could just swing by and bring her some. And MacAsshole won’t be in after 6. Please, just a quick visit.”

Harvey could see how much Mike wanted to go and he gave in.

“All right. But be careful. And better make it quick.”

“Thank you. Oh, and by the way, she wants to meet you.”

Harvey raised his eyebrow and Mike told him about the conversation with his Grandmother.

“I’m sorry if this is awkward for you but she insisted and I can totally understand that you don’t want to meet her but I had to tell you.”

Harvey was a little at a loss. He hadn’t done the whole meet-the-parents-thing since he’d been a teenager and he wasn’t comfortable with meeting Mike’s Grammy at all. For one thing, they needed to fly under the radar and if word got out that Harvey Specter had visited Edith Ross, MacDougal would know that something was up. On the other hand, Grammy Ross was the only person in Mike’s life that truly mattered to him and he could see in his eyes how relieved he was that his Grammy had given them her blessing. Maybe he could swing by on a weekend, wear casual clothes and a base-cap so nobody would recognize him.

“It’s not that I don’t want to meet her, Mike. I just think that the time isn’t right. And we can’t tell her
what’s going on. It’s too risky. We might have to wait after we’ve closed the deal. But I’m happy for you that you have your Grammy’s approval.”

Harvey’s cell phone beeped and he took the call. “Yes, Donna. What is it? Tell them that I’ll be there in ten minutes.”

He hung up and briefly touched Mike’s cheek with his hand. “I’ll have to go. And you can go visit your Grammy as long as you’re careful. Call me afterward.”

Mike quickly looked around but nobody was in hearing-distance.

“Yes, Sir. Thank you.”

**********

The dreaded text came Wednesday at noon.

(Harvey 12:43 pm) Sugaring NYC. 215 5th Avenue. 6:30 pm. Shower before you go and take a cab. You don’t want to ride your bike afterward. Your appointment is with Natalie. She knows what to do.

Shit, shit, shit, shit! He really didn’t look forward to that.

(Mike 12:45 pm) I’ll try to get off work early Sir. Hope I can make it.

Maybe he could find an excuse not to go. If there would be a late delivery, maybe…

(Harvey 12:46 pm) Shall I call your boss and make sure about that?

Fuck. How did Harvey do that?

(Mike 12:47 pm) No Sir. I tell them the nursing home called. That will get me off on time.

(Harvey 12:48 pm) Good boy!

**********

Natalie was a petite blonde woman who eyed him with curiosity when she greeted him at the reception area. She seemed to sense his nerves as she was leading him into her little room and gave him a reassuring smile.

“First time?”

“Yeah. I’m a little nervous.”

“No reason for that. It’s just a little pain. And your Dom will love it when I’m done with you.”

Mike stopped in his tracks not sure that he’d heard right.
“Excuse me?” Was SUB written on his forehead in big red letters or how did she know?

Natalie sensed his confusion and explained with a smile.

“Don’t worry, I’m also in the scene. I do a lot of work for Natasha’s clients and I can see that your appointment was made by Harvey Specter. I’ve scened a couple of times with him. He’s nice.” She was so nonchalant about that as if talking about a BDSM-club was the most normal thing in the world. Well, for Mike it wasn’t.

“I… yes. He is. I’m sorry, but I’m confused. I didn’t know that he scenes with women.” He couldn’t quite keep the jealousy out of his voice.

She shrugged, sensing his irritation.

“I work part-time at Natasha’s as a paid sub. Harvey and I’ve scened a couple of times. I like pain, he likes giving it to me. But it’s just that and I haven’t seen him in a while. So, no reason to get your panties in a knot.”

Her explanation made him feel a little better but he was still suspicious.

“When did you last… you know? It’s just, between us it’s new and…”

“And you feel a little insecure. I get it. Don’t you worry.” She thought for a moment. “Last time I’ve seen him at Natasha’s must have been about 4 weeks ago. It was a Thursday I think. And before you ask, we never had sex, so stop scowling at me. With us it was always about meeting needs but not about deep feelings.”

Suddenly everything fell into place. His meeting with Steven had been on a Thursday roughly 4 weeks ago. So Harvey had been scening with Natalie before he met Mike. And why wouldn’t Harvey scene with women, even have sex with them? Harvey had told Mike that he was bi so he shouldn’t be surprised.

Natalie had gotten her equipment ready while Mike simply stood in the little room, at a loss what would happen next. The beautician glanced at her notes before she turned back to him.

“Strip. You’re getting the full treatment.”

“I… okay. And what does that mean, exactly? I thought, just down there…” He indicated to his groin, a deep blush spreading rapidly over his face.

At that she grinned. If the kid was as bashful in a scene, Harvey would have a lot of fun with this one. “Nope. Chest, armpits, thighs, ass, crack, sack and groin. The only body-hair that stays is at your arms and calves.”

“Do I have any say in that?” he tried to negotiate.

Natalie only smiled at him. “You could call Harvey, if you like.”

For a second Mike was tempted to do just that but he already knew how that call would end. Better give in right now without giving Harvey any reason to dress him down on the phone or punish him on top.

Reluctantly Mike started to take off his clothes. For once he took his time folding them up neatly before placing them on a chair in the corner. He tried to stall for as long as he could but eventually he ran out of clothes.
He turned around, folding his hands in front of his dick to keep at least some of his modesty. Natalie slowly circled him, assessing the areas that needed work.

“Stretch your arms over your head, please.”

He rolled his eyes and inhaled deeply before he did as she’d asked him. This was a whole new form of vulnerability and it sucked. It helped though, that Natalie eyed him with a profoundly professional expression. After a few moments she was done with her assessment of him.

“You don’t have much body-hair. Your back is fine and your chest has only a little bit. We should be done in under an hour.” She gave him a reassuring smile and held up a thin towel. “Lay down on your back. I’ll cover the parts I’m not working on, so you feel more comfortable.” She could sense his embarrassment. “And you’re my 8th customer today, so believe you me when I tell you that I don’t really see all the genitalia anymore. You don’t have anything I haven’t seen a thousand times already.”

When Mike lay on the beauty couch, Natalie covered his lap with the towel. He thanked her with a shy smile, starting to feel a little better about the whole thing.

“I’m starting on your upper body. We use a sugar-paste instead of the standard wax. It doesn’t hurt as much as wax and is easier to work with. So, raise your arms over your head. I’ll start with your armpits to ease you into it.”

I wasn’t as bad as Mike had thought. The warm sugar-paste felt nice on his skin and when Natalie yanked it off he felt a little burn but she immediately pressed her palm against the sore area and the pain subsided. She slowly worked her way down his body, making small-talk all the while to distract him from his awkward position.

He was glad that Natalie was a sub and after he thought a little about her explanation of how she knew Harvey, he actually was glad that she was in the loop. He could just talk to her without constantly being on his guard in case he might let something slip.

Natalie finally got to his groin and instructed him to spread his legs wide and hold them up with his hands placed in the hollows of his knees.

While she applied the sugar-paste she needed to shift his dick out of the way. At least he didn’t have a semi and after this experience he was absolutely sure that humiliation was not a kink for him. He averted his face, staring fixedly at a picture of a sunset on the wall. He could feel how hot his face was though.

“For Harvey, for Harvey, for Harvey,” he repeated like a mantra in his head.

“This might smart a little,” he was warned but before he could brace himself, Natalie had stripped the sticky sugar-paste off.

“Oww!” He couldn’t suppress a little yelp.

“Yeah, I know, this part really sucks. But afterward you will look really pretty. And I’m sure that Harvey will reward you, so better focus on that.”

After endless 5 minutes his pubic hair was gone for good. There were only a few errand hairs on his balls and Natalie took care of them with a tweezer in under 2 minutes. Thinking that it couldn’t get any worse, Mike finally relaxed a little too soon.

“Kneel up for me and spread your cheeks. It’s crack time.”

Mike groaned. Would this humiliation never end?
“Come on, Mike. This is the last bit. You’ve done well so far for a first-timer.”

He turned around, got on his knees, pressed his face against the fabric of the beauty-couch and reached behind himself to spread his ass-cheeks.

Natalie told him about the Broadway-show she’d seen the weekend before and he focused on her voice while he was stripped of the last bit of hair.

“There, all done. Stay like this. I apply some lotion.”

This last bit actually felt very nice and she gave him a little tube of the stuff and instructed him to treat his skin with it for the next few days.

After he’d dressed she accompanied him to the reception area.

“Harvey asked me to make a follow-up appointment for you in 6 weeks.” Mike groaned. He knew that Harvey had told him that he could list it as hard limit after he’d tried it once, but who was he kidding? Of course he’d do it again if Harvey wanted him to. Maybe the second time wouldn’t be so bad. Well, he could hope.

“Yeah, any time after 6 pm is good.” She told him the date and handed him a leaflet with the care instructions for the next few days.

“Feel free to call if anything is the matter. Some people might get a mild rash but normally the lotion we use is enough to soothe the irritated skin.”

“Thank you, Natalie. I could say that it was a pleasure but…”

She laughed. “Yeah, I get it. You don’t want to lie. Story of my life. But it was nice meeting you, Mike. And good luck with Harvey. I guess I won’t be scening with him anymore.”

“Not if I have a say in that matter.”

He winked at her and she gave him a little wave before she turned around to get her little room ready for the next customer.

Chapter End Notes

This story is not beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

Comments are always welcome (I really get a kick out of reading them, so please feel free to share your thoughts with me) and Kudos is also highly appreciated.

Since I’m going on a holiday tomorrow I won’t be able to post next weekend so today you get two chapters at once.
A most welcome distraction

Chapter Summary

Harvey gets a distraction he needs and Mike the reward he has earned.

Chapter Notes

Thanks for reading and all your feedback.

See the end of the chapter for more notes

When Mike got home he stripped immediately and stood in front of the full-length mirror to see how he looked. His skin was slightly pink with irritation, in some areas more than in others, but otherwise it looked fine. He let his fingertips trail over all the treated parts and marveled at how smooth his skin felt without the coarse hair. He could see the appeal now. Maybe he would get used to it.

For a moment he pondered the thought if he could persuade Harvey to get the same treatment but decided that wouldn’t feel right. Harvey was perfect like he was, hair or no hair and it was not Mike’s place to try change his Dom.

Natalie had instructed him to wait with a shower until the next morning and since he still wasn’t allowed to touch himself although by now he really really wanted to touch himself, he put his boxers and tee back on to minimize temptation. Mike settled down on his couch after getting himself a beer from the fridge. Before he opened it, he dialed Harvey’s number.

“Hello Mike. How was your day?”

Mike grimaced. Fine until all my body-hair had been yanked out at the root, would sound a little petulant so he opted for a neutral answer. He was sure that Harvey would arrive at that particular topic sooner rather than later anyway.

“Okay, Sir. And yours? Oh, and is it okay if a have a beer?”

“Yes, Mike. One beer is fine by me. I could use one myself to be honest. I’m still stuck at work. Something came up. Nothing new on your case though. I’ve scheduled your deposition for next week.”

“All right. I’ll be there. If I need to I can take a day off as long as I ask for it this week so they can plan in advance.”

“I’ll let you know as soon as I have the date.” Harvey paused for a moment. “So, have you been to see Natalie?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“I wish I could see you right now. I’m sure you look very pretty, all bare and smooth.”
“I’m wearing boxers and a t-shirt right now, so nothing much to see, Sir.”

“But you could take your clothes off. Then I had plenty to see.”

Harvey obviously wanted to do some dirty talk. Well, if that’s what would make his Dom happy Mike would gladly oblige.

“Yes, for you I would get naked in a flash, Sir. I like it when you look at me.” He wasn’t initiating, just responding to his Dom. At least, that’s what Mike told himself and he hoped Harvey would see it the same way.

“Well, I would ask you to come over to the office, but there are still some people working on my floor so…lots of glass walls, probably a bad idea.”

“If you have Skype we could video-chat.” The suggestion was out before Mike could really think about it.

He could hear Harvey’s breath through the phone. “You know, that might actually work, Mike. I’m sure this thing…” He could hear Harvey frantically tapping on the keys of his laptop. “Yes, this thing has everything. Do you have Skype installed on your laptop?”

“Yes, my bandwidth isn’t all that good but we could try it.”

“Fire up your laptop then.”

While Mike waited until his old computer finally had booted he told Harvey everything about his appointment with Natalie. When he came to the part of Natalie telling him that she’d scened with Harvey he hesitated a little but since this was niggling at his brain, he decided to ask Harvey about it.

“Yes, Natalie and I frequently scened. We were both unattached and our needs complimented each other. It was a good solution for both of us.” Harvey’s voice sounded matter-of-factly but not dismissive or unkind, so Mike went on.

“It’s just, I didn’t know that you scened with women. Somehow I thought that you… only did it with men.”

“Mike, I told you that I’m bi so why would it surprise you that I played with women?”

“I don’t know. I guess, now that you point it out it was kinda obvious but it somehow surprised me.”

“Well, since both of us signed a contract, for the foreseeable future I’m scening only with one man, or rather boy, so that should ease your mind.” Harvey tried to reassure him.

When Mike finally could open the program he sent a message to Harvey and only seconds later the unique sound of a Skype-chat filled his room and when he hit the button his Dom’s face filled the screen.

Harvey was wearing a white shirt with light blue stripes. His dark-blue tie had been loosened a little and shocker, Mike could see that Harvey had opened the top button of the shirt. He wasn’t wearing his jacket but the sleeves of his shirt were still down, the cuffs neatly wrapped around his wrists.

He looked a little weary, like that day had been trying in some way. It was after 8 pm by now and from the way his Dom had talked about work Mike could guess that Harvey didn’t plan on going home anytime soon.
But his face lit up a little as soon as he saw Mike and the crinkles around his eyes made him look younger somehow and a little more relaxed.

“So, I remember you making me an offer only five minutes ago and yet you’re still wearing your clothes. I might have to sue you for tricking me into this under false pretenses,” Harvey teased him.

“If you could wait a second, Sir.” Mike looked around his small flat, thinking about where to position his laptop so Harvey could watch him strip. In the end, he placed it on his dining table, angled the screen so the camera could capture his full body and then pulled his shirt over his head in one swift movement. For a moment he thought about swinging it over his head lasso-style, like the strippers did in some cheap shows for women but then decided against it. Harvey surely had more class than a room full of drunken housewives.

After he’d gotten rid of his boxers as well he slowly turned in front of the screen, fingers interlaced behind his head. When he’d completed the circle he could see that Harvey had shifted closer to his screen, his face now filling all of the 14 inches of Mike’s little laptop. His eyes looked very dark and Mike was sure that he could detect more than just a hint of arousal in them.

“Sit back down at your couch and place your laptop on your coffee table. I want a close-up.” Mike hurried to obey, Harvey’s arousal stoking his own even so he wasn’t allowed to do something about it. He would sure as hell not make the same mistake twice and ask Harvey if he could touch himself.

Before he settled in though, he went to his bathroom and got a towel which he placed on the sofa. Naked butt on fake-leather was not really comfortable and downright unhygienic.

“Lean back, angle the camera a little more towards your groin and spread your legs.”

Mike obeyed immediately and his dick hardened even more as soon as he saw Harvey’s hungry expression on the screen. This was hot as fuck and felt a little bit like they were having a scene.

“I love it that it takes only me looking at you to get you hard.” Harvey’s voice sounded raspy and suddenly his Dom got up and for a moment all Mike could see were the large windows with the setting sun over the skyline of Manhattan in the background.

“One moment, Mike. I need a drink if we’re really going to do that,” he could hear his Dom’s voice off screen. Mike used the opportunity and took a swig of his beer.

When Harvey reappeared in front of his camera Mike could see that he’d poured himself a generous amount of whisky. He took a long sip and licked his lips afterward. Mike wondered how it would taste to kiss Harvey now, to lick into his mouth and sample the whisky mixed with the flavor of pure Harvey. He nearly groaned at this thought, his cock now fully erect and gently nudging against his stomach like it wanted to remind Mike that it felt neglected.

“Look at you. You’re as pretty as a picture like that. My sweet hairless Puppy.” Harvey had leaned back a little, one elbow propped up on the armrest of his chair, crystal glass with the golden liquid held nonchalantly in his hand.

Mike didn’t know what to say so he remained silent, his eyes fixed firmly on Harvey’s face.

“Have you been a good boy, Mike?”

“I haven’t touched myself all week if that’s what you’re asking, Sir.”
“Was that hard for you, Mike? No pun intended.” A slight smile was ghosting over Harvey’s unique lips.

Mike glanced down at his crotch. “Yes, it was… hard. But every time I wanted to touch myself I thought about you, that I was your boy and that my cock belongs to you and that I didn’t have your permission. Somehow that made it easier for me. Knowing that my cock is your property. It felt like it would be a privilege when you finally would let me touch it and not like you’re denying me something that is by right mine in the first place. Does this sound weird? I’m not explaining this well.”

Harvey’s face had taken on a very thoughtful expression and Mike didn’t know what to make of that. Had he said something wrong again?

“No Mike, that doesn’t sound weird at all. I think you’re finally getting it. This is what submission means. You giving yourself over to me. Thank you. I’m very proud of you.”

Mike couldn’t help himself. He could feel the grin spreading over his face but this felt so good. The knowledge that for once he hadn’t screwed up, had made Harvey proud.

“Thank you Sir, for being so patient with me.”

Harvey took another sip and Mike reached out to get his beer bottle, tilting it a little towards the screen. “May I, Sir.” When Harvey nodded his consent he took a long swig.

“Mike, do you have lube?”

The question and everything it implied hit Mike out of the blue. “I… yes, Sir. In my nightstand.”

“Go, get it.”

He needed maybe 5 seconds till he was back at the couch.

“Since I can’t be with you right now I want you to do exactly as I tell you. This is a scene and all the rules apply. Do you understand, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“Color?”

“Green, Sir.”

“First, turn around and kneel on your sofa. Spread your cheeks for me. I want to see your crack.”

Mike got himself in position and since he couldn’t see his Dom now, he closed his eyes, focusing on his own fingertips and the little pressure they used to spread himself open. He could hear Harvey breathing deeply like the Dom tried to calm himself a little. But when he spoke, his voice sounded normal.

“All right, turn around and prop your feet up on your coffee table on either side of the laptop.”

Mike obeyed silently since he knew that he was only allowed to talk if Harvey asked a direct question.

“Scoot down a little more, bend your knees and spread your legs a little wider.”

This was so damn hot. Mike could feel a drop of pre-come working its way out of his slit and in this
position, with his cockhead bumping softly against his belly, it was soon smeared all over his skin.

“You’re such an eager and needy boy. Are you dripping already, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“Show me! Swipe your thumb over your crown and show me how wet you are.”

When Mike held his thumb with the glistening moisture up to the camera he could see Harvey inhale deeply and suddenly it hit him how trying this whole situation must be for his Dom, who was sitting fully clothed in his office, not able to touch himself since someone could come in at any moment. He was in awe at how much self-control Harvey really had. For Mike, this would’ve been torture, albeit a bitter-sweet one.

“Suck it off your thumb, Mike.”

He was more than willing to do just that and put on a little show for the lawyer, slurping noisily as he slowly pushed his thumb into his mouth and when he withdrew it he swirled his tongue around the tip of it.

“All right. That’s enough. I want you to close your eyes now. Lean your head back against the couch. Focus on my voice and do as I tell you. You can make noise but you only talk when I ask you to.”

Mike assumed his position after he’d readjusted the angle of the camera and for a few moments all he could hear was his own breath. His hands were lying relaxed on either side of his body, resting on the towel.

“I want you to touch yourself now, Mike. Stroke your chest with your flat right hand. Imagine that it is my hand, that it’s me petting you.”

Mike gave a little sigh and raised his right hand to his chest. His skin there was warm and so smooth. He started at his left clavicle, dragging his palm and fingers slowly across his sternum to his right clavicle and when the angle got awkward he reversed back to the left side of his torso, this time swiping his hand across his nipples without really teasing them. He touched his whole torso with his flat palm, dragging it slowly across the skin from left to right and back, getting lower in the process, like Harvey told him.

“How does your skin feel against your palm?”

“It’s a little warm and very smooth and soft. It feels really good. Smells good too, from the lotion.” Mike kept his eyes shut when he answered Harvey.

“Does the touch hurt you?”

“No Sir. I’m still a little sensitive but it feels like my senses are heightened somehow now without the hair.”

“I want you to drag your hand down towards your groin now. Touch your pubic bone and the crease between groin and thigh. You can touch your balls and perineum too, but not your cock. You might brush it accidentally but don’t touch it on purpose, Mike. I will know if you do.”

Mike obeyed and his palm swept over more smooth warm skin. When his dick bumped against the back of his hand he tried to ignore it and focus instead on how his pubic area felt now. He hadn’t been that hairless since he’d been 13 years old.
“You are so fucking beautiful, Mike.” Harvey sounded a little breathless and suddenly Mike wanted to see his face, wanted to see how his Dom was affected by all this. But he kept his eyes firmly shut since this was what Harvey wanted him to do.

After a few more minutes of just touching himself, letting his fingers glide over his smooth skin, reveling in this new feeling, Harvey was satisfied.

“Thank you Mike, you did very well. For that you have deserved a reward.”

Mike tried very hard to suppress a full body shiver in anticipation of things to come.

“I want you to play with your nipples a little. Use both hands and don’t forget to make these pretty noises for me, Mike.”

The sub now used both of his hands to stimulate the rosy buds simultaneously. He used his index fingers and thumbs to pluck at the little nubs until they were hard and a dark pink and then he circled them with his fingertips. Without thinking about it, he sucked both of his index fingers in his mouth, making them slick with saliva and then trailed them around and around his areolas. By now he was wholly focused on the sensation his fingertips were causing, glad that Harvey hadn’t demanded eye contact.

“Pinch yourself. Hard. I want to hear you moan.”

“Ah!” His back arched up and he could feel his cock leak a constant stream of pre-come by now.

“Again. Harder!”

“Ah!” If this would be going on any longer Mike was sure that he could come like this, without even touching his cock.

The same thought must have hit Harvey. “Okay. Stop touching your nipples and take a moment to come down a little. You can open your eyes and take a sip of your beer.”

Mike needed a second before he could stop touching himself, caught up in the heat of the moment. When he could finally let go of his abused nipples he moaned a little when the blood flowed back into them.

He thought that he could hear Harvey mumble something that sounded like nipple-clamps but wasn’t quite sure about that. He took a deep breath and got hold of his beer-bottle to give his hand something to do. The slightly bitter taste of the cheap brew on his tongue as he took a swig of his beer brought him back to reality a little. After a moment he put the bottle back on the coffee table and finally looked at Harvey. His Dom looked still composed but his eyes were gazing so hungrily at Mike, like he was a steak dinner and Harvey a starving man.

Harvey took a sip of his own drink and exhaled deeply like he needed a moment to regain his cool.

“I want you to use the lube and slick your right index finger up. And use plenty.”

Mike liked where this was going and hurried to obey.

“Scoot a little more downwards and close your eyes again. I want you to focus only on the sensation. Now, I want you to trail your fingertip up and down your crack from behind your balls down to your tailbone. When everything’s slick I want you to play with your hole. Don’t breach it, just tease it a little. And make all the noise you want.”
With his head once more resting against the back of the sofa, Mike trailed his fingertip slowly up and down his crack, spreading the lube around. When everything was slick, he began to circle his hole. He could feel the different texture of the muscle-ring under the pad of his finger and without much pressure he just trailed it around and around the slightly wrinkled skin in an almost hypnotic pace. He wanted so badly to push his finger in but Harvey had told him to just tease and that’s what he did.

“Put your fingertip right over your hole and push it slowly in, up to your first knuckle.”

He could feel his muscles give way under the slowly building pressure and his finger slid into his body easily. He moaned loudly when he felt his muscles clench around his finger like they wanted to fight off the intruder.

“Oh fuck!” he could hear Harvey sigh although he was really busy processing all the sensations his finger was producing in his hole.

“I want you to fuck yourself with your finger, Mike. Push it in slowly, slowly I said. Yeah, like that. Now pull it out until only your fingertip is inside. Now push it in again, deeper this time. Yes, just like that.”

Mike felt like Harvey was speaking directly to his right hand, controlling it remotely only with his words. His brain produced the memory of Harvey sitting between his spread legs, pushing two fingers slowly into his body while he watched him do it. By now he was constantly moaning, sighing and breathing deeply in between. This felt so good but he wanted more, craved more.

“Are you close, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir. So close, so good.”

“Wrap your left hand around your cock while you continue to fuck yourself.”

“Ohhh…!” Mike only held his dick, not moving his hand since Harvey hadn’t told him that he should but it was almost too much. He hadn’t come, hadn’t even touched himself for 3 days now and he was so turned on and horny that it almost hurt.

“I want you to imagine that it is my hand wrapped around your dick and my finger fucking your ass, Mike. Can you do that?”

“Yes Sir. Your hands on me.”

“What do you see in your mind’s eye, Mike? Describe it to me.”

“You’re sitting in front of the couch Sir, between my spread legs and your hand is wrapped around my cock… and you’re not moving it, just holding it with a little pressure. And your finger is fucking my hole, Sir. It feels so good, so hot.”

“Yes, that’s exactly what’s happening Mike. And now I’m starting to jerk your beautiful dick a little with slow strokes.”

Mike started to move his hand up and down his cock, slowly like Harvey had described it.

“Now, I’m pressing my finger into your body as deep as I can.”

“Oh… yesssss.”

“Can you feel how I crook my finger, searching for your prostate?”
"Ahhh, Sir."

"Have I found it yet?"

"Arghh… yes, Sir."

"Yes, there it is. I can feel the little nub under my fingertip. Now I’m teasing it with tiny little circles while I jerk your cock slowly."

Mike breathed rapidly through his mouth, making inarticulate noises in between the large gulps of air he was drawing in.

"Mike, I want you to open your eyes and look at me now."

He was so caught up in this fantasy Harvey was weaving for him only with his voice that he needed a few moments to understand what was expected of him. When he finally managed to drag his eyelids open, he realized how dark it had gotten outside. His sitting room was dark and only Harvey’s face on the screen was illuminated. At this moment his Dom was the most beautiful person Mike had ever seen.

"Look at me, Mike. Look into my eyes."

"Yes… Sir,” he panted, eyes now fixed on Harvey’s dark brown ones.

"I want you to come for me Mike. *Now. Come for me now.*” Harvey was using his Dom-voice and Mike could do nothing else but obey.

He could feel his balls tighten and his stomach-muscles tense. His sphincter started to clench rhythmically around his finger and then it happened. The climax ripped through his whole body but somehow he managed to keep his eyes focused on Harvey’s face, like it was an anchor he could hold onto while his whole body convulsed with pure lust. He opened his mouth but no sound came out, a voiceless cry and then, suddenly his muscles relaxed.

“Ohhh… Harvey!” he shouted when the first spurt of his hot semen erupted from his cock. He continued to stroke himself through his orgasm but slipped his finger out of his ass, the pressure on his prostate too much to process.

Harvey’s eyes were now pitch-black, the pupils blown wide and his gaze so intently fixed on Mike like there was no outside world. The whole universe consisted only of the both of them and nothing else mattered. Harvey’s lips were slightly opened and Mike thought he could see a vein on his neck pulsing rapidly. His face seemed a little flush but other than that he didn’t show any signs of having his sub talked through one of the most intense orgasms Mike ever had.

He let his head fall back, too tired to hold it up straight without support.

“How do you feel, Mike?”

The sub smiled exhausted, left hand still lightly curled around his spent cock, semen dripping from his fingers onto his stomach and groin.

“Well fucked and exhausted. High and tired.”

“You have done very well, Mike. Thank you for submitting so beautifully for me.”

“Thank you Sir for giving me this intense orgasm. This was… fuck, this was hot.”
Mike let finally go of his dick and wiped his sticky hands on the towel. Then he sat up straighter, grabbed his bottle and emptied it with one long gulp. He was still a little out of breath and he craved a shower even so Natalie had told him to wait. Well, he would use the washcloth then.

For a few moments they just watched one another until Mike had recovered.

“What are your plans for Friday night?”

Harvey had leaned back a little and Mike could see that the glass of whisky was empty. The bright blazing fire of arousal had vanished from his gaze but there was still some of it simmering just under the surface, like it would take only a little oxygen and the flames would rekindle up into a roaring bonfire.

“Nothing so far, Sir.”

“Do you need to work at Saturday?”

“No, Sir. I only work every other Saturday so the next one is my day off.”

“All right. I want you to come by at 6 pm. And I don’t mean 6-ish. Bring an overnight bag.”

“Yes, Sir.”

“And Mike, don’t touch yourself till then.”

Figures.

“Of course, Sir.”

“Good boy.”

**********

Somehow Harvey had managed to will his rock hard dick down with only the power of his mind. For a moment though it had been a close call and he feared that he might come in his pants. He was on the verge of getting up and jerking himself frantically off in the partner’s bathroom when his phone had rang. It was Louis and hearing the sneering, whining voice of the junior partner had been enough to make his boner go away and hide. He only wished that he could do the same.

It was just before midnight when he finally arrived home and unlocked his front door. One of their clients had a heart attack and now the sharks were circling, trying to take a bite out of the wounded prey.

The thing that truly disgusted Harvey was that their client’s family members had been the most vicious of all the predators. This people should’ve been at the hospital, sick with worry for their loved one. Instead, they were congregating in conference room C and bickering over who would get what when their uncle / brother/ godfather finally kicked the bucket. He had wanted to throw them out on their asses, the lot of them, or at least yell at them a little. Instead, he and Louis had prepared everything in case their client truly didn’t make it.

At times like these Harvey was happy that he didn’t have any extended family. He’d chosen his own family instead. Donna was his sister, Jessica was sometimes like a mother or aunt, Ray was like a
cousin, and Louis, even Louis was part of his tribe. Louis was the annoying and embarrassing uncle whom nobody liked but everyone would miss if he wouldn’t attend a family function. And Mike, now Mike was part of his family too. Mike was, well, Mike was his … puppy. To admit to more was a little too early at this juncture. But someday, maybe Mike would be his… Mike. His Mike.

When Harvey thought about how quickly Mike had managed to weasel his way into Harvey’s life, into his …, well… anyway, it was a little scary how fast that had happened. When Harvey dissected his feelings on the matter, he expected to find fear or blind panic on his part.

Instead, he found happiness. He felt truly happy that Mike had come into his life. And it didn’t scare him one bit. The thought that Mike might leave again, might decide that Harvey was not the right guy for him… that thought on the other hand scared the shit out of him. Well, he was the best damn closer in the city. He would just need to close Mike for good.

After Harvey had undressed he went into his bathroom. He craved a long hot shower to wash the filth away. These people had made him feel dirty with their barely concealed greed. He knew that this came with the job but on days like this he questioned his choice a little. Thankfully, his own little genius had come up with a most welcome distraction right when he’d needed it.

Harvey turned on the water in the huge walk-in shower and stepped under the rainforest shower-head.

Lifting his head up he let the spray hit his face. As soon as he’d closed his eyes his brain conjured up the image of Mike. His boy had looked so beautiful, all bare and smooth. Harvey couldn’t wait to get his hands on Mike, to feel his smooth skin under his fingertips and lips. He’d looked even younger than before and for a moment Harvey questioned his taste. But then, he’d never before had a thing for the schoolboy type so this attraction he felt must be attributed solely to Mike.

This beautiful slender figure, legs spread wide for him so Harvey could look his fill. The head resting relaxed against the back of the couch, eyes firmly closed. How he had touched himself, had done everything Harvey had told him to do. Fuck, he’d been so turned on. He’d wanted to touch himself through his suit-pants but had refrained from it since he knew that he couldn’t jerk himself off in his office and even the tiniest squeeze would only increase his torment.

Harvey’s hands had wandered down his body and his right hand curled around his hardening dick without conscious thought. Harvey brought his left arm up and braced his forearm against the tiled wall. His hand was level with his forehead which he now leaned against it and he used the little leverage to move his hips while he fucked into his own fist.

The way Mike had looked when he’d played with his nipples. How his face had contorted when he’d pinched himself at Harvey’s command. The pain had been clearly displayed in Mike’s features but there had been something else. Bliss and ecstasy.

At one point Harvey had been sure that Mike could come only from the nipple-play. Oh, he would definitely try this in one of their upcoming scenes. The problem was, there were so many things he wanted to do with Mike, to Mike. The choices were manifold and the risk to overwhelm Mike by trying to do everything at once was real. So he needed to pace himself, take it one scene at a time, be patient.

Harvey conjured up the image of how Mike had played with his hole. How he’d circled the pinkish-brown pucker with his glistening fingertip. How his face had become slack when he was finally instructed to push it inside his body. The display of wonder, of overwhelming sensation when he was finally all the way inside.
Mike’s face was a billboard, displaying all his emotions in big fat letters for all the world to see.

He loved that about his boy. His openness. Mike was probably the least artful person he’d ever met and for a brief moment Harvey wondered if that would’ve still been the case if Mike had finished his studies and become a lawyer.

This job made you cynical and hard. Mike wasn’t like that. But then again, maybe his profession needed people like Mike so that heartless bastards like himself would be reminded what it would mean to behave like a decent human being every once in a while.

Harvey jerked himself a little faster now, swiping the thumb over his sensitive cockhead. He threw his head back and moaned when he remembered how Mike’s voice had sounded when he made him massage his prostate. Suddenly the urge to feel what Mike had felt became overwhelming.

Harvey let go of his dick and for one moment he just stood there, panting hard under the spray of the shower. He didn’t have lube in his bathroom but his body wash would do the trick. He poured some of it into his palm and coated his fingertips in it. Then, once again bracing himself against the wall with his left arm, he reached back and let his fingertips trail across his crack. The water was turned down into a slow trickle so it wouldn’t wash his lubrication away but some of the drops hit his left shoulder.

He hadn’t fingered himself in a while but right now he wanted to feel his fingers on his prostate, wanted to feel the same sensations that had made Mike moan with pleasure some hours ago. Harvey exhaled deliberately while he pushed in, making a conscious effort to relax his muscles. With slow shallow thrusts he fucked himself until his finger was as far inside his ass as he could reach. His ass burned a little but the shower-gel was enough to make the pain more pleasurable than actually painful.

For a moment he thought about pushing a second finger in but this wasn’t about stretch, this was about prostate stimulation. He crooked his finger and trailed the fingertip over his tight channel until he found the right spot. He did exactly the same as he had Mike instructed to do and his hips began to jerk a little. When he couldn’t stand it anymore, he shuffled a little closer to the wall, leaned his right shoulder, chest and right cheek against the wet tiles and used his left hand to jerk off. He didn’t trust his legs to keep him up without additional support.

After only a couple of strokes he felt the first waves of orgasm building themselves up and he cried out when, after an endless moment of clenching all his muscles, he could let go, let his climax claim his whole body, leaving only a deep relaxation behind.

He stayed like this for a few moments after his cock had stopped twitching, trying to catch his breath. Then he slowly let go of himself while at the same moment let his finger slip out of his ass. He turned the water back on to a full stream and washed himself quickly. All of a sudden he felt so tired. He just wanted to get clean and then sleep for a week.

He toweled himself off but didn’t bother to comb his hair. He would pay for it come tomorrow when it had dried in an odd shape, but right now Harvey didn’t care. Not bothering to put on his pajama pants, he climbed naked and still a little damp between the sheets and fell asleep within minutes.

Chapter End Notes

This was the second promised chapter this weekend since I won’t be able to post next
weekend. I'm going on vacation and leaving my laptop behind.

I really love to read your comments so please feel free to comment, even if it is only on a typo (I keep finding them in earlier chapters which really annoys me). And Kudos is also highly appreciated.

This story isn't beta-read and all mistakes are my own.
A boys' night out

Chapter Summary

Mike has a boys' night out with his fellow bike messengers but the evening takes an unexpected turn.

Chapter Notes

This chapter is a little angsty and also might contain triggers for some people although nothing sexual is happening. So, just to be on the safe side, I will describe what’s going on in the end-notes.

Thank you for reading and all your kind comments and all the Kudos. I really am a sucker for all the feedback I’m getting (huge praise kink here).

See the end of the chapter for more notes

Mike sat at his shaky dinner-table in his apartment and stared down at the little tin box that contained the rest of his stash. He could barely see it since he hadn’t bothered to turn the lights on, but the street light right outside his window provided enough illumination that he could make out every item he’d placed on his table as soon as he’d come home. His small black pipe was lying beside the box along with the lighter and the ash-tray. The pungent aroma of the weed filled the air and the tip of his tongue darted out and swiped over his lower lip before his teeth started to nibble at it. Should he? Could he? Oh god, he wanted it so bad.

He longed to light up, suck the smoke into his lungs, hold it there for a few seconds and let the drug wash away all his raging thoughts and emotions. He wanted to switch his brain off, just go to sleep.

“To die, to sleep - no more; and by a sleep to say we end the heartache and the thousand natural shocks that flesh is heir to; ‘tis a consummation devoutly to be wished. To die, to sleep - to sleep, perchance to dream… aye, there’s the rub. For in that sleep of death what dreams may come when we’ve shuffled off this mortal coil, must give us pause – there’s the respect that makes calamity of so long life.”

Involuntarily his brain conjured up this scene from Hamlet, back from Mrs. Turners English Lit class in 9th grade.

True, Hamlet had a lot more problems than Mike and was talking about suicide and regicide while he only wanted a few hours of peace and quiet but it was the part about the dreams which he could absolutely relate to. He never had any dreams after having smoked so that was another reason why he wanted to get high so desperately right now. He didn’t want to dream.

He knew, if he would call Harvey now, the lawyer would ask him what had triggered his need to get high and he absolutely didn’t want to talk about it with Harvey. He just wanted to forget, to wipe the last few hours from his memory and go back to the person he’d been before. The person who only wanted to think about his Dom and what would happen tomorrow night when he’d see Harvey again.
and stay the night at his condo.

But this person wasn’t here right now, or if he was, he had hidden himself under a shitload of self-loathing, doubt and fear.

His fingertips dipped into the tin box and picked up some of the dried marihuana buds, crumbling them a little. When the last dried flecks had fallen back into the tin, he brought his fingers up to his nose and sniffed them longingly.

Oh god, what should he do?

**********

8 hours earlier.

“Hey, Ross. Me and the guys are going out for a drink later. Wanna come?”

Mike looked up and spotted Jerry, who waved at him from across the narrow side street. Mike finished to unchain his bike and quickly made his way over to the fellow messenger.

“Hey Jerry, how has life been treating you? New bike?”

They fist-bumped as greeting and then chatted for a few minutes about bikes, rude clients and the hot new girl who rode her bike for a rival company and who had rebuffed every flirting attempt so far. She claimed that she didn’t want to get involved with another bike messenger but this statement didn’t keep the boys from trying.

“So, what about tonight. You coming?”

Mike shrugged. “Depends. Where are you guys going?”

“We figured Jeremy’s Ale house on Front Street might be convenient. Most of us are from Brooklyn so the way home after we’ve gotten sloshed isn’t so far.”

Mike really wanted to go. He saw his colleagues every day but they were always in a hurry and there was no time to just hang out.

The last time he’d gone out to a bar had been with Jenny a couple of weeks ago but now that his nights were his own again, he suddenly craved to get shit-faced with the guys. And he really liked Jerry. He was funny and talking to him was easy. He wasn’t attracted to him but somehow he reminded him a little of Trevor, minus the bad habit of getting Mike into trouble.

When he was with Harvey, he always needed to pay attention to his behavior, which was fine. He wanted that from Harvey and Mike knew that this would help him in the long run to get his life back under control. But sometimes he just wanted to let loose, be the mouthy little know-it-all who would talk first and think later.

“Jeremy’s sounds great. I need to make a call to see if I’m free tonight, though.”

“Girlfriend got you on a tight leash, Ross?” Jerry made a whipping motion with his hand and Mike laughed a little embarrassed. That was actually a little too close to the truth than he was comfortable with.
“My Grandmother hasn’t been so good this past few weeks. I wanted to see how she was doing but I can call the nursing home and when she’s fine I can visit her tomorrow.”

Now it was Jerry’s turn to look a little embarrassed. “Sorry Buddy, didn’t mean to imply anything. I think it’s great that you’re helping your Granny out.”

“Yeah, I’m a saint. So, when are you guys heading over to Front Street?”

“We thought if we go right after the last deliveries we could still get a few drinks in before Happy Hour ends.”

“Sounds sensible. So, I see what I can do but I think it will be all right.”

“Yeah, would be nice to hang out a little. We haven’t really talked in ages.”

Jerry’s phone beeped with a text-message for his next pick-up and they waved good-bye as he hurried away.

Mike stayed and picked up his own phone, dialing Harvey’s number. Better to do this in person and not via text. He needed to check in with his Dom anyway and if he asked nicely he was pretty sure that Harvey would allow him his night out.

**********

When Mike arrived at the bar shortly after 7 pm, it was already packed. He had caught a late delivery but since it had lead him in the right direction he hadn’t minded it much and the tip he’d gotten came in quite handy too.

He chained his bike to one of the lamp-posts in front of the bar and the number of bikes already there told him that he was the last one to arrive. When he looked around the dim-lit room, he spotted the guys, 5 of them, sitting around a table in the corner. Weaving through the crowded room, he made his way over to them, only stopping at the bar to get himself a beer.

Harvey had given him permission for 3 beers, 1 shot and card blanche for whatever he wanted to eat and his only condition had been that Mike would call him after he’d gotten home. If he stayed out past midnight he would need to text Harvey to tell him it would be late but the call was mandatory no matter how late it got.

“Hey you mother-flackers,” Mike shouted excited when he finally had made his way over to them. The guys greeted him in kind before they made room for him and for the next hours they just had fun while they chatted, drank and ate bar food.

Soon after they’d finished their food the first round of shots was served and the atmosphere got a little wilder. Two of the guys were trying to land two girls at the bar who were clearly out of their league but the alcohol had made them bold and they didn’t get that the girls weren’t interested in the least. If they wouldn’t let up anytime soon the bouncer would throw them out and Mike kept an eye on them so he could intervene, since he’d drunk less than his friends for once.

This had raised a few eyebrows since he’d always been the one who needed to be watched but he claimed that he’d taken some Advil earlier for his headache and therefore didn’t want to get too drunk. This seemed to appease the others and when he ordered himself a water after he’d finished his
3rd beer they only mocked him a little.

While he watched Tommy and Chris hitting on the two girls and failing miserably, he only listened with half an ear to the conversation between Jerry, Billy and Matt. They were talking about a gruesome murder but the details escaped him.

“I’m sure Mikey will back me up here, don’t you, Mikey?”

“Sorry, what?” He looked at Matt, not knowing what they had talked about.

“The fagott who had gotten himself killed. You know, the one from the news today. They’re saying that his Daddy had done it. And I don’t mean his father.” Matt tried to waggle his eyebrows to convey some non-verbal message but it only made him look stupid.

“I don’t know what you’re talking about, Mattie.” Mike replied a little heated. He hated being called Mikey, which Matt knew, but more than that he hated the f-word.

“Oh, come on Mikey, you know, the murder in the Bronx everyone is talking about. Don’t say you haven’t heard about it.”

“No, I haven’t. And I’m not sure that I want to.”

If he’d been alone with Matt he’d called him out on the f-word immediately and given him a piece of his mind, but since the other guys were there, he didn’t want to ruin the evening by preaching some sense to an imbecile. So he tried to discourage Matt to continue the conversation.

Matt laughed but didn’t get the hint. Maybe he was too drunk but Mike would wager that it had more to do with his stupidity and general asshole-ness than his alcohol-intake.

“They found that fag in a dumpster. Choked to death with a dog collar. Turns out he’d been in a relationship with this other guy. And not only had he taken it up the arse, no he’d been the little bitch for the other guy, letting himself getting whipped and beaten up and everything. Wasn’t even allowed to leave the house without his Daddy, the neighbors said. Daddy…,” Matt snorted, not realizing that Mike had gotten very quiet but also very red in the face. “That’s what he’d called his boyfriend. Master would’ve been more appropriate. Well, one less of those sick fuckers makes the world a better place, if you ask me.”

“Shut your stupid mouth, you sick asshole!” Mike yelled at him furiously. “Nobody’s asking you.”

Matt looked at him with astonishment, only now noticing the rage in Mike’s face. Jerry and Billy were looking a little embarrassed, clearly not on board with what Matt had been saying but also not willing to voice their own opinions on the matter.

“You part of the whole LBG-whatever bullshit, Mikey?”

“It’s LGBTQ you stupid fucker. And I don’t need to be part of it to find offence with everything that comes out of your filthy mouth. I only need to be a decent human being to get sick of all the hate you’re spewing around.”

“Oh, come on Mikey. Where is this coming from? You like it up your arse as well? That’s why you so riled up?”

Mike knew that Matt was goading him now, but he couldn’t help himself. He leaned across the table and punched the other guy square in the face. With a little satisfaction he noticed the small cut in Matt’s lip before the pain in his hand made him gasp.
“Whoa, guys!” Jerry tried to get between the two young men but he was sitting at the other end of the table and Matt had no problem grabbing Mike at the collar of his shirt and yanking him off the bench he’d been sitting on behind the table.

Mike shielded his face but Matt, who was not only 2 inches taller than Mike but also did kick-boxing as a hobby, paid him back more than in kind. The first hit landed on his solar-plexus and Mike doubled over and nearly puked on the table. Before Matt could land a second hit, this time to Mike’s face, the bouncer, who had watched them since Mike had started yelling at Matt, grabbed the bigger guy’s upper arm, twisted it around into an arm-lock and marched him under loud protestations in the direction of the door. Billy, who was Matt’s pal and had only come along because of him, hurried after him, carrying Matt’s bag.

Jerry stayed behind with the wheezing Mike. Somehow he’d managed to hold onto his Fish & Chips but it was a close call. Jerry pushed the glass of water into Mike’s hand before he persuaded the bouncer that Mike had been provoked and would behave himself now. Since Mike didn’t look like he would cause any more problems, the bouncer graciously gave him permission to finish his water and get his breath back before he needed to leave the bar as well.

“Can you believe this guy? This fucker makes me sick.” Mike still needed to vent his rage and thought that in Jerry at least he had some kindred spirit.

“Yeah, this guy’s a tool. But…”

Mike couldn’t believe it. “What, but? Do you agree with him?”

Jerry held up his hands to calm Mike down. “Hey, of course I don’t agree with him. Every murder is tragic. But… and I’m just saying, from what was in the news, this guy had been in a seriously fucked up relationship.”

“And what do you mean by that? Because he was gay?”

“For heaven’s sake, Mike. Of course not. I have a gay cousin, remember. I was the best man at his wedding, so don’t take every word I say the wrong way. It’s just, well, you know, why don’t you read it for yourself?” He fished his phone out of his pocket, opened a news-app and showed Mike the article.

Mike quickly scanned over the alleged facts which consisted mostly of neighbors’ statements and some psycho-guy trying to explain what a Dom/sub relationship was and how the weaker part in this relationship had fallen prey to the perversions of the dominant party. There were a lot of speculations and the police had made a statement regarding the equipment they’d found when they searched the apartment of both victim and killer. It seemed like the victim really had been in a BDSM relationship with the murderer and had been killed by him in a scene gone wrong.

Now Mike felt really sick and not only because of the punch to his stomach.

“You see, this was way more than the usual relationship. It seems like the victim had been a kind of a slave to the other guy.”

Mike nodded, not able to say something.

“I mean, it’s more than tragic what happened but how twisted must one be to be a willing slave to another person, to let some other guy do this to you? This guy must’ve had some serious psychological issues.”

“So, you’re saying he had it coming,” Mike whispered blankly, thoughts spinning in his mind.
“No Mike, of course not. Nobody deserves that. But, well, he must have been mentally ill or something. Maybe he was depressed and this other guy manipulated him. Nobody in their right mind would do that stuff. Or how do you explain the dog-leashes and all the stuff they found in their apartment. Seriously Mike, choke-collars and chains. There are pictures of the stuff they found.”

When Mike only stared blankly at him Jerry continued. “Hey, I like a little adventure as well as the next guy. Handcuffs can be great fun and girls like toys, especially when they’re buzzing, even if they pretend that they don’t, but these things...,” he trailed off and took a sip of his beer, then wiped his mouth with the back of his hand. “Some of the stuff had still blood on it, according to the police.” He shook his head like he couldn’t believe it.

“Yeah,” Mike managed to croak out. “That sounds sick.”

“Hey, where’s Matt and Billy?” Tommy and Chris had finally found their way back to their table after having been rebuffed by every female in the bar.

Jerry glanced at Mike and then decided that they should probably take this opportunity to change the subject.

“They left. Mike and Matt had a little argument involving their fists and the bouncer threw Matt out.”

“Aw! We missed it. Shit!” Chris looked at Mike questioningly. “So, what happened? Matt behaved like an asshole as always? Come on, spill!”

Mike looked at his friends, their carefree drunken faces, and suddenly all he wanted was to be alone. He scooted to the end of the bench and swung his messenger-back over his shoulder.

“Guys, I don’t feel so good. Maybe Matt had hit me harder than I thought. I’m gonna call it a night.” Since he was still a little green around the nose his friends didn’t try to hold him back.

He hurried out, the smell of stale beer and the frying fat from the kitchen making him nauseous. While he fumbled with his padlock Jerry caught up to him.

“You okay, Mike?” His friend sounded concerned.

“Yeah, sure. Only tired. And the mood has gone to the crapper anyway.” Why couldn’t Jerry leave him alone?

“Sorry, I know Matt can be a jerk. And Billy isn’t any better.”

Mike turned around and faced Jerry, the rage suddenly back. “So why did you invite him if everyone knows that he’s a jerk and an asshole? And by the way, why haven’t you told him to shut his mouth? You were just sitting there, nodding your head like you’d agree with everything that came out of his pie-hole. Even when he said the f-word, you were just sitting there like an imbecile. He needed to be put down for the hate and the bullshit he was spewing and you did nothing. You know, you make me as sick as he does.”

“No, Buddy. Slow down. I would’ve told him off eventually, you know.” Jerry was truly shocked by Mike’s attitude towards him. He’d seen Mike’s rage directed at Matt and even that had frightened him a little, but the way the icy-blue eyes now looked at him, the disdain that now was directed at him, hit him on a deeper level.

Mike shook his head. “Not good enough, Buddy. Not good enough.”

He pushed off, swung his leg over his rear-wheel and drove off to Williamsburg.
Now.

Mike eyes were staring blankly into his tin, still not sure what he should do. He just wanted to forget the whole evening. But he couldn’t. His freakish memory would make sure of that. His thoughts were spinning around and around like the cheap plastic spinner he used to play with when he was very little.

He was still mad at Jerry, in a way even more furious with him than he was with Matt. He knew that Matt was a stupid fucker but that Jerry would just sit by and listen to all that bullshit really made Mike sick to his stomach. He had liked Jerry.

Edmund Burke had once said that the only thing evil needed to succeed was good men doing nothing. Mike couldn’t fathom how Jerry had put up with it when he himself only needed to listen to Matt for two sentences before he wanted to bash his brains in.

But the rage was not the worst. Mike barely allowed himself to dig deeper but he knew that his fury was only one part of his emotions. The other was… doubt. Doubt and fear.

What he and Harvey were doing, was it sick in some twisted way? Was he sick that he wanted Harvey to control him? That he wanted to be tied up and helpless so his Dom could do to him whatever he liked? That he wanted to feel the pain Harvey could give him? And what would happen if he gave himself completely to Harvey like the murder-victim had given himself to his Dom? Would he lose himself, lose every sense of self-preservation? And would Harvey, could Harvey…? No, he couldn’t even go there. These thoughts were too ludicrous and painful.

*But what if…?* This thought was scratching at his brain like fingernails on a chalkboard.

He’d thought that pursuing BDSM, finding a Dom, would fix him somehow. Would make him a better person. More balanced and happy. What if he, without even noticing, slowly slid into an abusive, manipulative relationship that ended with him being chained to a wall in a cellar and choked to death by a dog-collar? Thrown away afterwards into a dumpster like the trash now everyone believed the victim had been.

He was sure that Harvey could never do that to him, but this guy must’ve been sure that he could trust his Dom, at least in the beginning, as well. What if he couldn’t stop it before it was too late?

He hated that his trust in Harvey could be rattled so easily. Was he weak for doubting so quickly or a fool for doubting not enough?

He needed to stop this and fast or he would go crazy. He could feel himself coming apart at the seams. Slowly his fingertips picked up some of the dried plant and stuffed them into the pipe. His fingers were moving like he was in a sort of trance, muscle-memory instead of conscious thought.

Suddenly his phone beeped and this seemed to break the spell. Mike knew without even looking that the text message was from Harvey. With shaking fingers he picked up his phone.

*(Harvey 12:05 am)* *Are you still at the bar?*

Mike stared at his phone for a long time, or so it seemed, without knowing what he should do.
Should he lie and text back that he was still out? That would give him some more time but it would
only delay their talk.

Should he reply that he was home? Then Harvey would insist on a phone call right now. Could he
talk to Harvey in the state he was in right now? Did he even want to?

He could tell Harvey that everything was off, that they were done and he never wanted to see him
again. Should he do it? Wasn’t that the sane thing to do? But Harvey would insist to know why.
And anyway, did he want to stop everything only because he’d gotten scared?

Mike thought about how every of this options would make him feel and in the end he picked the
least awful one. Harvey had yet to disappoint him and his gut told him that he should have a little
faith. So he picked up his phone and dialed.

“Hey Mike. How was your night out? Did you have fun?” Harvey’s voice sounded curious and
friendly and in the background Mike could hear one of his jazz-records playing.

He decided to dive right in without even trying to build up to it. Harvey would hear it in his voice
anyway, so why bother and try to act like everything was okay.

“Harvey, please listen. And please, don’t ask me anything right now. I promise to tell you what
happened later but right now the only thing I need is to get high. Please, please let me smoke.”

For a few heartbeats Mike could hear only the music playing.

“Are you hurt?” He could hear in Harvey’s voice how much his Dom tried to not freak out.

“No.” Then he remembered the hit he’d taken to his solar-plexus. He would most likely have some
bruising there but this didn’t compare in the least to all the emotional hurt he was experiencing. But
he corrected himself anyway, still obeying rule number one. “Someone hit me in the stomach, but it
is fine. That’s not why I need to smoke.”

“And you can’t tell me why?”

“Please, Harvey, not now. I can’t, I just can’t. I’m barely keeping it together as it is.”

“And that’s exactly why you should talk to me, Michael. I get that something painful happened
today, something that is overwhelming you right now and that you want to avoid. Am I right Mike?”

“Can’t you just give it a rest? Just tonight? Please Harvey, I can’t deal with it right now.” His voice
was getting more and more frantic but he couldn’t help it.

He could hear some deep breaths on the other end of the line.

“I make you a deal. I’m coming over and you can smoke when I’m there. You don’t have to talk to
me. I even sleep on the sofa. But I need to know that you’re safe.”

“Please, Harvey, don’t.”

“I’ll be there in 30 minutes.”

After that the line went dead.
Somehow Mike managed to hold out until his doorbell rang about 25 minutes later. He buzzed Harvey in and opened his front door a crack but he didn’t turn on the light and he didn’t wait for Harvey at the door to greet him properly. This visit hadn’t been his idea and if his Dom, if Harvey even was his Dom after tonight, wanted to punish him for his misbehavior then he would just safeword out.

He sat back at his table, fingers playing with the stuffed pipe when Harvey entered his flat. Instead of turning on the big light Harvey carefully made his way in the darkness to Mike’s nightstand and switched the little lamp on. Then he shrugged off his jacket, threw it on the bed and sat down opposite Mike whose face now was illuminated by the soft light.

He saw the pipe in Mike’s hand and picked up the lighter without saying a word, without even trying to touch Mike. It was like he could sense that Mike was on the brink of the abyss and even a stirring of the air could send him over the edge right at this moment.

A barely visible nod told Mike that he was allowed now. With trembling fingers Mike raised the pipe to his lips but before Harvey could light the weed he put it down again. For a moment he stared at the shining black thing with blank eyes and then he hurled it across the room. It shattered against a wall and Mike buried his face in his hands. He drew in a shuddering breath and tried to suppress a sob. Why did this hurt so much? Scared him so much?

He could hear the soft click when Harvey put the lighter down but other than that Harvey remained absolutely still although Mike could feel his eyes on him. They sat like this for a couple of minutes until Harvey couldn’t take it any longer and broke first.

“Mike, you’re starting to scare me.” The sentence was spoken very softly but there was a hint of pleading in the otherwise neutral tone of voice. It was almost like Harvey himself held on only by a thread.

Mike looked up. Had he heard right? Harvey Specter was scared?

“Please tell me what happened so I can make it right.”

“You can’t.”

“I could try.”

“Not this time.”

“Mike, please. I need to understand. You can smoke if you must, I don’t care. Whatever makes you feel better but I need to understand. I’m going crazy right now.”

“You don’t look like you’re going crazy.”

A sad little smile flickered over his face, gone in an instant. “I’m very good at faking it. Comes with the job.”

Mike stood up and went to his fridge to break the tension. “Do you want a beer?”

Harvey nodded and Mike got two bottles out. Mike never even thought about asking for permission and Harvey knew instinctively that now was not the time to play their roles.

When he’d settled back down they opened their bottles and both took a long draw. Mike was aware
that he was stalling but he needed to find a way to explain what had happened, what had rattled him so deeply. Finally he found his starting point.

“Have you heard about the murder in the Bronx? The guy they found in the dumpster?”

Harvey nodded and watched him attentively while his fingers played with the label on the bottle, meticulously peeling it away.

“The news say he was in a BDSM relationship and his Dom killed him during a scene.”

Harvey closed his eyes and exhaled slowly now knowing where this was going. When he opened his eyes again, there was so much pain in them that Mike could barely take it. But he needed to get this off his chest. He couldn’t swallow down his feelings, his fears, only so he wouldn’t hurt Harvey.

“Mike, are you scared of me?” Harvey sounded horrified at the thought that Mike might be afraid of him. He shifted a little like he was ready to bolt any second and the image of Harvey getting up and leaving him alone for ever if he would say yes was scarier then anything that Harvey could do to him during a scene.

“No, not of you. Never of you.” The moment he’d whispered the words he knew they were the truth. He hadn’t been sure before but now he was. Harvey must’ve seen it in his eyes because all the pent up tension seemed to leave his body and his shoulders sagged visibly.

Mike raked his hands through his hair before he picked up his bottle and took another sip.

“I was out with the guys and they brought it up. This tool, Matt, he called the victim fagott and he said all this hateful things like that he’d been sick and weak and the world would be a better place without him. He talked like this sub had deserved to be killed.” Mike could see Harvey’s hand clench around his beer bottle, the knuckles getting white.

“I punched him in the face and then he punched me in the stomach and before he could get a second punch in he got kicked out. But Harvey, Jerry, I thought he was my friend, and he was just sitting there saying nothing. And afterwards he said that the sub must’ve had some serious issues like mental problems. He said that one needed to be sick to allow someone else to do this stuff to oneself.”

Harvey closed his eyes like he needed a moment to get his feelings back under control.

“And now you’re wondering whether you’re sick or weak. Whether what we do is sick and twisted and wrong.”

Mike nodded, feeling a little ashamed.

Harvey stood up and wandered around the little apartment, searching for words, clearly agitated by Mike’s doubts and fears.

“Does this feel wrong to you?” He gestured with his hand between the two of them but kept his distance so as not to intimidate Mike in any way.

“No, but I guess it didn’t feel wrong to the sub until it got him killed.”

Harvey raked his hands through his hair, messing it up without giving a shit about his appearance for once. “Okay, valid point.” He wandered around some more until he suddenly dropped down on the sofa like he hadn’t enough strength to stand anymore.
“Mike, who do you think has the power in our relationship?”

Mike snorted. Wasn’t that obvious? “You, of course.” After a moment he added: “Sir.” It felt odd to say this word right now and Harvey seemed to think so too.

“No, Mike, don’t. Please, it’s just us, Mike and Harvey. We can’t be Dom and sub right now.”

Mike nodded. Harvey was right. They needed to work this out as equals.

“Why do you think that I have all the power?”

Mike laughed a little. “Isn’t it obvious? Because you order me around and tell me what to do. I call you Sir and you set the rules and punish me if I don’t obey. And I like it.”

“But that’s not the real reason Mike. These are just the consequences of one simple thing. Come on, Mike. You must know this.” Harvey’s eyes bore into his like he was willing him to see the answer.

“I…I don’t know what you mean.” His mind had gone blank.

Harvey sighed like he couldn’t believe that Mike didn’t know the answer.

“Mike, I only hold all the power because you let me. You let me! I don’t take anything away from you Mike. You give it to me. You entrust me with this power out of your own free will. And you can take it back at any time. All you have to do is say one word. In fact, you don’t even have to say it. You could just walk away whenever you like. Our contract isn’t worth shit. It’s just a symbol for what we have agreed on but no judge in the world would enforce it.”

Harvey watched Mike for the next few minutes and he registered every flicker in his eyes, every minute expression in his face as the truth finally sank in.

“I never saw it this way.” Mike was actually stunned that this essential fact had escaped him.

“Why do you think that I ask you for your color all the time?”

“To make me think about what I feel? So I would realize if I was not okay with something you’re doing?”

“Yes, and to make you realize that you can end everything with just one word whenever you need to. So that you don’t lose yourself in a scene.”

“Oh.”

Harvey looked at him disbelievingly. “And you really hadn’t realized this?”

“No. But, if that’s the case in all Dom / sub relationships then what has gone wrong in theirs?”

Harvey shrugged. “Hell if I know. Maybe…, shit Mike. Can you please come here? I need to hold you right now but I’m scared that you run for the hills if I come near you so you need to come to me.”

“The great Harvey Specter scared. Maybe I should take a picture,” Mike mocked him lightly but stood up and settled himself down in Harvey’s lap. The instant he made contact with Harvey’s body and felt his warmth he felt safe and settled and the craving to get high vanished.

“Better?” he asked the older man when he felt Harvey relax under him. It seemed as if Harvey had needed Mike as much as Mike needed Harvey at this moment.
Harvey hummed his approval, closed his arms around Mike and buried his nose in Mike’s hair. After one deep whiff he turned his face away with a slight look of disgust.

“Ugh. You smell like stale beer and frying fat.”

Mike on the other hand couldn’t find any fault with Harvey’s scent when he buried his nose in the crook of Harvey’s neck.

After a while Harvey continued with his former train of thought.

“I think that every relationship has the potential for great joy as well as for great tragedy. There are marriages that are abusive and sometimes a husband would kill his wife or vice versa. Would this be enough to scare you off relationships in general?”

If phrased like this, the answer was obvious. “No, probably not.”

“Only because theirs was a Dom / sub relationship doesn’t mean that all such relationships are dangerous or doomed. In fact, we know that some things we do are a little dangerous and we take precautions. We have safe words and aftercare and negotiations before a scene to prevent something like this murder from happening. I know some Dom / sub couples who have been together for years and they are happy and perfectly safe. Happier than they have been in a conventional relationship in fact. Leading a normal vanilla relationship isn’t a guarantee for happiness. My parents are the best example for that.”

“Yeah, I think I get your point. But there’s something else, something I can’t let go off. It’s probably silly but….”

“Out with it, Mike. If it disturbs you then it’s not silly.”

Mike nibbled at his lip absent-mindedly while he thought how to phrase what troubled him.

“Do you think that I’m weak? I mean, I know that I am. If I weren’t I wouldn’t need you to take over for me. And I like it when you have all the power. I need it. It makes me feel good to know that you can make me do stuff. But, do you pity me for it? For not being strong enough to hold my own? I never thought about it before but some things the guys said made me feel like I’m less of a man.”

Harvey snorted a little like he was trying not to laugh. “I’m beginning to doubt your research skills. You really need to read some more stuff on the matter. I’ll give you some books of mine.”

“Hey, I think I read almost everything Wikipedia and the internet had to offer.”

Harvey rolled his eyes in mock-desperation. “And did you watch 50 shades of Grey as well? I hear this is really good for research.”

“No. But you haven’t answered my question. So, do you see me as weak?”

Harvey leaned back a little so he could look Mike into the eyes without squinting. He cupped his face for emphasis to make sure that there was zero chance that Mike could misunderstand him.

“Subs aren’t weak. Not one of them. At least not because they are subs. Knowing yourself, being aware of your needs and having the courage to have them taken care of isn’t weak. Being able to trust someone else like you trust me isn’t weak. Submitting to me isn’t weak. In fact, I couldn’t submit. I would be too scared. But you, you are brave and courageous when you hand over the reins and trust me to make it good for both of us.”
Harvey took a deep breath, studying Mike’s face intently for a second. His eyes had taken on a soft expression and for a brief moment Mike thought that he could detect a hint of love in them but maybe that was only wishful thinking. Harvey leaned forward a little and gave Mike a slow and almost chaste kiss on the lips before he leaned back again.

“You’re a lot of things, Michael Ross. You’re smart, beautiful, stubborn, mouthy, and prone to making stupid decisions, you’re easy to rile up and you have some anger-management issues as well as some problems with discipline. You’re also funny, lovely and absolutely irresistible. You have the sweetest smile, the bluest eyes and the most delectable ass I’ve ever seen. If you give me some more time I could come up with another hundred things you are but weak is not one of them. And being submissive makes you not a lesser man either. You’re mine and you’re perfect just like you are. Got it?”

Mike had started to grin like an idiot somewhere in the middle of Harvey’s monologue and a glint of mischief twinkled in his eyes.

“You know, you’re not so bad yourself.”

Harvey raised an eyebrow, clearly waiting if Mike would elaborate some more. But Mike wouldn’t do him the favor. Instead, in true Mike-form, he tried to push his luck.

“So when you say I’m perfect just the way I am, does this mean you wouldn’t need to punish me anymore?”

Harvey grinned back at him. “I forgot lippy.”

“Yeah, but right now we are equals. You said so yourself.”

“Yes, I guess tonight you get a free pass. Tomorrow though, that’s an entirely different story. If you want it to be.”

“I wouldn’t want it any other way.”

“You sure?”

“Abso-fucking- lutely! And my color is green.”

Chapter End Notes

Mike’s friends talk about the murder of a man who was in a BDSM relationship and had been killed by his Dom during a scene. A lot of homophobic remarks and hateful opinions are voiced and Mike picks a fight with one of his friends. At home, he starts to question his relationship with Harvey.

This story isn’t beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own. English is not my first language.
I love to read your comments, even if it’s just on a typo or if I’ve chosen a weird word. I keep finding these little mistakes in earlier chapters and it really annoys me.

And please, if I’ve made any other big blunders, please be so kind and point them out to
me. I’ve never practiced BDSM and although I have some gay acquaintances and colleagues, I’m not active in the scene. If something in this chapter is offensive to you, be assured that this was unintentional and if you let me know where I was wrong, I will correct things.
The flavors of love

Chapter Summary

Harvey and Mike make love for the first time.

Chapter Notes

Thank you for reading.

The previous night Harvey had stayed a while longer and they’d made out on the sofa a little. For the most part it had been kissing and some groping over their clothes and before it could get too far, Harvey had put the brakes on. He’d offered to stay with Mike until he’d gone to sleep but the sub had assured him that he felt better now. So he’d left, trusting Mike to know himself well enough to ask him to stay if that had been necessary.

But the whole episode had made Harvey think about how he’d want Mike’s first time to happen. He’d thought about it before, entertained this particular idea only to abandon it again in favor of an elaborate scene, but now he was absolutely sure that this would be the right approach.

So, he’d deliberately dressed down a little, which meant he was wearing another pair of his dark-blue designer jeans and a formfitting black V-neck t-shirt that clung to his torso. His feet were bare and his hair left natural and un-styled after he’d taken a shower, so that it looked several shades lighter.

He’d bought a casserole of Lasagna from a famous Italian restaurant (he’d once defended the chef on a drugs-charge and had thus gained the privilege to buy pre-prepared food for take-out) and the instructions how to heat it were lying on the kitchen counter next to the oven where the Lasagna was slowly cooking to perfection.

He was chopping the ingredients for the salad right now and when Mike would arrive he could set the table outside on the deck. It was warm enough and they could enjoy watching the setting sun together.

Harvey was sure that Mike would probably try to argue after he’d told him the rules for tonight, but he could manage that. After all, Mike was a virgin and had no idea what was good for him. That was for his Dom to decide.

It was 5 minutes to six when the doorman called and announced the arrival of Mike and Harvey waited for him at the open door when the elevator arrived at the top floor.

“Hello, Sir.”

Mike seemed a little surprised when Harvey took him in his arms and gave him a long passionate kiss before he’d even closed the door behind them.
“Uhm, I guess you’re happy that I’m not late this time?”

“I’m very happy that you’re not late this time. But it wouldn’t have mattered.”

Harvey turned around and went back to the kitchen to resume his preparations. Mike followed a little confused, not sure what the shift in Harvey’s attitude meant.

“Do you want a glass of wine? Or a beer?” Harvey looked up from the chopping board and gave him a questioning smile.

What the hell? Harvey had told him to never drink before a scene. Was this a test?

“No, thank you Sir. Eh, should I undress before I kneel? And where should I put this?” He indicated at his overnight bag.

“Why don’t you put it over there for now?” Harvey pointed to the wall near the bedroom door with the knife he was still holding and Mike dropped his bag off. Then he came back hesitantly and stood in front of the breakfast bar, where Harvey was still slicing red peppers, tomatoes and cucumbers.

“So, about the kneeling…?”

The Dom put the knife down again on the chopping board and dried off his hands on a kitchen towel.

“Let’s sit down on the couch for a minute.”

Now Mike was really at a loss. What the hell was happening? And where was his Dom because this easy-going casual Harvey right in front of him was not at all radiating the Dom-vibe?

For a moment he was tempted to drop to his knees in front of the couch but this would be disobeying Harvey so he sat down instead. Harvey took the chair next to the couch, near enough that he could touch Mike but far enough away that he wouldn’t crowd him.

He exhaled once and dived right in. “We’re not having a scene tonight.”

“What? Why? Is it because of yesterday? I promise I feel better about us now. And I have been a good boy, Sir. I haven’t touched myself and I’m ready for this. Please, Sir, you’ve got to believe…” His voice trailed off when he saw Harvey smiling at him, the dark brown eyes framed with a lot of crinkles and mischief glinting in them.

“You’re joking, right?”

Harvey’s grin only got wider. “No. Not joking. But no scene doesn’t necessarily mean no sex either.”

“Okay, now I’m officially confused. I have no idea what you’re getting at, Sir.”

“So, I was thinking that your first time should be normal. And it’s Harvey for tonight, not Sir.”

“Normal?”

“Yes, normal.” When he saw Mike’s skeptical expression he tried to explain with a metaphor.

“Okay, think of it like this. Imagine that you had never tasted ice-cream, didn’t even know that there was such a thing as ice-cream. You wouldn’t start out with mint-chocolate-chip or rocky-road. You’d build up to it, starting out with something simple like vanilla to get the basics right and then
you gradually up the ante.”

“Vanilla?”

“Yes.”

“I don’t like vanilla.”

Harvey rolled his eyes. Trust Mike to ruin a perfectly good metaphor.

“Mike, you never had vanilla. You have no idea what vanilla tastes like. You have no idea what any of the flavors taste like.”

“But vanilla is boring.”

“How would you know? You never had vanilla. Maybe my sort of vanilla isn’t boring at all. Maybe you love my vanilla because it tastes rich and creamy and is made with real cream and bourbon vanilla instead of some artificial flavor. It even has the tiny dark dots in it which proves that it’s the real deal.”

“I like rocky-road better. It has nuts in it. I like nuts.”

_You drive me nuts, Puppy_, Harvey wanted to say but he caught himself just in time.

By now he wasn’t sure if Mike was kidding but this whole ice-cream flavor metaphor got old quickly.

“You don’t know that. And you couldn’t handle my rocky-road anyway. All the chocolate pieces and the nuts, almonds not peanuts, would be too much for you now. And before you bitch about it some more, just listen, okay?”

Mike just nodded but a sly smile played around the corners of his mouth.

So he had yanked his chain, the little mouthy shit.

“Tonight, I want us to be us. No roles, no Dom and sub. Just two equals who want to enjoy each other’s company. Of course I will take the lead since you know Jack Shit but there are no rules. I want to do this the normal way so that you don’t think sometime in the future that you missed out on something. We can scene tomorrow and every day after that, but you only have your first time once and I want it to be perfect for you. So, what do you think?”

“What if I want rules?”

“Well, tough. The rule for tonight is that there are no rules. But there are a lot of perks.”

“Perks? What perks?”

“You can kiss and touch as much as you want. No asking for permission necessary. You’re even allowed to talk although I’m already beginning to regret this.”

Mike’s face gradually lit up as all the possibilities of this scenario hit him.

“Does this mean I can…”?

Harvey sighed with relief. Finally Mike had got it.
“Yes!”

“But you don’t know what I wanted to say.”

“Doesn’t matter. You can.”

“What if I wanted to say that I want to fuck you with your biggest dildo after I have gagged you and tied you to your bed?”

Harvey rolled his eyes in exasperation. “Would you want to do that?”

“Probably not,” Mike admitted with a shrug.

“Good. Because there’s the line right there. No kinky stuff. No pain, no bondage, no gags. Toys are okay for round two if you want to try but round one is only us. Nothing else needed.”

Mike looked at him with a calculating expression but for the first time Harvey couldn’t get a proper read on him. Suddenly his boy started grinning and Harvey could feel his own lips quirk up in response.

“Okay.”

“Okay? Just okay?” That was way too easy and Harvey was a suspicious bastard.

“Okay!”

“Sure?”

“Yes, okay.”

“Really?”

“Yes, really. Harvey, what else can I say to assure you that I agree to your terms?”

“That was way too easy. Are you sure that you don’t want to bitch about it some more?”

Mike shrugged and grinned. “What can I say? You’re a fantastic negotiator and your arguments won me over. So, for the last time: Okay!”

“Good.” Harvey reached out and patted Mike’s knee before he stood up. “Now, I would appreciate it if you would set the table outside while I finish preparing the salad. We’re having Lasagna for dinner.”

“I love Lasagna.”

“Everybody loves Lasagna. That’s why I got it. It was a safe bet.”

Mike followed him back to the kitchen and took the plates, cloth-serviettes and silverware from Harvey.

When the table outside was set he took a moment to enjoy the spectacular view before he wandered around the deck. This thing was huge since it encircled the whole penthouse and when he turned a corner he could see two sun-beds and a low table placed beside a Jacuzzi right outside what seemed to be Harvey’s bedroom.

Before he could venture nearer he heard Harvey calling out for him a little desperately.
“Mike? A hand, please.”

He quickly went back to the table and took the wine glasses from Harvey, who was also carrying the bottle and a bread-basket and thus was on the verge of dropping everything.

“I hope you like red wine. It’s a nice fruity Chianti with only a hint of oak. Goes very well with the Lasagna or so I’ve been told. Or do you prefer beer?”

“Thanks, but the wine is fine. I’m not a connoisseur though. My kind of wine usually doesn’t come in a bottle.”

Harvey had a hard time to suppress a shudder and he even managed to withhold a sarcastic remark regarding the vinegar-like grape-juice Mike was most likely used to.

“I’ll just get the salad. You can pour the wine if you want. It needs to breathe a little. The Lasagna will be ready in another 15 minutes.”

After Mike had poured some wine into the ridiculously large glasses he settled down in one of the comfy chairs and just enjoyed the fresh air and the sun on his face. He guessed that this was one of the benefits of living in a penthouse. The sun wasn’t blocked off by other buildings, although the wind was a little stronger than it would be on the lower levels.

Harvey came back with the salad, already divided into two smaller salad bowls. But instead of settling down he hurried back into the living room but reemerged after a few seconds with a stumpy candle set on a silver candleholder. Only when Harvey had lit the candle, the implication of the whole setting hit Mike. The perfect dinner, the wine and now the candle. It looked like… no, surely not.

“Harvey, this looks a little like you are wooing me,” he stated hesitantly.

The lawyer only grinned at him. “Yep. Wondered when you would get it. You’re a little slow tonight.”

“I’ve never been wooed.” Mike looked a little stunned, like he couldn’t believe what was happening.

“Well, you’ve never been fucked either, so I thought that the one would warrant the other. I’m a little old-fashioned that way.”

“Do you have flowers for me?”

“No.”

“But there need to be flowers for it to be a proper wooing. Maybe even a corsage.”

Harvey rolled his eyes.

“I’m not taking you to the prom, princess. And you’re a guy. Guys don’t get flowers. Guys get chocolate and booze.”

“There’s chocolate?”

“I bought Belgian Truffles for dessert. And if you ask nicely I’ll even finger-feed them to you.”

“Will you marry me?” The sentence slipped out before Mike could think about how Harvey would take it. It had been meant as a joke but now he wasn’t sure if he’d overstepped.
Harvey gave him a quizzical look but then he played along. “Depends on how tonight goes. The times when a guy would marry someone only because this someone was a virgin are over. So you better give it your best effort tonight.”

“Well, since there are Belgian Truffles as incentive I’m highly motivated.”

**********

During their excellent meal they talked about music and movies and everything that came into their minds. Mike learned a little about Harvey’s life before he became the best closer in New York and his family but when they touched the subject of his mother he sensed that this was painful for Harvey so he quickly changed the subject. Tonight, Mike wanted only joy and happiness.

When Harvey had told him that they were not doing this as Dom and sub, his first impulse had been to protest. But now he could see why Harvey wanted to do it this way and only then he became aware that he had been a little bit worried about having his first time as a sub.

He wanted to have sex with Harvey, wanted Harvey to shove his cock inside his ass and fuck him senseless. But now that he knew that he wouldn’t be tied up or gagged or instructed to be the passive recipient, he could truly relax and look forward to it without the slightest hint of anxiety. Harvey would take care of him, make it good for him without pushing his boundaries.

It was amazing how Harvey seemed to sense what he needed in any given situation even if he himself wasn’t aware of it at that time.

When they were finished and only a little of the Lasagna and none of the truffles (Harvey had indeed finger-fed the first one to him) was left and the first bottle of wine had been followed by a second, Mike helped Harvey to deal with the dirty dishes. Afterwards they took their freshly filled glasses to the couch and settled down.

Harvey had situated himself in the corner and he pulled Mike on top of him, giving the younger man the control, or at least some semblance of it.

They started out with slow lazy kisses and Mike used this opportunity to do some exploring of his own. He broke their kiss after a few breathless minutes and with a nudge of his nose against Harvey’s chiseled jawline prompted him to tilt his head back. As soon as he had unlimited access to Harvey’s throat and neck he nibbled, licked and kissed his way from the pulse point just below the right ear all the way down to the clavicle and the hollow of Harvey’s throat as far as the V-neck shirt would allow.

Harvey stayed relaxed and his hands slowly trailed up and down Mike’s back while the younger man enjoyed himself. At one point Mike latched onto a patch of skin on Harvey’s throat and began to suck and only then Harvey protested.

“Don’t you dare give me a hickey on the neck. Unlike you I have a reputation to uphold. And I’m not a horny teenager. I would be the laughingstock at work.”

Mike stopped for a moment, his chin propped up at Harvey’s sternum. The blue eyes, overshadowed by long dark-blond lashes, looked up at Harvey slyly and the lawyer thought that he could detect more than just a hint of mischief in them.
“Are you worried about being marked or that anybody could see it?”

Harvey glanced down at him and pondered the question for a minute. Then he slowly shoved Mike off a little and wiggled out of his t-shirt.

“If you want to mark me, than do it where nobody else can see it. But be aware that I’m a huge supporter of quid pro quo.”

Mike, who had sat back between Harvey’s legs while Harvey had taken his shirt off, now took his sweet time to drink in the sight before him. This was the first time he saw Harvey’s naked upper body. Sure, he’d seen his cock and a little of his toned stomach but never his chest.

Harvey was solidly built and Mike could see the different muscle-groups under the lightly tanned skin. His chest muscles were well defined and he could detect a hint of a six-pack on Harvey’s stomach. Harvey wasn’t a body-builder type and his muscles were covered in a minuscule layer of fat but Mike had never been turned on by these Hulk-like figures anyway. Harvey looked like a boxer, strong and solid.

His chest was smooth, without any hair and Mike wasn’t sure if this was natural or if Harvey made his own appointments with Natalie.

Mike reached out and trailed his fingertips from Harvey’s throat down across the sternum, circled the light-brown nipples playfully until they stiffened and then dragged them further down his stomach until he reached the belly button. A little line of fine hair started there and vanished under the waistline of Harvey’s jeans, leading the way to his cock.

“You’re fucking beautiful, Harvey Specter.”

Mike had known before that Harvey must look good but the spectacular sight of him lying on his back without his shirt, looking up at Mike with the signature cocky grin on his lips, knocked the wind out of Mike.

He leaned forward and, starting at Harvey’s throat, kissed his way across all of Harvey’s upper body and gave both nipples an appreciative little lick but didn’t stop there. He went down further until he finally arrived at the belly button where he pushed his tongue in until he felt Harvey’s muscles flex a little when he hit a ticklish spot. Then he started to nibble carefully at the smooth warm skin.

During all of this, Harvey’s breathing had sped up and every now and then, when Mike had found a particularly sensitive spot, he’d moaned a little as well, but only now, when Mike’s teeth scraped over his skin, he started to writhe like he really wanted to escape Mike’s torturous mouth.

Mike used his hands and body weight to hold Harvey down and then started sucking at the skin right beside the belly button. The writhing increased but Mike wouldn’t let up and Harvey didn’t try in earnest to unseat him. He used his teeth and now Harvey moaned loud enough to drown out the record that was playing on the expensive turntable.

Mike came up for air after a few seconds and the sight of the purple mark on Harvey’s stomach made him grin stupidly. But before he could enjoy his victory, Harvey had grabbed him and swung him around so that Mike now lay on his back with the solid weight of the older man pressing down on him. He could feel the hard length of Harvey’s erection grinding against his own hard cock and he pushed his hips up against him teasingly. Today, he was allowed to do what he wanted and he would make the most of it.

“Hey, you little vampire. Enjoying yourself?”
The dark brown eyes gazed affectionately down into his blue ones and before he could answer Harvey started to place little kisses all over his face. Then he pressed his mouth on Mike’s own and they started kissing like they had all the time in the world. Their tongues found each other and it was like a slow dance, the way they wound themselves around one another. Every now and then they broke apart for a brief moment before they plunged right back again, tasting, teasing and licking.

After what seemed like an eternity, Harvey pushed himself up a little on his hands.

“There’s a Jacuzzi on the deck right outside the bedroom. The water should’ve heated up by now. I propose we get naked and continue there. What do you say?”

Mike grinned at him dopily, still a little low on oxygen after the marathon kissing-session, his lips swollen and bruised and glistening with spit.

“You, naked in a Jacuzzi? Sounds perfect.”

Harvey stood up and extended a hand to help Mike up. He’d intended to pull Mike into his arms again before they made their way to the bedroom but suddenly Mike broke free and started to run, leaving Harvey behind.

“Last one in the water is a loser.”

Harvey shook his head disbelievingly. Now it was official. He was dating a teenager.

**********

Harvey took his time since he knew that the cover of the Jacuzzi was still on and Mike couldn’t just jump in. He topped up their glasses and then slowly followed Mike. The trail of discarded clothes led him to the deck right outside the sliding glass doors of his bedroom.

Mike, stark naked and pale ass clearly visible in the growing darkness, had bent over and fumbled with the clasps that held the cover in place. For a moment Harvey just savored the sight of Mike’s delectable backside before he caught himself and came to his aide.

“Here, take this and let me do it.”

He pushed the wine glasses in Mike’s hands and unfastened the clasps before he pushed the tarpaulin off the Jacuzzi. Then he placed their drinks on one of the flat corners before he turned around, patted Mike’s naked butt (honestly, how could anybody expect him to resist?) and went back into his bedroom. At the glass door he turned around for a second, watching Mike climb into the whirlpool.

“You win. So, think about what you want for your prize.”

Mike wasn’t quite sure whether Harvey really meant it or if the older man was just teasing him but just to be prepared, he gave it some thought.

When Harvey came back out a few minutes later, wearing his bathrobe and carrying two large towels, Mike had wedged himself into one corner of the hot-tub, head tipped back against the rim and was gazing at the sky, searching for the first stars.

Harvey got into the warm water and took hold of Mike’s wrist, pulling him over into his arms. When
they were settled in, Mike sitting in Harvey’s lap, his back pressed to Harvey’s chest, head resting on the older man’s shoulder while strong arms held him firmly, Harvey let his lips trail over the rim of Mike’s ear before he placed as soft kiss on his temple. The boy shivered in his arms and Harvey was sure that it was not from being cold.

Mike sighed and relaxed against the solid body behind him.

“This feels good.”

Harvey hummed his approval.

His hand reached out and searched for something on the outside of the Jacuzzi. Suddenly, the water was filled with air-bubbles and the underwater lights had gone on. Mike wiggled his ass a little against Harvey’s hard cock when the bubbles did funny things to his balls. He could feel Harvey’s hard member bumping against his thighs and ass but the random contact wasn’t enough for him anymore.

He turned around and straddled Harvey’s lap, then wiggled a little until both of their cocks lined up and slid against each other in the warm water. Harvey’s hands cupped his ass to hold him in place so he wouldn’t drift away.

“So,” Harvey looked at him and raised his eyebrow quizzically. “What does the winner want as a prize?”

Mike moved his hips a little to create some more friction between their hard dicks.

“I want you,” he moaned when Harvey pulled him closer, their cocks now trapped between their bodies. He could feel Harvey’s strong hands pulling his checks apart a little and a water bubble found its way to his crack and slowly drifted towards the surface. Feeling the air bubble brushing over his hole was the most peculiar sensation and all of a sudden all he wanted was to be touched right there.

“That’s a given, Sweetheart. But do you want something in particular? I could suck you.”

“Want you inside me,” Mike groaned while he shifted his hips in Harvey’s strong grip. Harvey’s fingertips pressed into his cheeks a little harder to hold him in place, close to his crack, but not close enough and he flexed the muscles of his ass to give Harvey a hint. But Harvey wasn’t in an obliging mood.

“Not now, Babe. That comes later. First, I want you to be relaxed.”

Mike whined a little. That wouldn’t happen anytime in the future, not the way things were progressing.

“Please, I want your cock in my ass. I haven’t come since Wednesday and I’m fucking horny. But I want to come with you inside me.”

He was well aware how needy he sounded but he didn’t care. Tonight he was allowed to be pushy and needy.

Mike could feel Harvey grin although he didn’t see his face since he had buried his face in the crook of Harvey’s neck and nibbled at his shoulder to give his mouth something to do.

“I promise, I will make you come when I’m inside you. Don’t you worry about that. But before I fuck you, I want you to be relaxed and pliant.”
“I don’t think that I can hold out so long.”

“There’s no need. I can make you come now and by the time I fuck you, you will be ready again. You’re basically like a teenager, Puppy. You’ll manage.”

Mike gave up. He knew that Harvey would not give in and some part of his brain could even see his point. Right at this very moment his need for a climax made him very tense.

“All right then, make me come.”

“And how should I do it?” His cock was gripped by Harvey’s hand and jerked once. “Shall I jerk you off?”

Mike moaned. “I don’t care. Do whatever you want. I know that you will make it good for me.”

The hand let go of his dick but before he could protest, Harvey had turned them around and Mike’s back was now pressed against the wall of the Jacuzzi. Then Harvey placed his hands under his butt and slowly lifted his hips up until his dick emerged out of the water like a creature from the sea.

“Rest your legs on my shoulders,” he was instructed.

After he’d obeyed he lay stretched out in the water, supported by the railing of the Jacuzzi under his neck and head, Harvey’s hands on his butt, kneeling in front of him and the hollows of his knees resting on Harvey’s shoulders. His own arms were lying outstretched on the rim of the Jacuzzi, fingers tightly gripping the edge.

“Close your eyes and enjoy, Sweetheart.”

Although his first impulse was to obey, this time Mike kept his eyes open. He wanted to watch what Harvey would do to him.

The older man bowed his head and licked along Mike’s cock in one long swipe from his balls up to the tip. With quick fluttering movements of the tongue he stimulated the head until the first drops of pre-come emerged from the slit.

Harvey glanced up at him and became aware that Mike was watching him. He pulled his mouth off the sensitive tip, gave him a wicked grin and then took the head back into his mouth and swallowed him down in one go until his nose bumped against Mike’s bare pubic bone. He could feel Harvey’s throat-muscles work around his shaft and then the humming started.

“Oh god! Harvey!” The sensation was almost too much and his hips started to jerk involuntarily, driving his cock only deeper in Harvey’s vibrating throat.

Harvey pulled up a little and then started to bob his head in a slow rhythm, pulling off until only the tip remained between his lips before he was swallowed down again and his whole shaft was enveloped in the wet warm heat of Harvey’s mouth and throat. It only took a minute until it became too much for Mike.

“I’m gonna come, gonna come, gonna come,” was all Mike could moan as a warning before he came down Harvey’s throat.

“Ahh….. Harveyyy!”

His hips still made the tiny jerking motions of an intense climax when Harvey finally pulled off, giving his cock-head a last lick with his tongue. Then the hands under his butt lowered Mike back
into the warm water while his legs slipped off Harvey’s shoulders and Harvey pressed himself firmly against Mike, both hands now placed on either side of Mike’s head. When Harvey’s mouth found his he could taste his own come on Harvey’s tongue and somehow that was incredible hot.

They kissed a little more but with the initial pressing arousal now sated, Mike was able to pursue a slower pace. He could still feel Harvey’s hard cock grinding against his hip-bone though and he plastered himself a little more firmly against the solid body to provide some friction.

“Are you relaxed now?” Harvey’s slightly raspy voice was barely audible over the noise the whirlpool jets were making.

“If I stay any longer in here I will be limp as an overcooked noodle.”

Harvey laughed. “Well, then I better get you out of here.”

He stood up and extended his hands to pull Mike to his feet. For a moment they were just standing in the thigh-high warm water, bodies pressed together, and kissed.

“Thank you. You give great head.”

“You’re welcome, Sweetheart.”

Chapter End Notes

The story is not beta-read. All mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

The second half of their night together will be published this weekend and yes, I’m totally aware that this is mildly sadistic.

I love to read your thoughts on my little story so I appreciate every comment and Kudos also makes me smile happily.
After they’d dried themselves off with the plush towels, Harvey ushered Mike into the softly lit bedroom.

He’d turned the bed down when he’d undressed before joining Mike in the Jacuzzi and the young man was now lying outstretched on his back with Harvey on top of him, caressing his face with his fingertips like he wanted to learn his features by heart. Dark brown eyes were looking tenderly down into bright blue ones while the lawyer trailed with his index finger over Mike’s eyebrow, his cheekbone and down to his jawline, where a patch of skin with some stubble on it made a soft rasping noise. Obviously, Mike wasn’t the most meticulous during shaving but for today, Harvey refrained from commenting on it. Instead, he stuck to his game plan.

“Remember when I told you that there are no rules tonight?”

A mischievous sparkle glinted in the blue eyes. “Does the words perfect auditory memory mean anything to you?”

Harvey chuckled. Mike was really making the most of all the leeway he had tonight. Well, as long as he wouldn’t get too used to it.

“You’re really enjoying being lippy tonight, aren’t you?” he chided softly.

The kid only grinned up at him, not sorry in the least. “Hey, you made the rules, I’m only following them.”

Harvey suppressed another chuckle. Cheeky sod. “So, I want to make a suggestion.”

“All right. Let’s hear it.”

“I want you to lie back and just relax and enjoy for now.”

“You want to run the show?” Mike’s eyes narrowed slightly, like he wasn’t sure what to think about that.

“Since I’m the one who knows the script I thought that might be best.”
Harvey had thought that he might need to argue his point a little bit more but Mike raised his arms above his head and touched the headboard with his fingers in a submissive pose.

“Knock yourself out, then.”

It surprised the lawyer how easy Mike had given in. Maybe the kid thought that he’d been given an order.

“You don’t have to do that, Mike.” He nodded towards Mike’s outstretched arms. “And you can talk and touch me. No rules, remember? It was just a suggestion.”

Mike brought one hand up to Harvey’s face and touched his cheek softly. “I know, Harvey. But I like it this way. It makes me feel good to obey you.”

Harvey looked down at him with such a tender expression that Mike’s heart skipped a beat. Then, the older man lowered himself slowly until their chests touched and he could kiss Mike on the invitingly pink lips. When he came up for air after a few minutes his brown eyes were almost black with arousal and his cock twitched where it was trapped between their bodies.

“Have I recently told you that you’re perfect?”

“Not in the last 5 minutes.”

“Well, then I guess I need to find another way to show you how much I adore you.”

Harvey started with kissing the beautiful mouth of his boy thoroughly again, leaving the young man a little breathless when he finally made his way towards Mike’s throat.

Mike threw his head back to give Harvey better access and the lawyer immediately found the sensitive spot where the neck met the shoulder. As soon as his teeth scraped over the skin above the little brown mole Mike’s whole body began to shiver and goosebumps erupted all over his skin. This strong reaction surprised Harvey a little and he pushed himself up on his hands to take the sight in.

“Look at you, Mike. All goosebumps and pert pink nipples. Guess I found a happy spot.”

With a wicked little grin he lowered himself back onto Mike’s body and his mouth zeroed in on the exact same spot. His lips latched onto the patch of skin that had elicited such delicious reactions from Mike and when he started to suck at the spot he could feel the kid tense up under him.

After a moment of having held his breath and bitten his lip, Mike moaned loudly and his hips bucked up to meet Harvey’s. He could feel that Mike’s cock had recovered more quickly than either of them had thought possible and the erection was now grinding against Harvey’s own straining cock.

When he finally let up, a red love-bite was adorning Mike’s skin beautifully.

Harvey grinned, delighted with his work. “X marks the spot, or, in this case the spot marks the spot.”

Before Mike could come up with an appropriate comeback Harvey had resumed his ministrations and made his way slowly down Mike’s body. He paid special attention to Mike’s now smooth chest, nipping and licking all across the soft skin, but neglected Mike’s nipples deliberately. When Mike complained about it, Harvey only grinned a little, not sorry at all.

“You need to pace yourself a little, Sweetheart. I know how much you like your nipple-play but I don’t want you too excited. There’s something else I want to do before I fuck you.”
Harvey knew that patience was really not Mike’s strong suit and it was all the more breathtaking when he gave in nevertheless, obviously trusting that Harvey knew best.

Harvey worked his way down to Mike’s groin but avoided to touch the straining and already leaking cock. Instead, he caressed the smooth skin of the pubic area and the creases where it met the thighs with his lips and tongue before he sat back between Mike’s spread legs and looked at his boy.

“You’re so beautiful like this Mike. I love how smooth and soft your skin is. You feel so fucking good.”

Mike raised his head a little from his pillow and glanced down at Harvey. When he spoke, his voice sounded husky. “Yes, I like the feeling too. Getting it done was a bitch but now it feels really good.”

“So, are you gonna do it again?” Harvey couldn’t keep the hopeful tone out of his voice. He’d told Mike that he could list it as a hard limit, but he hoped that Mike would see the benefits of being smooth.

Mike laughed a little and for a second he wanted to tease Harvey, but then he opted for truthfulness. “Since my Dom loves it so much, how could I refuse? My next appointment is in 6 weeks.”

Harvey bent down and licked a long stripe from Mike’s balls up to his wet and leaking cock-head, savoring the taste on his tongue, but before Mike could even get a moan in, he’d sat back again.

“Roll onto your stomach for me, Mike.” He tapped lightly against the slightly protruding left hip-bone to indicate in which direction his boy should roll.

When Mike lay on his stomach, head resting comfortably on his crossed forearms, Harvey straddled his hips with his dick resting alongside Mike’s crack and let his weight press down on him. He bent forward a little and licked over the rim of his boy’s right ear and once again, goosebumps erupted all over Mike’s skin. Harvey grinned, happy that he’d remembered correctly.

“I’m going to open you up now, Sweetheart,” he whispered seductively.

He let his breath tickle over the wet skin off Mike’s ear and then Harvey started sliding down the younger man’s body. With light touches, almost like little butterflies were landing on Mike’s back, his lips were kissing the nubs of Mike’s spine all the way south, again leaving goosebumps in his wake, until he arrived at the perfect curve of his ass. For a moment, Harvey just let his head rest there at the soft plush pillow that Mike’s butt was, enjoying the feeling of smooth skin against his face, before he got on with things.

“Spread your legs for me, Babe.”

Before Mike could comply, Harvey had gripped the toned thighs with his strong hands and maneuvered him in the right position. He knew that Mike’s straining cock was now pressed against the soft cotton of the sheets and he wasn’t surprised when his boy shifted his hips a little to get some friction. Normally, that would’ve earned him a firm slap to his ass but today Mike was allowed to give into his needs, at least a little, without any repercussions.

Harvey grabbed his hips to steady him and his thumbs dug into the muscles of the lower back right above his ass.

“Try to stay still for me,” Harvey whispered, not an order but a plea. Then he bent forward again and let his tongue slip between the round cheeks.

When the wet muscle was slowly dragged up and down the sensitive crack, Mike’s head jerked up in
surprise.

“Oh god, Harvey!”

Mike’s glutes tensed up and Harvey could now fully appreciate how wiry and muscular his pretty boy was. Maybe he should buy a bike himself if that would give him this kind of beautifully muscled ass. But right now, all these tense, flexing muscles were a little in the way of what he’d planned to do. To calm his boy down a little, he placed soft kisses all over his butt while his thumbs drew slow circles on the skin.

“Shhh, try to relax and enjoy. No need to tense up. Just relax. I’ve got you, Sweetheart.”

**********

Mike thought that he must be dreaming. Never in his life had he thought that he could feel this way when Harvey’s tongue first slipped in between his butt-cheeks. Sure, he’d heard about rimming, but that Harvey would do this… well, this couldn’t be happening. The sudden shock of Harvey’s unexpected action and the intense and slightly weird sensation it followed made him cry out.

“Oh god, Harvey.”

His Dom soothed him with whispered words and somehow Mike managed to get his breath back and relax his clenched up muscles of his lower body.

When he’d felt the tongue being swiped along his crack, he’d nearly jumped off the mattress with shock. As soon as he’d managed to relax, Harvey’s tongue was back. It circled his hole with a pointed tip while his lover’s thumbs dug into the flesh of his cheeks, pulling them apart, so that Harvey had room enough to give Mike his first ever rim-job.

And it was a good thing that Harvey held him down so firmly, using his own weight to hold Mike’s hips down, because this incredible sensation was enough to make him want to hump a hole into the mattress.

Harvey alternated between circling the sensitive skin around Mike’s hole with the tip and licking in broad strokes up and down the whole crack.

Every now and then Harvey would pause and blow a cold stream of air over the wet and sensitive skin and Mike’s ass-muscles rippled under the strong hands as he tried to shift away from the sensation.

When Harvey looked down he could see that the pink pucker fluttered minutely, opening up ever so slightly before the muscles tensed up again. He bent down again and pressed the stiff tip of his tongue slowly beyond the tight muscle ring. He had to lean down on Mike with all his weight because as soon as the wet tip slipped into his boy’s body, Mike almost lost it.

“Ohhhh….. ahhh….Harvey….I can’t… too much…ohhh.”

Harvey interrupted his teasing and gave Mike, who had become a writhing, begging mess under his ministrations, a little break.

“Yes, you can Sweetheart,” he whispered encouragingly. ”You’re doing so well. And your ass is so
fucking beautiful like this. So smooth and with this delicious pink pucker of yours now fully on display. I could eat you out for hours."

Mike moaned and suddenly Harvey’s weight eased up as the older man sat back between Mike’s widely spread legs.

“I want to mark that beautiful butt of yours. Mark it as my property, so everybody can see that you belong to me. What do you say? Do you want to bear my mark?”

A finger drew slow circles right in the center of Mike’s right butt-cheek and the young man knew that this was the spot Harvey had chosen.

“Yes please, Sir,” Mike groaned loudly, without needing to think about it. Harvey’s suggestion hit more than one huge button of his and went directly to his already painfully hard cock.

For a moment Harvey wanted to say something but then he just shrugged it off. If Mike wanted to call him Sir even so this wasn’t a scene, who was he to deny his boy this? He wouldn’t enforce the honorific today but he sure as hell wasn’t going to complain about it either. But this slip of the tongue gave him another idea and he went with his gut.

Without warning, a firm slap landed on Mike’s right cheek, not as painful as a punishment would be, but surely no child’s play either.

When Mike bucked his hips up and his ass was lifted off the mattress like he wanted to present it to his Dom, Harvey knew that he’d read his boy right.

Another firm slap landed on the round butt and Mike started to moan softly.

“My sweet perfect little masochist.” This statement was accompanied by a third and this time very hard slap.

Mike inhaled sharply because this hit had really hurt but before he could vocalize it, he could feel Harvey’s mouth right on top of the blooming pain. Sharp teeth gripped a good amount of his flesh and then the lips closed around this patch of skin and Harvey started to suck while his teeth continued to torment the muscle and flesh. When Mike thought that he couldn’t take the pain anymore, he cried out and Harvey immediately stopped. A warm soft tongue was dragged over the hurting patch of skin and flesh again and again as if Harvey wanted to lick it better, soothe the pain away with broad gentle strokes of his tongue.

“So beautiful,” the older man murmured and swiped a thumb carefully over the slick red bite-mark. By tomorrow, this would be a pretty shade of purple, of that Harvey was sure. He carefully studied the mark for a second to make sure that he hadn’t accidentally broken the skin, but everything seemed in order.

To get back on track he once again resumed the ministrations of his tongue to Mike’s hole and after only a few strokes Mike became a squirming and babbling something again.

“Please Harvey, need… ah…need your fingers. Please, need you… please, fill me up. Need more pressure. Please, Sir!” His voice had gained volume while speaking the few words and the Sir was almost shouted out.

Harvey was only too happy to oblige and he retrieved the lube from the nightstand and carefully coated his fingers. Mike’s crack and hole were already slick from his saliva but he knew that spit was a poor substitute for real lube.
“Can you kneel up for me, Sweetheart?”

Mike immediately pushed up on his knees to present his ass to Harvey while he let his forearms rest on the mattress, assuming the same position he’d held during their first scene, but this time already a little bit shaky with need.

Harvey pressed his index finger firmly against Mike’s pink fluttering pucker and the muscle-ring gave way almost immediately, already a little loose from his tongue. Mike rocked back to drive Harvey’s finger deep into his ass when Harvey went too slow for his taste and the lawyer soon added a second digit.

Mike was moaning continually by now and his hips were always shifting, not able to stay still for more than a second and Harvey knew that Mike was very close again. If this were a scene, he would take Mike right to the edge only to deny him his relief and pull him back again and again until his boy would be begging to come.

But this wasn’t a scene, this was, as sappy as it sounded, making love. He already had strayed a little toward the kinky side when he’d spanked Mike’s delicious ass and marked him but he needed to remember that he wanted this to be a normal, vanilla experience for Mike. Well, maybe strawberry but nothing more elaborate.

So he went on stretching Mike’s hole with his fingers and after a few minutes he added a third one. For a moment Mike clenched tight when he felt the three fingertips pressing in and Harvey used his left palm to rub reassuring circles on Mike’s lower back.

“Exhale and relax for me Babe. I need to stretch you a little more to make you ready for my cock. Yes, just like this. Just like this. It’s amazing how you take it. You’re so pretty like this. Such a pretty boy.”

He carefully avoided any pressure to Mike’s prostate and instead fucked him open with slow long scissoring strokes. When he felt Mike relax around his three fingers he briefly thought about adding a forth but decided against it. By now he was a little impatient and desperate himself and since his boy liked pain, despite what his mind thought about it, he was sure that a little burning stretch would be appreciated.

The squelching noise when he finally let his fingers slip out of Mike’s thoroughly lubed hole bordered on the pornographic and Harvey’s cock reminded him with a nudge against his stomach that it felt more than a little neglected.

Harvey bent forward and pressed his chest firmly to the young man’s back while his cock brushed over the inner sides of Mike’s right thigh, close to his testicles. He brought his mouth near to Mike’s ear to whisper to him seductively.

“I want to fuck you now, Sweetheart. Are you ready for my cock? Ready to be stretched open und filled up by me? Ready to receive my come?”

The young man shivered violently at this words.

“Yes, please Sir. I want it so much.” Mike’s voice sounded so needy and desperate that Harvey could barely hold himself back.

“How do you want me, Mike? Like this from behind or do you want to be on your back with me on top?”

“Wanna look at your face while you fuck me.” The kid’s voice sounded so strained like he was only
holding on by a thread.

“All right, turn around then.”

As soon as Mike was on his back Harvey took a pillow and shoved it under his butt to prop his hips up for better access. Mike looked up at him with wide trusting eyes, pupils blown with arousal, only a thin ring of blue visible, and the skin on his stomach was slick and glistening wet from all the pre-come he had produced while Harvey had been rimming him.

Harvey positioned himself between Mike’s spread legs and leaned forward to cover his boy’s body with his own. His lips found Mike’s pink mouth and after he’d swiped his tongue over the plump lower lip playfully and made him moan with want, he pushed his tongue into his boy’s wet hot mouth.

For a moment he thought that Mike would draw back since he of all people would remember where Harvey’s tongue had been only minutes before, but Mike greeted him enthusiastically with his own tongue and the kiss soon became desperate and messy, all tongue and spit and teeth. When they finally let up to gulp some air into their lungs, Harvey pushed himself up a little on his forearms and knees and looked down on Mike’s face with a very tender expression in his eyes.

“Last chance to back out, Sweetheart,” he whispered softly.

Mike only smiled at him happily. “Not a chance.” Then his expression became more earnest and he reached up to cup Harvey’s face in his palm. “I want this Harvey. I want you. I wanted you since the first time I saw you.”

For a moment Harvey just looked at him, searching for any hint of doubt or insecurity and when he found none of that he nodded his head almost imperceptibly.

“One.”

At that, Mike couldn’t help himself. He laughed out. “Really, you’re quoting Ghost? Now?”

Harvey grinned back at him. “Hey, it worked for Patrick Swayze.”

“Does this make me Demi Moore?”

“No, you’re much prettier than her. And I like that you have a cock. Give’s me something to play with.” He ran a fingertip softly over the underside of said body part and Mike groaned with want.

Harvey shifted his body back between Mike’s legs and the younger man raised his hands above his head, once more touching the headboard with his fingertips. His boy was really a subbie through and through.

After he’d lubed himself up with a few tormenting strokes of his fist, Harvey took hold of Mike’s hips and brought his cock up to the glistening loose hole. As he looked down between their bodies’, he could see how his bright-red cockhead slowly pressed against the pink pucker and then was swallowed by it in slow-motion. The tip went in almost easily but when the cock-head flared out before the shaft began, he could feel Mike clench up a little. His cock-head was wider than his three fingers had been and for a moment he berated himself for not having Mike opened up wider.

“Relax for me, Mike. Come on, take a deep breath and then exhale. Yes, just like this. You can do it. I know you can.”

His encouraging words calmed Mike down and he pushed into his boy’s body very slowly and
stilled as soon as the wide head was fully enveloped in the tight heat.

“Let’s stay like this for a moment. Just breathe and try to relax.” His thumbs drew soothing circles on Mike’s hips while his strong hands held him in place.

Mike’s mouth had formed an almost perfect o-shape as the pressure had increased more than ever before and the muscles started to burn from the unfamiliar stretch. He became aware that he’d held his breath and exhaled slowly. As soon as he did, the pressure subsided a little and his muscles relaxed.

When Harvey felt Mike’s muscles give way around him he slowly pushed in another few inches before he stilled again.

Mike had closed his eyes like he wanted to fully concentrate on what was going on in his butt and although Harvey would have loved to see his beautiful blue puppy eyes, he let the young man be.

Instead he focused on his own breathing to refrain from just pushing into the kid’s body with one firm stroke like he so desperately wanted to do. Instead, he pulled out a little until only his cockhead was still in Mike’s hole and then slowly pushed in again, a little deeper this time.

Mike had thrown his head back, exposing his throat with the red love-bite on it, and his fingers had left the headboard. Instead, he had a white knuckle grip around the pillow his head was resting on, bunching up the fabric and holding it in a death-grip. The temptation to grip his cock and jerk off furiously was almost unbearable by now but somehow he managed to resist it.

He’d told Harvey that he wanted to come with Harvey’s cock buried deep inside of him and that desire was what he focused on now. He wanted Harvey to fuck him, wanted to feel the force behind the thrusts before he would let himself go.

It was really hard though and for a moment the thought crossed his mind that it would be easier if Harvey forbade him to come. Battling against himself was so much harder than simply following his Dom’s orders.

“Let me hear you, Sweetheart. Tell me how it feels.” Harvey had seen that Mike was biting his lower lip like he was so prone to do whenever his emotions got the better of him and he wanted to avoid any serious damage to it without giving Mike an order.

“So full. So much pressure, but so good.”

As soon as he heard Mike’s raw voice Harvey knew he’d made a mistake because the unmasked arousal and want of his sweet boy went straight to his own cock and made his balls tighten like he was only seconds away from coming.

He let go of Mike’s hip so that his hand could press down firmly on the base of his cock to stop himself from coming. For a few endless seconds he stayed like this, panting from the strain of holding on, until he could feel the immediate pressure of the imminent climax slowly subside. But in the meantime Mike seemed to have gotten used to Harvey’s cock buried halfway inside his butt and he started to wiggle his hips a little, like he wanted to encourage Harvey to move.

Harvey’s left hand took a stronger grip on Mike to still his movements but the kid would have none of that.

“Please, Sir. Please fuck me. I can take it. I need it.”

His perfect boy sounded so eager and desperate and Harvey huffed out a little laugh.
“That’s great Mike, but I might need another minute or this will be over before we’ve even begun.” Harvey’s voice sounded tense and very low, like he was speaking them through gritted teeth.

At this statement Mike’s eyes flew open and when he saw Harvey kneeling between his thighs, holding his half-buried cock in a tight grip, his eyes firmly closed and taking slow even breaths to calm himself down, he couldn’t believe his own eyes.

He had done that to Harvey. This beautiful, powerful man who oozed self-control out of every pore, was on the brink of losing it and he was the reason for it. But as much as he thought that he wanted to see this, now that the moment was there, it actually felt a little odd.

Sure, he was proud that Harvey wanted him so much, but a tiny part of his mind shouted out that this was wrong. So he refrained from any movement or comment and after a few more measured breaths Harvey had regained his composure and opened his eyes again. His fingers let go of his cock and he hitched Mike’s legs up a little.

“Wrap your legs around my hips,” he instructed the young man underneath him and as soon as Mike had used his strong thigh-muscles to hold on tight, Harvey started to push in again. A few more slow strokes and Harvey finally bottomed out.

“Oh, wow,” Mike sighed when Harvey’s big cock was buried deep inside of him. This felt better than he’d imagined in his wildest dreams. Not only the pressure of the cock spreading him open so forcefully but also the feeling of being so close to Harvey, almost like they were sharing one body.

Harvey was not only on top of him, holding him down, controlling Mike’s body. He was also deep inside of him, claiming Mike as his own. Now Mike really knew what it meant to be Harvey’s boy and he loved this feeling. To be claimed, to be held, to be owned.

This wasn’t just about what his body was experiencing but also what this act meant on an emotional level. A single tear suddenly slid down his left cheek and for a moment he felt silly that a simple fuck could make him feel that way, could touch his emotions on such a deep level.

A soft fingertip brushed the moisture away and then Harvey pressed his forehead to Mike’s.

“How do you feel, Sweetheart? Are you in pain?”

“No, Sir. It doesn’t hurt but I feel incredibly full and stretched.” To tell Harvey about all his other feelings would be too much right now, so he kept them for himself. He would tell his Dom later though.

“Let’s stay like this for a moment, then. Tell me when you’re ready.”

Mike nodded and brought his arms forward so he could touch Harvey’s strong shoulders and upper arms.

“You have the body of a boxer,” he whispered in awe while his fingertips trailed softly over the firm muscles.

That earned him a playful little kiss on his nose. “Your power of observation is actually not so bad,” Harvey quipped lightly.

“Really? You’re kidding, right?”
Harvey only shook his head.

“Is there anything that you can’t do?”

“Well, right now staying still like this for much longer might become a challenge,” he groaned. “Especially when you’re clenching around me so seductively.”

Harvey thrusted shallowly with his hips once and Mike’s eyelids fluttered shut for a moment.

“Then don’t,” he sighed and his fingers took a firmer hold around Harvey’s biceps.

Harvey started with slow shallow thrusts, like the one before. Mike was so tight and hot and Harvey was very careful with his movements. The worst thing right now would be to hurt Mike in any way. So he controlled his urges a little longer while he slowly increased the length of his thrusts.

“More, please,” Mike moaned after a few minutes and Harvey was only too happy to accommodate his pretty boy. He pulled out until only the tip of his dick was inside and then pushed in all the way until his balls slapped against Mike’s ass-cheeks with a fleshy sound.

“Ahhh, again. Please, Sir, please.”

He started to fuck his boy in earnest now, lifting the slender hips up with his hands and when he changed the angle slightly and brushed over Mike’s prostate the kid nearly lost it.

“Arghh, Harvey… harder… more… please.” Mike’s fingertips with the blunt nails dug into the skin of his upper arms like he needed something to cling to.

“Come, Mike. Come whenever you like. Just let go.”

“No! Not yet. Need more… want more…,”

Harvey let Mike’s hips go and leaned forward to kiss the pink mouth while he continued to nail him with quick forceful thrusts. Mike moaned into his mouth and Harvey sucked at his lower lip. When he bit down carefully Mike’s hips jerked up as if the pain had given him an electric jolt.

Since his boy’s cock was now trapped between their bodies Harvey could feel how slick and wet Mike’s belly already was and how the hard hot cock twitched in time with each of his thrusts. He shifted his weight onto his left side and reached between their bodies while his tongue claimed Mike’s mouth.

As soon as his fingers closed around Mike’s hard member the boy almost shouted out and he tried to jerk his hips in time with Harvey’s thrusts so he could fuck in Harvey’s fist.

Harvey continued to nail Mike’s prostate with forceful strokes while he kept up the same rhythm with his hand.

“Can’t… gonna come… come….” Mike groaned into Harvey’s mouth and then his whole body tensed for a moment, his back arching up from the mattress. Harvey could feel the sphincter clench tight around his cock and he pushed in deep and stilled his movements while he jerked Mike’s slick cock to push him over the edge.

“Ohhh…..!”

“Just let go, Sweetheart. Just let it happen. I’ve got you,” he crooned reassuringly.

The cock began to pulse in his firm grip and then Mike’s come shot out of the slit and painted white
sticky spurts on both of their chests before the initial pressure ebbed and the rest of the come flowed over Harvey’s fingers in a lazy stream. When the tension in Mike’s body subsided a little, Harvey moved his hips again and fucked him through the last waves of his climax with slow thrusts, the body under him now loose and relaxed.

When Mike could breathe normally again he opened his eyes and reached up to pull Harvey’s face down to him, so he could kiss his lover again.

“Now you. I want to feel you come inside of me,” he whispered.

“You sure? Don’t you need a minute?”

“All I need is you fucking me until you fill me up with your come. I want to feel you.”

“As you wish.”

Mike only grinned dopily, not sure if Harvey had made the reference to the Princess bride deliberately, and Harvey shifted a little, hitching Mike’s ass up and bending him slightly at the waist.

After his climax, his boy was pliant enough and Harvey moved his hips in a forceful rhythm. With long hard strokes he fucked his perfect boy until he could feel his own orgasm built slowly in his stomach. When he was nearly there, he pushed in as far as he could and then started to roll his hips.

“Oh, this feels good,” Mike sighed.

He had studied Harvey’s face during these last minutes but this new move seemed to surprise him. After a few moments he began to roll his hips as well, in counterpoint to Harvey’s and the chase for his orgasm became a slow dance between the both of them.

“Are you close?”

“Yeah… almost. You feel so good, Babe. So good.”

Instinctively Mike knew what would give Harvey the final push. “Yes Sir. I’m yours. Your good boy.”

“Yes… mine!”

The grip around Mike’s hips got almost painful when Harvey stilled their movements and for a moment Mike thought that Harvey’s cock got even bigger. Then it started to pulsate inside of him in time with Harvey’s rapid heartbeat and Harvey groaned out his release. His hips started to jerk minutely while he unloaded his semen into Mike’s warm pliant body and Mike got so aroused by the thought that Harvey’s come was filling him up, that his spent cock began to twitch and slowly got hard again.

“My boy… fill you up with my come… make you mine…ahhh!”

Mike’s hand sneaked down to his cock and he began jerking himself with lazy strokes while Harvey’s big cock unloaded spurt after spurt of come into his body.

When Harvey was finally finished and could feel his cock soften, he pulled out and laid himself down on his right side beside his boy’s body. For a moment, he just stayed like this, eyes closed and in the clutches of the subsequent relaxation that followed an intense orgasm. But instead of letting his tiredness getting the better of him, he forced his eyes open and looked at his boy.
Mike was still lying on his back with his legs now outstretched while he lazily stroked his half-hard cock.

“You’re insatiable.” Harvey shifted closer and watched Mike’s fingers trailing up and down the glistening flushed red cock.

“It’s just… I can feel your come dribble out of my ass and that’s so fucking hot.”

Harvey grinned and kissed his shoulder. Then he reached out and pulled Mike’s body snug against his own, so that Mike’s back was now pressed to his chest. His hand sneaked down to Mike’s butt and with a little nudge he encouraged his boy to bend his left hip and thigh a little forward. When his fingers trailed between the slippery cheeks, his boy shuddered and the fingers on the cock picked up speed.

Harvey slipped two fingers into the loose and very wet hole and Mike moaned loudly.

“Wanna come again, Sweetheart?”

“Yes… please… so hot.”

Harvey pressed his fingertips against Mike’s prostate and moved them in tiny circles. His right arm wormed its way under Mike’s neck and to his chest and he held his boy firmly while he massaged the sensitive nub.

His fingers squelched a little when he shifted them slightly inside his boy’s body and the low sound was so incredibly hot and filthy that Harvey barely could suppress a moan of his own. Instead, he mouthed at Mike’s neck and shoulder, licked and nipped at the sweaty skin and then buried his nose in Mike’s messy hair. Despite the Jacuzzi and all the sweat-inducing activities they had done in the last couple of hours he could still detect a faint whiff of coconut, a scent he by now associated with his sub.

“Please, Sir… may I come?”

Mike sounded so needy and desperate and the fact that he, despite the no-rules rule, still asked for permission, was an incredible turn-on for Harvey. His boy was a textbook-submissive who truly gained joy and satisfaction from being controlled, as much as he fought against it when Harvey was actually controlling him.

But fighting against a Dom, testing boundaries, was a natural process in every new Dom / sub relationship so it was only natural that his boy was also struggling and testing Harvey every now and then. With time, it would become easier for Mike to give into Harvey’s orders and let go of his own decisions.

When the fleshy sound of a wet hand flying up and down a rigid cock grew louder and quicker, Harvey abandoned Mike’s prostate for a while, added a third finger and fucked the loose hole with hard and quick flicks of his wrist.

“Yes, Sweetheart. Whenever you’re ready. But make noise for me. I love it when you’re loud.”

Harvey thought that a little order would help Mike to let go and judging by the loud groan that almost immediately followed it, he’d been right.

Mike’s body went rigid in his arms and Harvey shoved his fingers as deep inside of Mike’s hot wet ass as he could.
“Ohhh… yesss.”

“That’s it Baby. Come for me. Let me hear you.”

“Harvey! So good… so… fuck.”

First Mike’s whole body shivered violently in Harvey’s arms while the young man climaxed again but suddenly his body went lax like all of his muscles had decided to quit working at once. Harvey withdrew his fingers from Mike’s now thoroughly fucked and loose hole, wiped them at the sheet and then he turned Mike around, so that he faced him.

Mike’s face was red with arousal and the exertion from his third orgasm this night and Harvey shifted onto his back and pulled Mike on top of him, his head now resting on Harvey’s right shoulder. His fingers found their way to Mike’s hair and he petted the exhausted young man.

“Close your eyes and rest a little Sweetheart. I’ve got you. Just relax and go to sleep. You’ve earned it. You were so good for me.”

“Hmpf,” was all the noise Mike could make before the world suddenly disappeared and all he could feel was Harvey’s warm body under him before even this sensation didn’t register anymore.

**********

He felt itchy. Itchy and sticky. But also warm and relaxed and drowsy, like he was drunk. Drunk in a good way, when you’re enveloped in this warm fuzzy feeling, not in the way when the world was spinning around you and your stomach wanted to climb up your esophagus.

“Itchy,” he mumbled against the warm wet skin of Harvey’s shoulder under his chin. Why was Harvey’s skin so wet? With an almost herculean effort he lifted his head up and immediately felt a little drool dribbling out of the corner of his mouth.

“Ugh… sorry about that.” This was really embarrassing and he could feel the heat rising in his face as he blushed.

“Really, Puppy?” Harvey had glanced down on him and now grinned when he saw Mike hastily wipe his chin. “After all the body-fluids we exchanged, this is what you feel embarrassed about?”

Mike shrugged. “Well, when you put it like that… .”

“Come on, I think it’s time for a shower.”

Harvey went into the bathroom and Mike slowly followed him. His butt felt a little odd, not painful just… weird and as soon as he was upright he could feel the last remnants of Harvey’s semen trickle down his inner thighs. He was happy when he arrived in the shower. As good as it had felt to feel Harvey come inside him, as awkward was walking while come dribbled out of his ass afterwards.

Contrary to his own shower, Harvey’s luxurious shower had heated up in no time and was big enough that the both of them could easily fit under the warm spray of the rain-forest shower-head.

Harvey had poured a generous portion of his shower-gel into his hands and started to wash Mike from head to toe with gentle strokes of his hands. Although he touched every inch of Mike’s skin, he
could feel that Harvey wanted this to stay efficient and purely for the sake of getting clean. Since he was really tired and fucked out and had come three times already, he didn’t complain. Only when Harvey got to Mike’s butt his fingers lingered a little longer and probed his still loose hole a little.

“How does this feel? Does it hurt?”

Mike had tensed up a little when he felt the finger-tip touching his entrance.

“No, it’s a little sensitive but it doesn’t hurt. Really Harvey, stop worrying.”

“Hey, it’s my job to worry about you.”

Mike turned around and pulled Harvey in his arm.

“Not tonight it isn’t.”

Harvey gave in and let Mike have his way for a while and they ended up kissing a couple of minutes under the seemingly endless stream of hot water. When they finally broke the kiss Harvey looked Mike firmly in the eyes.

“You’re wrong, you know? I will always worry about you. As your Dom and your lover and your friend it is my right to worry about you, to want to make sure that you’re all right.”

Mike tilted his head a little and eyed Harvey with a thoughtful expression.

“Okay. But the same goes for me. As your sub and your lover and your friend I also have the right to worry about you. And I have the right to want to make sure that you’re okay.” He waited for a heartbeat and then added with a wicked grin. “Quid pro quo, Clarice.”

Harvey cracked up when Mike tried to make the snake-like noise with his tongue. The kid was definitely no Anthony Hopkins.

**********

After Mike had washed Harvey with the same thoroughness they both had taken care of the mess they’d made of the bed. Together they changed the filthy sheets and now Mike lay in Harvey’s arms again, naked skin pressed against naked skin, close to drifting off.

“Do you know what’s funny?” he mumbled sleepily.

“What is?” Harvey sounded almost as tired as Mike.

“I came three times but I felt great. Even after you had just fucked me I wanted to come again, only a few minutes later. How is it that it didn’t feel painful like when you’d made me come three times during my punishment?”

Harvey shifted a little under him and pulled him closer. “A magician never reveals his tricks.”

“That’s not an answer.”

“No, it isn’t but… are you sure you want to know? Destroy the magic?”
He could feel the kid nod against his shoulder.

“All right. First, you had more time tonight. I think it was almost two hours not one. And, I didn’t tell you that it was punishment.”

“Huh?”

Harvey sighed. “It’s called mind-fuck and now you probably ruined it for the future.”

Mike propped himself up a little so he could look down on Harvey. The curtain-less windows let in enough of the city-lights so that he could make out Harvey’s face in the darkness.

“So, it only felt like punishment because you told me it was punishment?”

“That’s how a mind-fuck works. That and the limited time and that I teased you where I knew that you were most sensitive and would probably hurt a little.”

“So, if I had just ignored the punishment-part, I would have enjoyed it more?”

“Probably not. But only because you wanted to be punished. I gave you what you wanted, what you needed although you didn’t knew it at the time and your mind did the rest. If you’d really wanted to stop it, you would’ve safe-worded out.”

“How can you be sure?”

“Because although you’re a textbook-subbie you also know how to survive. You’re smart that way. I will always keep you safe, Michael. From me and from yourself and from the whole world if need be. But I really believe that even if I would let my guard down that you would stop anything dangerous before it would be too late. You’re a fighter and a survivor, Mike Ross. You will never end up dead in a dumpster. You still have that thin red line that keeps you from tumbling into the endless night.”

“Wow. You really think that?”

Harvey reached up and pulled Mike’s face down to his so that their foreheads touched.

“I know it, Sweetheart. I know it.”

Chapter End Notes

This story is not beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

I love to read your thoughts on my story and Kudos is also highly appreciated.
Although it hadn’t been a restful night for Harvey, he still woke at his usual time at 6 am.

At first Mike had slept in Harvey’s arms like he was dead. At around 4 am though he had started tossing and turning in his sleep and even cried out once, but Harvey hadn’t been able to understand what Mike had been shouting.

For a few seconds he’d just lain helplessly beside the thrashing Mike, not knowing what to do or how to help him, but then he’d dived right in, dodged a flailing arm and pulled the young man close to his body. He’d wrapped Mike into a tight embrace and whispered silly endearments into his ear while he stroked and petted his hair until he could feel the sweaty body relax into his arms and Mike’s breathing had evened out again until he finally began to snore softly.

It broke his heart a little to be a witness of his boy’s nightmare and he wondered how often they occurred and whether Mike was even aware that he had them.

When his internal clock had told him to get up and start his day Harvey had resisted it for a while and just enjoyed lying in bed with his sleeping sub in his arms. But then he’d reminded himself what he’d planned for today and he silently slipped out of the bed, made sure that Mike was warm and comfortable, and started the day’s ablutions.

When he came out of the bathroom, shaved and immaculately styled but naked, Mike was still snoring softly. His boy obviously was a nightingale and not a lark.

After he’d dressed himself in one of his less-formal light grey summer-suits with a white shirt and burgundy tie, he got the coffee going while he wrote some e-mails to organize the day.

Ray would pick them up at 9 am and they had an appointment for Mike at the hairdresser for 12:30 which would give them a couple of hours to do something about Mike’s appalling wardrobe. Later in the afternoon they had another appointment and Harvey was really curious how his boy would behave himself.

It was a little before 7 am now and Harvey decided to give Mike another 30 minutes before he would wake him up. This would give him enough time to enjoy his first cup of coffee and the newspaper in
silence before he needed to be Mike’s Dom again and thus would surely need to fight a couple of battles with his boy.

Harvey had enjoyed the previous night immensely. Like he’d noticed right from the start, being with Mike brought out his soft side. Kissing Mike’s soft pink mouth endlessly, petting him, touching him everywhere and making him moan and sigh with arousal could easily become his favorite pastime. In contrast, being the stern and sometimes detached Dom for Mike wasn’t always easy and that was a first for him since normally it was a role he fell into quite naturally.

He really loved being Mike’s Dom, counted himself lucky to have found this gorgeous sub, but Mike needed a very strong and, even more important, consistent hand, especially now since he was still exploring what submitting meant. Sometimes Harvey had to be stern when he would rather be lenient and forgiving but that wouldn’t work in Mike’s favor and so Harvey had to remind himself constantly that Mike needed to be put in his place, sometimes even with a little bit of force.

He would like to include a regular sexual encounter like last night’s every now and then should Mike like that too, but not in the near future. It would be too confusing for Mike to change the rules too often. Maybe when he had progressed in his training a little, but not now.

So, at 7:30 sharp Harvey went into his bedroom, sat down on the edge of the mattress and shook Mike lightly by the shoulder.

“Hmpf!” A limp hand tried to swat his hand away and only the fact that Mike was still sleeping prevented him from getting his ass slapped for this transgression. Instead, Harvey caught Mike’s wrist with his other hand while he resumed shaking Mike awake, now with a little more force and less patience.

“Mike! You need to wake up now.”

“Wha…?” Sleepy blue eyes blinked up at him and Harvey let go of Mike.

“Good morning, Mike. Time for you to get up.”

“What? Why?” Mike argued, yawned and then grabbed Harvey’s wrist and turned it around a little so he could look at the wristwatch before Harvey broke his grip and retreated his hand. “It’s only 7:30 and it is Saturday.”

Harvey stood up and now loomed over Mike.

“Michael, look at me.”

As soon as Mike heard the special voice he knew that he’d overstepped. He clamped his mouth shut and looked up at Harvey.

“As of this morning, the agreed rules regarding your behavior as my sub apply again. So, stop arguing with me or you will be punished. Do you understand?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“I want you to take a shower, wash your hair and shave. Put on your boxers but you don’t need to dress any further. When you’re ready there’s coffee and breakfast waiting in the kitchen. You have 20 minutes. Every minute that you’re late will earn you one swat with the paddle so if I were you I wouldn’t risk falling asleep again.”

Without awaiting Mike’s reaction, Harvey turned around and left. Before he reached the door though
he could hear the rustling of the sheets when Mike climbed hastily out of the bed.

*Good boy!*

**********

Mike needed 18 minutes before he appeared in the kitchen where Harvey was flipping the last of the pancakes. His hair was still damp but he had at least tried to comb it into something resembling a hairstyle.

As soon as Mike walked up to him Harvey pointed to a chair at the breakfast bar where a place was already set.

“Sit down. Breakfast’s almost ready. I hope that you like pancakes.”

“Yes Sir. Thank you.”

Mike sat down and played with the empty coffee mug while he watched Harvey putting the last delicious smelling fluffy pancakes onto the platter.

“Do you take sugar and milk with your coffee?”

Mike answered in the affirmative and both of it were placed invitingly on the table along with the coffeepot.

“Help yourself.”

Before Mike could reach for it though, Harvey had narrowed his eyes critically and took hold of Mike’s chin. The sub froze when his Dom’s fingertips trailed over his jawline. Mike could feel Harvey’s fingertips catch on some patches of stubble he’d missed and cursed internally that he hadn’t taken more care during shaving.

“That won’t do at all.” Harvey let go of his face and patted his backside firmly.

“Go back to the bathroom and prepare your face with my shaving-cream. It’s in the mirror cabinet. I’ll join you shortly.”

When Harvey came into the bathroom after he’d made sure that the kitchen wouldn’t burn down accidentally, Mike waited patiently, the shaving cream already applied to his face. Somehow Harvey was reminded of a kid who was playing at being a grown-up.

“Show me your razor.”

He took one close look at it, shook his head and threw it into the trash without further ado. Mike opened his mouth but after one look from Harvey, he closed it again. Harvey found a new spare razor in his cabinet and showed it to Mike.

“This is how a razor should look like. Please notice the lack of rust on the blade.”

The Dom positioned himself in front of Mike and used his fingertips to tilt his chin up.

“Now, hold still. I don’t want to give you a nick.”

It felt odd being shaved by someone else and during the first slow strokes across his skin, Mike
almost held his breath. He could feel that Harvey’s razor was much sharper than his own had been. After half of his face had been taken care of without incident he began to relax a little. Every now and then Harvey’s thumb swiped gently over a patch of skin to make sure that he’d gotten all the stubble and this intimate gesture along with their close proximity was enough to give Mike a semi. He’d never imagined that being shaved by another dude would be hot.

Suddenly Harvey stopped and tilted his head a little to the side while he studied Mike’s face, or more accurately, his eyes, curiously. Then his gaze dropped to Mike’s crotch and at the sight of the slowly growing bulge he smiled.

“Is there anything that doesn’t arouse you?”

Mike could feel himself blushing under the older man’s scrutiny and his first impulse was to apologize for his lack of self-control but then he remembered how Harvey had praised him for his responsiveness and he decided to chance it.

“Since everything my Dom does to me is hot, the answer would be no, Sir.”

“That’s what I thought, Rookie.” Harvey shook his head lightly but took once again hold of Mike’s face and resumed shaving.

Mike got the whole treatment, including a splash of Harvey’s own aftershave and smelling like his Dom was a little confusing. Harvey seemed to think so too.

“We will buy you your own after-shave later. I’m sure that we will find a scent that works for you and we both like.” He let his fingertips one last time trail over Mike’s jaw, satisfied with the now smooth and soft skin.

“All right. Next time you do it yourself. And if I find you scruffy again after today I will get creative with your punishment. Remember that I told you that you’re a reflection of me? I meant it. And you don’t want to displease me, Mike.”

“No Sir. I wouldn’t.”

“Good. Back to breakfast then. Our car will be here in 50 minutes.”

**********

It was no surprise to Mike that Harvey’s pancakes, although cold by now, tasted delicious. He drowned his portion in a sea of maple-syrup and dug in heartily.

“This is really good,” he stated enthusiastically around a mouthful and Harvey set his fork down on his plate with a clatter.

“Don’t ever do that when we’re in a restaurant. Or better, don’t ever do that, period. There’s still food in your mouth. I could see half masticated pancake when you talked. That’s disgusting.”

Mike swallowed hastily. “Sorry. It’s just, this is really good.”

Harvey nodded his thank you and they resumed their breakfast in silence for a while. After the food was gone Harvey couldn’t wait any longer. He’d thought that Mike would start the day-after talk but
obviously the kid had changed tactics and tried to stay out of trouble by talking as little as possible.

Harvey refilled their mugs first and glanced at his watch. They had a few minutes to spare.

“So, how do you feel? Did you enjoy last night?”

Mike gulped his mouthful of coffee down before he met Harvey’s gaze.

“Yes. It was great. You were so nice and careful and it was really hot. I couldn’t have wished for more.”

“So, my vanilla wasn’t that bad, huh? Or boring?”

“No. Your sort of vanilla is pretty good Sir. But… .” He blushed a little and nibbled at his lower lip.

Harvey waited for a few seconds before he brushed his thumb over Mike’s mouth to make him stop.

“Out with it,” he commanded. “I want to hear what’s going on in that brain.”

“It’s just, I really liked it how well you took care of me. You were so patient and it was exactly what I needed for the first time. To tell you the truth, I had been a little nervous about it. I mean, I really wanted it but deep inside of me was this lingering thought that maybe it might hurt or that I wouldn’t like it. I know that if we had scened that I could’ve safeworded out but doing it this way was definitely better. More relaxed. I’m still amazed how you knew that, though, when I myself didn’t knew that I wanted my first time to be normal.”

Harvey shrugged. “Instinct, I guess. I had pondered the idea before and after Thursday it just felt right to do it this way. I’m really glad that I made the right decision.”

“Yeah, me too. But now that I know how it feels and that I really like it I would like to do it like this. Like Dom and sub I mean, Sir.”

“You already indicated that a little when you slipped into your role during last night.”

Mike narrowed his eyes questioningly and Harvey elaborated.

“You assumed a submissive pose, handed me the reins without arguing and even called me Sir a couple of times. Oh, and when I slapped your ass and marked you, you really got off on that.”

“Really? I… now that you mention it I remember, but I didn’t do it consciously. I think it just felt right at that moment.”

“I’m glad it did.”

“So, yesterday when you gave me the ice-cream speech you mentioned mint-chocolate-chip and rocky road and I think that now that I’ve mastered vanilla I would very much try something like this. Something more kinky. And before you scold me, I’m not trying to initiate, I’m just telling you that I’m ready for it whenever you want to go there.”

Harvey looked at Mike thoughtfully. He’d planned on pushing Mike’s boundaries with their last afternoon appointment but since he was almost begging for it… well.

“You really think that you can handle my sort of rocky-road, chocolate pieces and nuts and all?”

Mike smiled at him, eyes bright with anticipation.
“I know that you wouldn’t demand anything from me that I couldn’t handle. I trust you. And I like it when you control me. I… yesterday there was a moment when you were deep inside of me and you waited a little before you fucked me… I don’t know if you’ve noticed but I got a little emotional. It was just, the feeling of being claimed by you, that you owned my body, I can’t describe it. It just felt so right. To know that my body belongs to you and you can do with me whatever you want. I love that thought. Maybe it should scare the shit out of me but instead I just feel safe and happy. And when I succeed at a task you’d set for me, it’s the best feeling in the world. I… I don’t know why but I like it when I have to struggle a little to be your good boy.”

“Was that when you cried a little?”

Mike nodded and tried to avoid Harvey’s intent gaze. Talking about his emotions made him always feel raw even when it was Harvey he was talking to.

A warm palm cupped his cheek. “You should’ve told me.”

“I know. But I couldn’t back then. I was a little overwhelmed, only for a second. As soon as you began to fuck me the moment was over. That’s why I’m telling you now.”

“All right. But next time when you’re emotions get too much, please tell me.”

“I will try, Sir.”

They sipped their coffee for a few moments and Harvey’s gaze shifted to the windows, staring in the distance while he thought about what Mike had just told him. The kid had good instincts. Maybe it was time to challenge him a little.

“All right Mike. I want you to go into the bedroom, drop your boxers and bend over the bed. Feet on the floor, upper body on the bed, hands on the small of your back. I will follow you in a few minutes. And after I’m done with you, we will need to get a move on. Our car will be here in 15 minutes.

**********

Mike waited patiently for his Dom, curious what would happen now. The position he was in made it clear that his butt would feature somehow but whether he had a spanking coming or a finger rubbing his prostate, Mike couldn’t guess. His dick however was very excited at either prospect and strained against the mattress.

After a few moments he heard Harvey’s footfalls on the hardwood floor but although he really wanted to turn around and look at Harvey, he stayed in position.

A drawer was opened somewhere behind him and he could hear things clattering against one another. Then the drawer was closed again and Harvey went to the nightstand and retrieved the bottle of lube.

Without having said a word, Harvey now stood behind him and let the tension build. Mike had a hard time to remain still but somehow he managed it. When cool fingertips trailed over his right butt-cheek where Harvey’s mark still smarted a little, he flinched in surprise.

“You’re my good boy, Mike. I can see how hard you try to obey me and I’m very pleased. So, I’ve
decided to give you what you asked me for.”

Something cool and hard trailed lightly over his crack, only superficially for now, not pushing in between the cheeks.

“What you feel is my smallest butt-plug. I’ve shown it to you before. I will lube it up and push it slowly into your sweet little hole. There it will remain until we come home tonight. If you’ve been a good boy till then you will have earned my permission to come. However, if you misbehave today, I will not only spank you with the paddle as punishment but I will still play with you tonight for my own pleasure and you will need to learn how to go to sleep with a hard dick. Do you understand the rules, Mike?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“Color?”

“Green, Sir.”

Mike could hear a squirting noise when Harvey drizzled the lube on the plug.

“Hold yourself open for me, Mike.”

He almost groaned at that. Somehow, this was even hotter than if Harvey would have done it himself.

He reached around and spread his ass-cheeks and as soon as his hole was exposed he could feel the cool slick tip of the plug press against it and slip slowly into his body. Harvey’s other hand lay on the small of his back pressing him down against the mattress.

“Come on, Mike. Relax for me. You know how to do it.”

Mike exhaled noisily and as if on cue, Harvey pushed the plug in a little deeper. When it was about halfway in, only a little thicker than a finger yet, he pulled it out a little and started to fuck Mike’s pink hole with shallow thrusts, each one a little deeper until the plug was all the way in, his sphincter clenched around the narrowest part and only the flared base peeking out of his hole, covering Mike’s pink pucker. The Dom tapped Mike’s ass lightly, once again on the smarting mark, and then pulled the sub’s boxers up again.

“Well done, Mike. Now get up and dress. I will loan you a decent t-shirt but I fear that you will need to wear your own grubby jeans and shoes for now. Mine are a little too big for you.”

For a moment Mike was just lying on the bed, panting slightly, his ass full of silicon butt-plug and his dick rock hard, not sure if he could move at all with this thing pressing against the walls of his insides. He slowly pushed himself up on his hands and tentatively shifted his weight back onto his feet.

“Oh…,” he groaned a little when the plug shifted against his prostate as he took the first hesitant step.

“Problems, Rookie? Rocky road too much for your taste? Maybe too many nuts?”

For a moment Mike wanted to punch Harvey in that smug face of his but then he remembered that it was his own fault. He had asked for it, for this and Harvey had been nice enough to give into his wish. So he couldn’t blame Harvey for how he felt now. But his Dom obviously could sense that he struggled for the smugness in his voice made way for concern.
“Mike, give me your color.”

He took another careful step and tried to relax his clenching muscles.

“Not really sure, Sir.” Even he himself could hear the strain in his voice.

Harvey eyed him carefully. Then he took a step forward and pulled the rigid boy into his arms. While he trailed his palms up and down Mike’s back to calm him down he whispered softly to him.

“I know it feels weird. Give it a few minutes to get used to it. Walk a little up and down. If you still can’t handle it in 5 minutes I will take it out.”

Mike nodded once, his face buried against Harvey’s shoulder. He took a few deep breaths, willing his ass-muscles to relax around the rubbery intruder. Then he started to walk around the bedroom with tentative steps. Every now and then the plug brushed over his prostate and he squirmed slightly but slowly he got used to the feeling of being filled.

Harvey had watched him for a while and now passed him his jeans. “Put it on.”

Mike slowly bent down a little and lifted his foot.

“Oh…fuck!” He nearly lost his balance when the plug was pressed firmly against his happy spot and his dick nearly jumped out of his boxers.

“Better sit down,” Harvey commented dryly.

Mike eyed the bed skeptically. He had no idea if he could sit with this thing inside him but if Harvey told him to sit, he’d better try it. Carefully he sat down on the edge of the mattress, his weight only on one ass-cheek. This pushed the plug a little bit deeper inside but it was bearable. After some squirming and hard breathing his jeans were finally on and he pulled one of Harvey’s V-neck t-shirts over his head. On Harvey, the shirt would be formfitting but on his wiry frame it hung more loosely and was even long enough that it covered his crotch with the visible bulge.

Harvey eyed him critically, trying to discern what was going on in his boy’s mind.

“How do you feel?”

“I think it might be okay.”

“All right.” The Dom nodded his approval. “I can take it out now or you can color-out during the day if you need to and I will take it out whenever I can, which might not be immediately. However, if you decide that the plug stays in, I don’t want to hear any complaints about it. You can react to the feeling of it inside you but no bitching or sulking or glaring at me or any other willful behavior. Each time you break this rule will get you 5 slaps with the paddle later in the evening. So, last chance for now. Shall I take it out?”

Mike was really tempted to say yes but then his stubbornness got the better of him. Harvey wanted him to do this and he would show his Dom that he was his good boy and could take it for him. Mind over matter. He could do it.

“No, Sir. I think I’m good. I can do it.”

“Color?”

“Green, Sir.”
"Good boy. Now waddle to the couch. I will get your shoes since bending down is a little time-consuming for you right now and Ray is already waiting."

**********

When they finally made it down to the street in front of Harvey’s building, 10 minutes late, Harvey introduced Mike to his driver, Ray. Mike greeted the olive-skinned man with the salt and pepper hair and surprisingly young-looking face with a shy smile but was too preoccupied with the sensation the plug was eliciting in his butt, to listen to the conversation between his Dom and the driver regarding all the stops they needed to make today. Instead, he tried to figure out a way to get into the car without jumping out of his skin or coming in his jeans as soon as the plug would shift against his happy-spot again.

Ray had opened the door behind the passenger seat and Harvey climbed into the car with one graceful movement. When Mike wanted to follow him however, Harvey was already in the process of shutting the door.

“Other side, Mike,” Ray prompted with a slight nod of his head. “Harvey doesn’t scoot over, ever.”

“Thanks.” He gave the driver a half-smile before he slowly made his way around the back of the car to get in on the other side. He held his breath until he sat on the backseat without incident, very much aware that his own movements hadn’t been graceful at all.

Sitting felt still weird and he tried to flex his thigh-muscles a little so he would be elevated from the bench to ease the pressure on the base of the plug. Harvey noticed the tactic and laid a hand on Mike’s knee.

“Are you all right?”

Mike exhaled slowly and tried to relax his clenching sphincter. “Yes, I think I’m slowly getting the hang of it.”

“Good. I knew you could do it.” Mike thought that he could detect a proud undertone in Harvey’s voice but maybe this was just wishful thinking.

Since the partition was down, they couldn’t talk any more about Mike’s pressing butt-problems. Instead Harvey launched himself into a conversation with Ray about music.

It seemed that both of them had a preference for obscure jazz-musicians and they started quizzing each other on release-dates and record-labels. For every question Harvey asked, Ray had the right answer and it occurred to Mike that their relationship entailed much more than Harvey just being the boss of Ray. He could detect real respect and friendship there and decided to make an effort to become Ray’s friend too, like he’d done with Donna. It was important to him that the people in Harvey’s life liked and accepted him, even if they didn’t know about the role Mike was playing.

Their first stop was at Barney’s, one of the costlier department stores at Madison Avenue. Before they got out of the car, Ray already outside and waiting to hold his employers door for him, Harvey turned around to Mike and laid a hand on his knee.

“We’re going to buy you some decent clothes that you can wear without embarrassing me. I want your opinion on whether the clothes you try on fit and are comfortable. What I don’t want to hear from you are any comments regarding the style and the prize. Your taste in clothes is appalling so I will decide what looks good on you. Every transgression will earn you 5 slaps with the paddle so
better think hard before you open your mouth. Understood?”

“Yes, Sir.”

Harvey led Mike to the men’s wear department and recruited the first sales assistant he saw. In relatively short time Mike was left with the first batch of clothes in the changing room, while Harvey and the sales clerk hunted for more.

Trying on the shirts, sweatshirts, pullovers and t-shirts was no problem but the assorted jeans and pants gave him some trouble. He still thought how to go about it when Harvey came in with another armful of clothes.

“So, where do we stand?”

“This shirts and tees were all fine but I haven’t gotten around to the pants and jeans yet. Still thinking about how to bend down without coming in my pants.” He saw a slight frown ghost over Harvey’s features and hurriedly added: “But I’m not complaining Sir, just explaining the problem.”

Harvey stepped into Mike’s space, cupped his erection through his jeans and squeezed gently. Mike’s eyes fluttered closed for a second and he could barely suppress a moan. He wanted to buck his hips into Harvey’s hand, to rub himself so badly against it, but he knew that he couldn’t. Not if he wanted to come today. So he took a deep breath to calm down and with an almost superhuman effort he managed to keep his hips still.

After a moment, the hand on his groin vanished and he was pulled against Harvey’s solid torso.

“You’re doing so well, Mike,” Harvey said softly. “I know that this is a struggle but I’m really proud of you. And you almost managed to walk normally the last couple of steps.”

Harvey’s lips found his and Mike leaned a little into the kiss since it was the first one after last night. Only a few seconds later it was over but Mike somehow managed to let it end without whining or chasing Harvey’s lips with his own.

“Okay. Open your jeans, Mike. I will help you with these.” Harvey gestured to the pile of jeans and slacks on the little bench.

With Harvey’s help Mike managed to try on everything Harvey had chosen for him without any incidents. There were a few shivers and barely suppressed moans but after they found a method that didn’t cause the plug to shift too much even Mike’s dick calmed down a little so that when they were done he was only half hard. It helped that Harvey kept his hands to himself though.

After they were done in the men’s department, Harvey steered him to the shoes and bought him some pairs of leather shoes in brown and black and two pairs of sneakers as well. To Mike’s amazement, Harvey left all of their purchases at the store with the instruction to send them to his address.

The exception was one tight black jeans and one pair of the sneakers, Adidas Superstars in white with black stripes, which Mike now wore. His own clothes were handed to the sales clerk with the instruction to burn them.

The look the sales clerk gave Mike was a little odd and he could feel himself blush when he thought about how they might look to an outsider. But then he shrugged the thought off although it somehow tainted this whole experience a little. He would never see the guy again so it didn’t matter what he might think, he tried to convince himself.
After they left Barney’s Ray drove them to a men’s salon where Mike got a haircut. It felt a little weird to just sit in the chair while Harvey talked to the barber about Mike’s hair but the end-result looked fantastic. His hair was a little shorter and he could still wear it shaggy when he combed it only with his fingers but with a little hair-product and some tweaks here and there he looked stylish and sophisticated.

While the stylist was working on his hair, a nice lady gave him his first manicure. At first Mike thought this an unnecessary expense. He was sure that his hands and nails looked fine even if there was a little bit of grease under one of the nails that had gotten stuck there when he’d needed to fix the chain on his bike. But since Harvey let himself be pampered in the same way, sitting in the chair next to Mike, he kept his mouth shut and just let it happen. His body belonged to Harvey and Harvey took care of his belongings. This soon became Mike’s mantra of the day.

An hour later Mike felt like an entirely new person. New hair, new nails, new clothes. Still a weird feeling in his butt.

They got a quick street lunch at a food truck since they were already late for their next appointment and Ray joined them for a hotdog. This time Mike managed to eat without incident. Then they drove to a quiet side street where Harvey led him to an obscure shop. Inside, rows and rows of high-class suits, shoes, shirts and ties were displayed.

The tinkling bell at the inside of the door had alerted the owner to their presence and the immaculately groomed, bespectacled elegant man greeted Harvey with an affectionate smile and an outstretched hand.

“Harvey. It has been too long. How have you been, my friend?”

“Hello René. Very well, and you? May I introduce you to my friend Mike?”

Mike shook the proffered hand and noted the once over René gave him. He was happy now that he wasn’t wearing his own clothes anymore and had been groomed to almost perfection. Somehow he knew that the shop-owner would’ve had a fit if he’d walked in wearing his faded jeans and worn sneakers.

René’s attention shifted back to Harvey after a few seconds, dismissing Mike as not customer material.

“So, are you looking for a fall-wardrobe? I have some fantastic fabrics fresh in from London. With the right cut you could conquer the world in them, Harvey.”

“Not today. But I will make an appointment for it soon. Today however, my young friend here is in dire need of a few decent suits. I thought about one for casual occasions in a lighter color and a darker, more formal one, at least for now. Oh, and he needs a tux. And of course shirts, ties and all the other bits and pieces.”

René looked at Mike again, his lips slightly pouting like he was in deep thought. He swiveled his index finger in a circular motion and when Mike didn’t immediately respond, Harvey cued him in.

“Mike, turn around slowly. René needs to see what he has to work with.”

Clamping his mouth firmly shut to prevent any snarky remarks from slipping out, he slowly turned on the spot two times like a very ungraceful ballerina until René clapped his hands together. The sub just barely refrained from making a mocking curtsy.

“All right. He’s young, he’s slender, he’s a little raw around the edges, not sophisticated at all, so we
need to accommodate for that. He couldn’t pull off your style, Harvey.”

“God, I hope not,” the lawyer muttered with an eye roll and a barely concealed little shiver.

René nodded, like it was a totally reasonable reaction to shudder with disgust when being compared to Mike.

“But then, very few can. For your suits to look as good as they look on you one needs the right attitude as well as the right body-type and posture.” He once again gave Mike an appraising look.

“No, for him I’m thinking a more formfitting cut with smaller lapels. Tighter pants and no vests or he would look like a little boy wearing his father’s suit. No pinstripes either. Wouldn’t work for him. Lighter material too. Maybe something with a slight shimmer to it. Something that picks up the color of his eyes. They are one of his better features and we should make the best of it since there are so few. Are we talking summer wardrobe here or do you want all-season suits?”

“For now I’m thinking summer and fall. I bring him in for a few winter suits at a later time.”

René turned to Mike who had felt a little resentful that the two men had so clearly left him out of their conversation. And, of course, René’s underhanded slight hadn’t gone unnoticed, either.

“Do you know your inseam?”

Mike’s eyebrows rose in question. Inseam? “Probably a medium?” he hazarded a guess.

Harvey just gave him another eye roll accompanied with a small headshake. His boy had so much to learn.

René snorted a little, not able to retain his dignified composure by this display of ignorance, but somehow even this ordinary noise radiated elegance and style.

“It doesn’t work like that,” he pressed out thin-lipped, the word *philistine* clearly embedded into the subtext.

Without further ado the tailor dropped down on one knee in front of Mike and was measuring him with a tape measure, from his groin down to his ankle. Mike was so surprised he almost jumped back to put some distance between himself and the stranger. Thankfully his half-hard dick had evaporated during his stint as a male model for René because the man’s fingers holding the tape-measure trailed awfully close to his nether-regions.

René muttered the measurements under his breath but didn’t write them down immediately. After he’d taken Mike’s inseam he took some more, to Mike seemingly random, measurements.

The young man waited for the time when the tailor would finally measure the distance between his nostrils only to hand him a wand to swish around afterwards, proclaiming that phoenix-feathers and willow were the right combination for him. The picture of René doubling for Mr. Olivander from Harry Potter, which would make Harvey into Hagrid, made Mike grin like an imbecile and both of the older men gave him an irritated look, guessing that the joke somehow was on them. Luckily for him, they decided to ignore him.

René went to his counter and noted down Mike’s measurements and soon Harvey joined him and they talked about fabrics and color and lapel-style and a million more things that Mike didn’t knew anything about and was not in the least interested in. Since Harvey had made it more than clear to him that he would have no say in it anyway he started to wander around in the shop, feeling like a little kid left to his own devices while the adults talked about important things.
He browsed through the shelves and hangers where dozens of suits and shirts were on display. He picked one suit randomly and glanced at the price-tag. 12,800 $. Holy Shit! How one could spent so much money on an article of clothing was outside Mike’s ability to understand. He picked another suit, thinking that the first one must have been a fluke, but no, the figure on that price-tag was even a little higher.

Suddenly it hit him. Harvey wanted to buy 3 suits for him and all the other stuff too. The thought that Harvey was willing to spend so much money on him made him feel a little sick and he had a hard time breathing. This wasn’t right. He couldn’t let Harvey spend such a fortune on him.

The check from Pearson Hardman for the 25 grand had been fine. This was strategy and Mike would pay everything back. But this was Harvey’s own money. And he’d already spent a shitload of it at Barney’s. Clothes that were now Mike’s. All of a sudden it felt like Harvey was trying to buy him with pretty things and this felt wrong. He needed to stop this. He couldn’t be Harvey’s kept boy, his… whore.

Hesitantly he made his way over to the counter where his Dom and the tailor still discussed suits.

“Ehm.” He softly cleared his throat to gain Harvey’s attention. However, when this didn’t work he decided to interrupt their talk before they wasted any more of René’s time.

“Excuse me, Harvey. Can I talk to you for a second?”

“What is it Mike?”

“Maybe over here?” He tried to get Harvey away from René and after a few seconds Harvey gave in, having noted the determined expression in Mike’s eyes.

“I’m very sorry. Please excuse us for a moment, René.”

Harvey took Mike by the elbow and steered him into a corner.

“What is so important that you interrupted us, Mike? Do you need me to take the plug out? I thought you were getting used to it.”

“I… please, Sir. I can’t let you spend so much money on me. That’s just not right. And you’ve already spent a lot on the t-shirts and pants and shoes and all. I’m sure a suit for a few hundred dollars would suffice if I even need a suit at all. The stuff you bought at Barney’s is surely enough.”

Harvey crossed his arms in front of his chest and eyed him with a very stern expression.

“You really want to color-out because of this, Mike? After everything I’ve done to you already, this is your red line?”

“Yellow,” the sub repeated stubbornly.
Harvey watched him for another second and then slowly nodded his head before he turned around to René.

“Please excuse us for a moment. Mike and I need to discuss something in private.”

He gestured for Mike to leave the shop and followed him. When they stood at the sidewalk, a few steps away from the entrance to the shop, Mike turned around and held up his hands.

“Please, hear me out, Harvey. I need you to let me talk without the threat of a punishment hanging over my head.”

“Go ahead then. I promise that I won’t punish you for what you tell me. You safeworded, after all.”

“Really?” Mike still was suspicious.

“Really. This is how safeworking works, Mike. No punishment, I promise. Now tell me what’s going on.”

“I can’t let you spend so much money on me, Harvey. This is insane. These suits cost more than 10 grand. That’s more than I make in four months. And you want to buy three of them. You’re my Dom and my lover but I already told you that I don’t want a sugar daddy. You can’t give me the feeling that you’re paying me for being your sub. You already bought me a shitload of new clothes, stuff that I can wear when you want to take me out. But Harvey, these suits… that’s too much. I can’t … I just can’t. This is wrong. I’m not a whore but somehow you’re making me feel like one.”

Harvey had remained perfectly still while Mike had his say. His arms were crossed in front of his chest, face impassive like he was in court. But after Mike’s last declaration, the brown eyes started to soften and a small sigh escaped the lawyer’s lips.

“Are you finished, Mike?”

“I… yes.”

Harvey stared a moment in the distance like he needed to sort out his thoughts. Then he looked at Mike but instead of the steely Dom-glare his gaze was soft and even a little apologetic.

“First of all, I’m not trying to buy you. And surely not with clothes since I know that they don’t mean anything to you. You must believe me, Mike. It was never my intention to make you feel like this. Like my whore. You’re not. I would never see you like this.”

He reached out with one hand to touch Mike’s face but he caught himself halfway and instead the hand found its way to Harvey’s tie and straightened it. A gesture that was totally unnecessary since the tie had looked perfect, but this small sign told Mike that Harvey was not at all composed right now, contrary to his outside appearance.

After a few more silent moments, Harvey tried to explain his motives to Mike.

“You don’t really know me, Mike. Not all of me, anyway. Not the person I am to the rest of the world. I’m a selfish bastard. Ask Donna, ask Ray, ask anyone who knows me professionally. My image is very important to me. I told you before that I don’t come from money although I’ve gotten used to it since I started earning huge amounts of it. Money isn’t important though, not really anyway. It’s for spending, for making my life comfortable. However, how people perceive me is important to me.”

He shook his head slightly. “If you were only a part-time sub for me, someone to fuck and spank
every now and then, than I wouldn’t give a shit what you’re wearing since I would keep you naked in my condo all the time.” Harvey once again reached out with a tentative hand and this time his fingertips trailed softly over Mike’s face.

“But you’re more to me, Mike, in case you haven’t noticed. So much more. Between us there’s this connection and I don’t want to hide you away in my condo. I want to parade you around and show everybody what a beautiful and perfect boy I have. How lucky I am to have you. And I want people to see that I can take care of you, provide for you. Yes, I’m that vain and I want them to be jealous that you’re mine. Clothing is a part of that. So, I’m buying you clothes because I’m a vain and selfish bastard, Mike. Not because I want to buy you. This is more for me than it is for you, since I’m well aware that you don’t give a shit about all that. But I do. So, please let me provide for you and dress you up so that everybody in my world can see your beauty.”

Harvey looked almost pleadingly at him and Mike could see how much of his soul Harvey had laid bare for him. The thought of all the money Harvey was spending on him still nauseated him, but the sick feeling in the pit of his stomach eased up a little.

“As long as it is clear that I don’t need or want this. Like you said, I don’t give a shit about your money. I’m not with you because of that. I’m not a whore or a freeloader. All I need and want is you. Your attention and affection and dominance. I need nothing else from you, Harvey.”

Harvey reached out and pulled Mike into his arms.

“You’ll have it, always. I promise.”

Mike had buried his nose in the crook of Harvey’s neck and when he nodded the older man could feel the soft hair brush slightly against his skin. Sadly, after the visit to the salon, it didn’t smell of coconut anymore but had an artificial flowery scent.

“All right then. Do what you must in order to feel superior to the rest of the world. But please Harvey, never let me know how much you’ve spent. I might be sick if you tell me.”

He could feel Harvey grinning against his temple.

“Deal.”

Chapter End Notes

All mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

I’m happy to read your comments, even if it’s just about a typo and Kudos is of course always appreciated as well.
Harvey takes an already struggling Mike to their last appointment of the day. Will Mike continue to be Harvey's good boy or will he forfeit any chance of an orgasm?

After Harvey had ushered him back into René’s shop, the tailor had selected some suits for Mike to try on. Harvey once again had doubled as Mike’s valet and helped him with the pants so that there wouldn’t be an incident. By now, the sub was almost able to forget about the inches of silicon that stuck in his ass as long as he only needed to walk, but sitting or bending down still proved a little difficult.

After he’d tried on several of René’s creations, Harvey sent Mike away to wait in the car while he finalized the order with the tailor, staying true to his word that Mike would never know how much his Dom had spent on him.

When Harvey finally joined him in the car, Mike was done for. Never having been the guy who enjoyed to go shopping, the day had proven more than a little challenging already, and not just because of the plug. He longed to get home, get naked, get fucked and get to come, preferably in that order. Maybe a little something to eat, like the leftover Lasagna from last night, would be welcome too, but other than that, he didn’t want to do anything more.

So Mike almost ruined his up until now spotless record when Harvey gave Ray an address in Hell’s Kitchen.

“Why aren’t we going home?”

Harvey, who had typed something on his phone, just shook his head instead of answering his question and resumed typing.

“Where are we going then? I think I already have everything that I need, Sir.” He noticed himself that his voice sounded a tiny bit rebellious but his nerves were a little frayed right now.

“You’ll see when we get there. Now shut up. Practice for later. You’ll need it.”

That decisive tone in Harvey’s voice sounded ominous and was enough warning for Mike to let it go although he had a hard time to suppress the little petulant huff that wanted to slip out between his lips. He compensated for it with an eye roll which Harvey couldn’t see since Mike made sure to look out of the window when he did it. Sure, he felt a little rebellious but not enough to sacrifice the chance of an orgasm.
Shortly before they arrived at their destination, Harvey hit a button at the car’s door and the partition between Ray and the backseat slid up.

Harvey’s hand found its way back to his knee which was by now a sign for Mike that he needed to pay attention. Obediently he shifted his eyes to meet Harvey’s gaze, which earned him a small, approving smile.

“I’m proud of how you handled the situation with René earlier. Safewording was the right option and I’m glad you did it. It gave us time to talk about our feelings without any of us, which means you, getting into trouble or getting angry and it spared me from having to spank you. So, thank you for that. It was a good call and it shows me that you’re learning to handle your impulses.”

Harvey leaned over and rewarded Mike with a quick but no less intense kiss before he leaned back again.

“However, compared to what had been happening at René’s, the place I’m going to take you to next, and the man I will introduce you to, might prove even more of a trial for you. Or maybe not. It remains to be seen. So, I want you to bear in mind that you can color-out whenever you absolutely need to. But before you do, I want you to trust me, even if you struggle a bit. Focus on me, Mike. And remember, you’re mine and I always take care of what’s mine.”

During this speech, Mike had started to nibble on his lower lip like he was so prone to do when he was nervous and his left leg began to bounce rapidly like he needed an outlet for the pent-up emotional strain Harvey’s little announcement had caused. The sight of the jumpy sub was enough to convince Harvey that he needed a little more help to prepare for the upcoming situation, so he explained further.

“We’re going to visit a friend of mine. His name is Kieran O’Connor and he is the Dom who took me under his wing when I started out in the scene. He’s got this little shop and he is opening it exclusively for us. I’m aware that you’ve never encountered another Dom whilst in my presence so during our meeting with Kieran I want you to obey the following rules.”

Harvey held up his hand and counted the rules one after another with his fingers.

“Firstly, I want you to keep silent unless you’re asked a question. Secondly, I will indicate to you with a gesture, when I expect you to kneel.” Harvey made a down-gesture with his flat palm pushing to the floor. “Your eyes are on the floor in front of you unless I tell you otherwise and that goes for when you’re kneeling as well as when you’re standing by my side. Thirdly, when I introduce you to Kieran, you will bow your head, you will call him, and me of course, Sir and you will be infallibly polite to the both of us. Fourthly, you will obey every order I give you, even if you don’t know the reason for that order. Do you understand, Michael? This is really important to me.”

“Yes, Sir, I understand. But may I ask a question?”

Harvey nodded his consent.

“Will your friend touch me?”

Mike sounded like this thought really agitated him and Harvey could understand why Mike would be concerned about it. After all, being given to another Dom was a hard limit for Mike. But since the short time he’d been with his sub it had become a hard limit for him as well although Mike didn’t know that yet. He didn’t want to share Mike with anybody. Mike was his sub and his alone.

“I think that this won’t be necessary. But if the need for that should arise, I guarantee you that we
will explain to you why and ask your permission. Would that be all right, Michael?”

Mike exhaled audibly and even managed a little nervous smile. “Yes, I think that will be okay, Sir.”

“Then give me your color. And I will not ask you again for it as soon as we’re through the door but you can be assured that I will watch you very closely, nonetheless. I will know if you encounter any problems and I will help you if I deem it necessary.”

“My color’s green, Sir. I trust you.”

Harvey leaned over again and quickly brushed his lips against Mike’s temple.

“Thank you, Sweetheart.”

**********

The red brick building in a quiet side-street looked normal enough and Harvey made his way to a non-descript black metal door. A discreet brass sign with only the name “O’Connor” etched in black italics into it was the only indicator that a business might be housed behind that door. What kind of business, the sign didn’t say.

Harvey rang the bell and looked into a small camera and after only a few seconds the door was buzzed open. It led into a dimly lit but immaculately clean stairwell and they climbed up to the second floor. There, they were greeted by a tall, red haired and bearded man who opened another non-descript door with the same sign on it for them.

“Harvey. Come on in. So nice you could finally make it.” There was a hint of criticism in the greeting.

“Hello Kieran. Sorry, we’re a little behind schedule. René wouldn’t quit fussing over Mike.”

The two men took a few steps into the little unadorned ante-room while shaking hands and Mike followed tentatively. So far, he had been pointedly ignored by Harvey’s friend.

“Kieran, this is my sub Mike.”

For the first time, the red haired man shifted his attention to Mike and looked openly at him.

The sub took a step forward so that he was standing right beside his Dom but remembered just in time and bowed his head a little instead of offering his hand.

“Sir.”

“Hello Mike. Look at you. You’re a pretty little subbie.” The dark voice of the very tall stranger had a pleasant Irish accent but the somewhat patronizing tone of voice was rubbing Mike the wrong way right from the start.

Mike didn’t know what to say and since Kieran’s statement wasn’t a question, he kept his mouth firmly shut and looked demurely down at the floor, glad that he could hide his irritation from the strange Dom.

A pleasant baritone laugh followed his display of submissiveness.
“And well behaved. Congratulations Harvey. Looks like you trained him well.”

Harvey’s hand had found its way to the small of Mike’s back where his thumb was rubbing slow circles while the rest of the hand was radiating warmth through the thin fabric of the t-shirt, like he could feel Mike’s irritation and wanted to reassure him that everything was fine. Harvey’s voice though was very matter-of-factly and even a little apologetic. Apologetic for Kieran’s benefit and not for Mike’s.

“We’ve just started with the training and although Mike is very eager to learn, sometimes his emotions get the better of him. So I would appreciate it if you wouldn’t test or tease him. I’d rather fuck his ass tonight than spank it. And Kieran, I know I don’t have to tell you but just in case, no touching without asking me first. It’s a hard limit.”

At that, Kieran shot Harvey a surprised look. “Yours or his?”

“For both of us. I don’t share him.”

Harvey made the down-gesture with his hand and Mike obediently sank to his knees, hissing a little under his breath when the plug shifted inside of him.

“Bad knees at his age?” Kieran asked with sympathy, but more in Harvey’s direction than towards Mike.

“ Butt plug,” Harvey explained dryly.

“Ah, that would do it. He walks okay though. Maybe a little funny but barely noticeable. Could have been just some sore muscles from working out.”

“He had the whole day to practice. You should’ve seen him this morning. Almost came in his pants a couple of times.”

“Poor little subbie. He’s a newbie then? Or did you use a big one to stretch him wide?”

“Smallest. But up until yesterday he’d been a virgin.”

“Wow. You’re one lucky bastard.”

A hand landed softly on his head and began petting his hair and massaging his scalp with the fingertips. Mike instinctively leaned a little into the touch. During the conversation he’d become more and more irritated and although he knew that Harvey had no intention of making him feel bad, the way the two men talked as though he wasn’t there or worse, a pet, irked him.

“I know, Kieran. Believe me, I know.”

The red haired man clapped his hands together as if to emphasize the beginning of a new topic.

“So, you want to buy your subbie’s very own equipment, then? Do you have something special in mind?”

*Water bowl, leash, dog bed, chew-toy,* Mike thought sarcastically. The two men could’ve talked about a real puppy if one didn’t know the context.

“The usual, I would say. He’s very responsive to nipple-play so a few different clamps are definitely on my shopping-list. Cock rings too. He looks beautiful when he’s desperate. Maybe some restraints and gags as well, but I’d like to start with the clamps.
“What about a collar? You know that I could make one to your specifications. I could take the measurements today and when I’m done in a couple of days, depending on the design, it would fit him perfectly.”

Harvey looked down at Mike who still had his gaze fixed firmly on the floor. But he could feel the tension radiating from Mike’s body. Collaring a sub was a huge step and Mike’s thoughts on the questionnaire regarding collaring had been undecided. Harvey knew that they would need to talk about it sooner or later, but at this stage of their relationship it would be too early.

“Not yet, Kieran. We haven’t talked about it properly and since Mike has been my sub for only a little over a week now, this might be a little premature.”

The other Dom just shrugged. “All right, follow me to the show-room.”

He led them through the doorway into a bright open room, maybe twice as big as the living space in Harvey’s condo. Shelves and display-cases were lining the brick walls and in the spaces between the large industrial sized windows some mannequins in complicated restraints made from leather and metal-chains were on display. A Saint-Andrews-Cross and some other BDSM-furniture were also visible, some of it even fastened to the walls for safety. Situated near the doorway there was a counter with a computer and some paperwork on it, the only indication, that this was indeed a shop of some sorts. Otherwise it could’ve have been a gallery.

The centerpiece of the room was an elaborate spanking bench. It was situated right beneath a spotlight and it looked beautiful to Mike with its brushed aluminum frame and the rich dark-red leather upholstery. He could see that the knee and hand rests were adjustable as well as the angle of the bench itself, so that a sub could be brought in several positons. Long leather straps were hanging down the sides of the bench, nearly reaching the floor, so that whoever was being spanked could be securely tied down. Despite the bank being essentially a torture device, it looked oddly comfortable.

He wondered briefly what it would feel like to be tied down on that bench and spanked by Harvey. To feel helpless and totally at his Dom’s mercy, while his body was played with. He shook his head to clear it of this thought and looked around some more since there was a lot to see.

He started wandering towards a display case to look inside and thus started falling behind the two men, who were now standing beside the spanking bench in the middle of the room. When Harvey noticed that Mike wasn’t walking behind him at his heel anymore he called out, sounding a little annoyed.

“Mike! Come here.”

Having noticed Harvey’s irritation the sub hurried over to him, anticipating the down-gesture but instead Harvey turned to Kieran.

“I haven’t told Mike what to expect here and since his curiosity almost got the better of him just now and wandering off like that and not walking at heel would under normal circumstances get him into trouble, I’d like to explain a few things to him.”

“Sure. Tell you what. I will select some nipple-clamps for you and in the meantime you can brief your subbie.”

The Irishman went to one of the display-cases at an outside wall.

“Mike, come here and eyes at me.”

Harvey pointed in front of him, indicating the exact spot where Mike should stand and the sub
positioned himself properly and shifted his eyes off the floor up to meet his Dom’s eyes.

“I know that this is a lot to take in. So, let me explain a few things to you.” He gestured around the room with a broad swipe of his arm indicating that Mike was allowed to look around too.

“As you can see, this is basically a sex-shop, but not a regular one. Kieran is the owner and also the designer and creator of a lot of things you can see here. He used to be a goldsmith and jeweler but now he uses his skills to create beautiful pieces of special-equipment from small items like nipple-clamps and cock-rings up to big furniture like this.” He tapped with his hand on the spanking bench and suddenly Mike was a little in awe that Kieran had built it.

“This shop here caters almost exclusively to the BDSM-community and Kieran is well renowned world-wide in certain circles. A few of the things you see here are made of silicon or latex and thus not by his design, but most of the pieces are made from metal and leather. I brought you here to purchase your very own selection of nipple-clamps and cock-rings and a few other bits and pieces as well. Sure, I could have bought you some generic stuff of the internet but, like the suits, I prefer custom-made and always buy from the best. And Kieran is the best in his chosen field.”

“That’s very nice of you to say, Harvey.”

The owner had joined them again, a jewelers-tray with an assortment of different nipple-clamps in his large hands. The silvery items sparkled on their dark blue velvet underground. This was indeed no ordinary sex-shop. This was the Tiffany’s of sex-shops.

“It’s the truth, Kieran. You know that I’m not a flatterer.”

“So, do you like to put these on your subbie, try them on for size, so to speak? Everything you can see here is available in silver, gold in different colors and platinum. If you want some pretty stones that can also be arranged although I do the sparkly stuff mostly for female subs. Same goes for cock-rings if they’re metal. But I could put some jewels on leather-ones as well, if you like.”

Harvey nodded after having perused the selection and turned once again back to Mike to eye him pensively.

“I think on his fair skin white gold or platinum will look best. No stones though. That would be a little too girly, I think.”

Kieran nodded. “Aye, I think you’re right. These clamps here are all made of silver but like I said, the material is optional. These are only display-pieces. But don’t you worry, I clean them after every showing.”

Harvey nodded and looked Mike over thoughtfully.

“Mike, take off your clothes. We will need to see how these and a few other things fit you, so get naked.”

Mike’s mouth actually fell open at that and for a few heartbeats he thought he’d heard wrong and stayed motionless. Surely Harvey wouldn’t demand that he would be naked in front of a stranger.

“5…4…3…”

Well, obviously he’d thought wrong. Hurriedly he slipped his feet out of his shoes and then started to take off his clothes. His face was burning bright red with humiliation though.

He loved to get naked for Harvey and in general he was not a shy person, but showing himself bare
and vulnerable to Kieran was something that Mike would rather not do, especially since the other Dom watched him like he was a prized spaniel and not a human being.

But Harvey had asked for his trust so he would at least try to obey him as far as he could. And he’d agreed to public play in a safe environment and although this was not what he’d pictured when he’d answered this part of the questionnaire, this shop that had only opened for them could be seen as safe environment. So Harvey’s demand was within their agreed parameters and Mike couldn’t complain. And he didn’t want to color-out again. Once a day was enough.

He winced a couple of times when he needed to bend down to get his socks and tight jeans off but although the plug was pressed snuggly against his prostate in this hunched over position, his dick obviously disliked Kieran as much as Mike did for it stayed stubbornly flaccid.

Harvey put Mike’s clothes over what seemed to be an arm-rest of the spanking bench while Kieran had placed the tray with the assorted nipple-clamps on the middle-section of the bench. Now he was watching Mike with his arms crossed in front of his broad chest and a pondering expression on his face as though he were studying the sub for some unknown reason.

As soon as he was naked, Mike crossed his wrists on the small of his back and looked down on the floor, focusing firmly on a spot in front of his bare feet so that he wouldn’t see what Kieran was doing.

He’d decided to try to ignore the other Dom’s presence for now and pretend that it was only Harvey and him here in this room. But he could still feel the heat in his cheeks and he knew that the blush had most likely crept even down his throat and onto his chest a little.

“He’s a shy one,” Kieran remarked right on cue. “Very pretty, though, with your marks on him. His fair skin shows them very well. Did you have him waxed or did he do it on his own?”

Mike started to bite his lip vigorously again. Shut up, shut up, shut up!

“I’ve sent him to Natalie. She did a great job although he’s always been beautiful, even with the little hair he had before.”

Harvey sighed a little when he saw what Mike was doing to his lower lip. He brushed his thumb softly over Mike’s mouth to stop him and then laid a hand on Mike’s shoulder and flexed his fingers to anchor him but all the while he resumed his conversation with the other Dom.

“Kieran, I’m sorry, but it seems that Mike is already only holding on by a thread. It has been a long and demanding day and so far he has done amazingly well but now it’s obvious to me that he will do something stupid within the next few minutes, like open his mouth and say something he shouldn’t. In order to prevent that, I need another few minutes. Maybe you could select a few different cock-rings and cages in the meantime. He is long and on the slender side when he’s erect.”

Mike could feel Kieran’s gaze burn on his skin for a second, but then the Irishman left them alone.

“Kneel, Mike. Eyes up to me.”

As soon as he looked up and found Harvey’s brown eyes, Mike felt a little steadier and his nerves calmed considerably.

“Can you tell me why you are so agitated? Preferably in one sentence?”

Mike needed a few moments to formulate a coherent sentence that would bring his point across.
“You two talk about me like I’m a pet and not a person and this makes me feel like I’m worthless, Sir.”

Harvey looked down at him and for a moment a calculating expression flickered over his strong features. Then his fingers slid into Mike’s hair and began to pet him.

“You are a person, Mike. Kieran and I know that. But as a sub you’re also like my human pet.”

Mike narrowed his eyes at that and Harvey actually laughed a little.

“You don’t believe that? Just feel my fingers in your hair right now. I’m petting you Mike and you love it. I tell you to kneel for me, to assume a certain position for me, even to come for me, and you not only do it, you love it. And I love that you love it.”

The caressing fingers slid down towards his face and Harvey trailed them softly along the cheekbones down to Mike’s jawline before the fingers slipped to the back of his neck where they flexed with a little pressure just below his hairline while the thumb continued to caress the sub’s face.

If Mike had been a real puppy the mother-dog would’ve held him right at that spot, at the scruff of his neck, and feeling the pressure of Harvey’s fingers holding him there did something to Mike. He wanted to close his eyes and give himself over and before he could think about it, he leaned into the touch and his whole body relaxed.

“The resentment and anger you feel right now is your mind getting the better of you, telling you to fight your instincts and apply common rules to this uncommon situation. But there is nothing wrong with your instincts. You leaning into my touch right now for example, that’s just stunning, Mike. For the both of us. So, stop fighting so hard, Michael. I’m here. I’m taking care of you and all you need to do is trust me and follow my lead.”

Harvey broke the grip on Mike’s neck and instead cupped the sub’s face with both hands.

“You’re my pretty little sub. My beautiful good boy. And right at this moment you have not one but two very experienced Doms here who want to take care of your needs.”

Harvey could see in Mike’s eyes that the sub still wasn’t convinced so Harvey decided to share some private details.

“You know, Kieran has been in a relationship with a beautiful little sub named Laura for the past couple of years and if you ever have the luck to observe them together you will immediately see the love and devotion they have for each other. I’ve watched them play a couple of times but I never had a real conversation with Laura. I complimented her once after Kieran had put on a show with her at Natasha’s but I never really talked to her. She’s not mine and a Dom doesn’t speak to another Dom’s sub for no good reason and without permission. Most Doms I know have a possessive streak and random, not pre-negotiated contact with another Dom’s sub, is something most of us frown upon. But just because we don’t treat you as an equal doesn’t mean that we don’t treasure you for who you are. So stop being offended. There’s no need for that.”

“It’s just, I feel so humiliated,” Mike mumbled. “Sorry, but I can’t help it, Sir.”

“And why is that, Michael? Two Doms are telling you that you’re pretty and beautiful. That you’re well trained and good behaved. That I’m lucky to have found you. Why on earth should you feel humiliated?”

“I… it’s just… if you put it like that, I don’t know. It’s just a feeling.”

“Okay, think of it like that. Tonight, you’re the center of attention of two well-renowned Doms who
want to find the right equipment for you so that you can look even prettier and feel good when I play with you. And although you will have no say in what I want to put on or even in your body and what I will purchase, you’re still the main person here, and from now on hopefully a silent and obedient one.”

Mike thought about that for a second, sure that there was a flaw in Harvey’s reasoning, but for the life of him, he couldn’t find it.

“I’m sorry Sir. I didn’t see it like that but now that you’ve explained, I know that you’re right.”

“So, can I signal Kieran to come back again? He’s hovering across the room with a tray full of cock-rings and cages and I can’t wait to slip one of those around your pretty little cock.”

“Yes, Sir. Sorry that I misbehaved.”

“It’s all right, Michael. Like I told you before, I’ll watch you closely and take care of you if you need me.”

Mike could hear the footfalls of the approaching Dom.

“All sorted out now?” The dark voice sounded actually a little concerned.

“Yes, thank you for giving us some time.”

“Do I need to know about it?”

“No, I think we’re good. But it is safe to say that Mike has not a humiliation kink. Hence the less than enthusiastic cock. And you can believe me when I say that’s a first.”

“Humiliation?” Kieran seemed honestly baffled.

“Like I told you, it’s a very early stage in his training and although he takes my orders usually quite willingly, he has never interacted with two Doms at once and thus doesn’t know the protocol yet. He felt that we haven’t treated him like a proper person and he felt a little hurt.”

“I… I’m really sorry to hear that.” The Irish’s tone of voice rang true and Mike was a little appeased, but only for a second.

“Harvey, may I speak to your sub?”

Harvey nodded his consent and made room so Kieran could take his place in front of the kneeling Mike. Immediately the sub’s eyes drifted to the floor, avoiding the steely gaze of the gray eyes.

“Mike, please look at me.”

Although this was phrased as a request Mike knew that Kieran had meant it as an order. For a brief moment he wanted to disobey since Kieran had no right to him, but then he raised his eyes, but only because he knew that Harvey would be displeased if he were impolite to his friend.

When he looked into Kieran’s face he was surprised about what he detected. Instead of annoyance or arrogance he could read concern and regret in the Dom’s face.

“Thank you Mike. And I’m sorry if you found my remarks regarding your person humiliating. That was not my intention. I thought you might be more used to your chosen role in the company of unfamiliar Doms but obviously this is new to you. I usually don’t address other Dom’s subs since they are under normal circumstances of no consequence to me and more experienced subs don’t
expect to be included in a conversation between Doms. I realize that this might seem strange to you, but this comes with your role that you have chosen for yourself.” He paused as if he tried to read what was going on in Mike’s mind and when the sub’s face remained skeptical he added, “And I truly meant it when I said that you’re pretty and that Harvey is very lucky to have found you. It has been a long time since he’s been with somebody and I can see that you two are a good match. So, do you think that we can start over and be friends as well?”

At the beginning of Kieran’s speech, Mike had expected a stern dressing down or an outright dismissal of his feelings. Instead, Kieran had explained to him proper sub-behavior in company without giving him the feeling of being stupid. He could see now that he needed to grow a thicker skin, and soon, or the thicker skin would need to grow on his butt, because in the future Harvey surely wouldn’t be so patient with him anymore.

“Yes, Sir. Thank you for the explanation. I realize that you haven’t intended to hurt me. I’m sorry for taking it the wrong way.”

Kieran reached out with his hand but before he touched Mike, he looked at Harvey. “May I?”

“Ask Mike. It’s his decision.”

“Mike, may a touch you to show you my affection?”

“I…” His gaze shifted to Harvey who just shrugged. It’s your decision, Kid.

“All right, but just the head, Sir, if you don’t mind.”

Kieran’s fingers petted his head briefly, full well knowing that Mike wasn’t able to enjoy the gesture. But they both knew that it was a peace offering, the gesture as well as the acceptance of it. After a brief pet to Mike’s head, Kieran stepped back to make room for Harvey again.

“Mike, stand up.”

As soon as he was back on his feet, hands still clasped behind his back, Harvey pulled him snug against his solid warm body.

“Will you be my good boy now, Michael? Remember, we’re here just for you. So you can have some new shiny toys.”

“Yes, Sir. I will be your good boy.”

A warm hand patted his butt briefly but affectionately. During the last few days Mike had started to notice how much Harvey seemed to like touching his butt and now these light touches had become oddly reassuring to him.

“I want you to stand still, eyes forward. You can react to the feeling of the things I’m going to put on your body, but otherwise I want you silent. No words and minimum noise unless you’re asked a question. Just imagine that you’re one of these mannequins. Can you do that, Michael?”

“Yes, Sir.”

“Good boy.”

Mike stood straight and his eyes searched a brick on the opposite wall he could focus on while the two Doms resumed their conversation, talking about him over his head just like before.
“He really is very pretty but if you want to put some cock-rings on him, he needs to overcome his shyness.”

Harvey just grinned. “Don’t worry, after we’re finished with his nipples, his cock will be no problem. But maybe we should start with the cage, since he is conveniently flaccid right now which is a rare occurrence. I had feared that we might need ice-cubes to get him soft, so better make the most of it now.”

Kieran showed him the other jeweler’s tray with the cock-rings and cock-cages and Harvey selected one simple cage and held it up so that Mike could see it in his peripheral vision.

“Mike, look at me.”

His eyes shifted to the side to meet Harvey’s gaze, but he deliberately tried to not look at the item in Harvey’s hand.

“I know that you were a little undecided regarding cock-cages and you have marked them as possible soft limit. I propose that we just try one on and if you really don’t like it then we know for sure that it’s a hard limit for you and can adjust our contract accordingly. Personally I would like to have the option to put you in a cage but the ultimate decision, today at least, lies with you. So, do I have your permission to put your dick in this cage?”

Mike now looked at the cage with open curiosity. The cage consisted of one larger metal ring that could swing open due to a little hinge on the underside and 4 smaller solid rings, which were connected with metal rods on either side, so that they formed the shape of a flaccid penis and the crown of the penis would be covered with a metal hood which had a little opening in it. A small lock on the upper side of the cock-cage held the contraption together and Mike could see that there was no chance that he could get hard when wearing this thing, although taking a piss would be possible, thanks to the opening in the hood. It didn’t look too uncomfortable and since it was his decision and they were only trying it out to see how it felt, he gave his consent without hesitation.

Harvey carefully inserted his still limp dick into the cage itself and then slipped the larger ring behind his scrotum and closed the two halves. With a click, he closed the lock, fastening the rings around his dick to the ring behind his balls and Mike was trapped.

The metal rings of the cage felt cool against his skin but it didn’t pinch or bend him in an unnatural angle although the ring behind his balls was tight enough that he couldn’t slip it off without opening the lock. In fact, it felt oddly comfortable. Now his dick really only belonged to Harvey and the thought was somewhat arousing which right now was not at all how he wanted to feel.

“Mike, you have my permission to speak. Tell me what you think.”

“I… it’s okay, I think. It’s not uncomfortable. And I think…” He could feel his dick swell some more, now already pressing up against the metal rings. Shit, he really was a subbie when the thought of Harvey owning his cock was enough to make said cock sit up and pay attention.

“Go on Mike.” In Harvey’s slightly amused undertone Mike could hear that his Dom knew very well what was going on.

“I think I like it that my dick belongs to you. That only you have access to it, Sir. The cage makes me feel even more like you own me and I like that very much.” His voice was almost a whisper, since he was a little embarrassed at how much he enjoyed the cage, the sensation as well as what it stood for. Harvey’s control over his body.
Thankfully, Kieran’s contribution on that matter felt like someone doused him in ice-water and his cock immediately went limp again.

“You can insert a flexible urethral-sound through the opening in the hood. And if you want I could also fasten a plug to the ring behind his balls, so that you have all of his openings stuffed. It would be a true chastity device and if you use a hollow sound he would even be able to urinate. You could keep him like that for several days without ill effects, if you give him an enema first, of course.”

Before Mike could voice his protest Harvey jumped in and declined Kieran’s offer. Well, one of it.

“Sounding is a hard limit for Mike. As you can see from his reaction to your suggestion. But the plug might be an option.”

Kieran scrutinized the agitated sub for a few seconds before he shrugged.

“What a shame. Laura and I still talk about the time when you gave that lecture about urethral-sounding at the club. The sub you demonstrated it on came so hard when you were done with him, it was a pleasure to watch you. Your subbie doesn’t know what he’s missing.”

Mike’s eyes, which had been focused on the cage around his dick, shifted to Harvey so fast, it nearly made him nauseous.

Harvey liked that? Had put on a show at Natasha’s about that? With another male sub? Who was this sub? Was Harvey still in contact with this sub?

*Hello,* his subconscious mind chimed in, *jealousy, so not the point right now. Focus on the fact that Harvey likes to insert stuff into other peoples’ dicks.*

Oh, yeah, right.

But when he marked it as hard limit, Harvey had never even mentioned it during their negotiations, never brought it up. He’d thought that Harvey didn’t like it either and just listed it on the questionnaire to give him a broad range of options.

“Let it go, Kieran. A hard limit is a hard limit. And should Mike ever think differently about it, thanks to you he now knows that he can ask me about it.”

“You haven’t talked with him about it?”

Harvey sighed. “What would be the point? Mike was very emphatic on the matter in his questionnaire and I didn’t want him feel pressured in any way. It’s his decision and I respect that.”

Harvey petted Mike’s head briefly to reassure him that it really was okay that Mike didn’t want anything inserted into his dick.

“So, since we have established that a cock-cage is not a soft limit anymore, I propose we get this thing off and play a little with his pretty pink nipples.”

“All right.” Kieran gave Harvey the little key for the lock and soon the pressure of the cage around his cock vanished.

“All right.” Kieran gave Harvey the little key for the lock and soon the pressure of the cage around his cock vanished.

Mike, eyes back at the wall. The previous rules apply. You’re only a passive bystander for what follows next. No talking and the minimum of noise but remember that you can always color out.”

As soon as Mike had obeyed and assumed his former posture as a mannequin, Harvey began
stroking his chest with his right hand before he pinched both nipples between thumb and index-fingers into rosy little nubs. Then he bent his head down and swiped his tongue slowly over the pert nipples before he sucked them into his mouth, first one and then the other, to make them slick with his saliva.

Mike bit his lip to prevent a moan from slipping out. Standing still became at this point really hard and he could feel blood rushing down into his cock, which swelled freely between his legs until the tip was pointing upward.

When Harvey finally let up, Mike felt a little lightheaded, since he had held his breath to remain obediently silent.

Harvey stepped back and scrutinized the slightly panting sub. When his gaze fell onto the fully erect and flushed cock, he grinned his roguish grin and trailed a fingertip along the underside of Mike’s member from root to tip.

“Told you that this would get him hard in an instant.”

Kieran whistled softly. “You’re right. Desperate and horny is a good look on him. And he has a nice cock. Very pretty.”

He offered Harvey the other tray. “Which one do you want to try first?”

“Let’s start with something conservative.” Only Harvey could call a nipple-clamp conservative with a straight face.

He selected some clamps that looked like little silvery tweezers, connected with a fine silver chain. The tips of the tweezers were covered with a rubber sheath and could be tightened around the nipple by slipping a small ring up or down the tweezer-section.

Mike felt the tips of the tweezers gripping his left nipple and then tighten until he couldn’t suppress a gasp when the pain got almost too intense. Harvey’s eyes were on his face while he slipped the little ring up, so he was able to see in Mike’s eyes when the pressure was just right. The Dom did the same with Mike’s other nipple and soon the pain in his sensitive rosy buds went straight to his balls and dick and made them throb with lust.

“If you want to see something amazing, watch his slit.”

Harvey’s voice sounded a little raspy and Mike kept his eyes firmly on the opposite wall, although he could see that both Doms had stepped back a little and eyed him expectantly like he was supposed to perform a neat little trick.

Sure enough, Mike could feel a drop of pre-come ooze from his slit and moisten his crown.

Harvey reached out and hooked a fingertip under the dangling silver chain between his nipples, yanking at it once and thus eliciting a sharp little pain.

“Hmmm!” He bit his lip but nevertheless, a breathy little gasp slipped out and he could feel more pre-come rise up his shaft and spilling out his slit. When enough of the clear sticky liquid had gathered on the head of his cock he could feel a thick drop sliding down the crown and all along his shaft down to his balls.

“I few more tucks on the chain and you’ll need to mop the floor.” Harvey sounded proud at how responsive Mike was.
“Maybe now would be the right time for a cock-ring then. Unless you really wanna see if you can make him come from nipple-play. But if he soils my floor, he will have to clean it up.”

Kieran’s voice sounded a little bit more grounded and Mike realized just then that he had no idea if Kieran even was into guys. Sure, the Dom had complimented him on his looks but maybe this was meant on a strictly non-sexual level. Somehow, this thought made this whole experience a little easier for him.

“Yes. Maybe you’re right.”

“Metal or leather?”

“I would like something that’s easy to put on and take off again. But made of metal, if possible.”

“Then this would be the right thing for your subbie.”

Kieran showed Harvey a thick, solid-looking metal cock-ring. Harvey lifted one eyebrow questioningly since he couldn’t see how this thing would be easy to slip on and off and the shop-owner grinned.

“See, the ring, this one’s silver but I have every metal you want, is hollowed out here and here and magnets are inserted, so it still looks like it’s one piece but you can slide one section off. Don’t pull at it, the magnet is too strong, but you can slide it sideways and it comes off easily. No need to push the cock and balls through it, just place the bigger part of the ring behind the balls, put the top-part on and you have a sturdy solid metal cock-ring. Just be careful when you put the top-part on. You don’t want to catch some skin between the two sections. Hurts like a bitch, and not in a good way, or so I’ve been told.”

Harvey nodded approvingly and took it from Kieran, played with it a little, trying to pull it apart with two hands and when he couldn’t he slid the top-section of the ring off sideways, which was easy enough.

“Mike, eyes on me.”

Harvey held the cock-ring up for Mike to see.

“Since you’re already dripping just from trying on the first clamps, holding out until tonight might become quite difficult for you. And my order still stands. No coming until tonight. So, this might help you to keep your composure.”

He gave the chain another sharp tug and the almost electric jolt in his nipples made Mike rise onto his toes and he pressed his eyelids together. A tear was sliding down his cheek and at that moment, Harvey was very proud of his good boy who held on so bravely.

“You have my permission to beg me for the cock-ring, Mike.”

“Please Sir, can I have the cock-ring please? I beg you, Sir. I can’t hold on very much longer. Please Sir.”

Harvey stepped forward and brushed his lips lightly against Mike’s red and swollen lips.

“Since you beg me so prettily for it, how could I deny my good boy?”

Harvey dropped gracefully on one knee and when his fingertips touched Mike’s scrotum lightly, Mike made a mewling sound.
The cool metal slipped behind his balls to the root of his cock and encircled the underside. Then the top-section clicked into place and suddenly a firm pressure was all around the root of his dick, now much tighter than with the cock-cage before. Almost instantly the worst of his need to come subsided. He still was very aroused but the pressure of the ring at the base of his cock compressed the vein which reduced the blood flow in his dick. This made it easier for him to hold on although his erection got even harder than before.

“Try to slide the ring sideways around the cock a little. If you can manage it easily, it’s too wide,” Kieran, creator and salesman, was advising.

Harvey tried it and found that he was able to move the ring but only with a little force and some protesting noises from Mike. Kieran had crouched down too and both Doms were now eyeing Mike’s very hard but no more leaking cock critically.

“Looks good to me. Nice and snug but not too tight,” the Irishman gave his opinion but kept his hands to himself. “Good thing you had him waxed, though. Pubic hair is always in the way, even if you use stretchy silicon cock-rings.”

Harvey couldn’t resist the pretty sight right in front of his nose. He grasped Mike’s cock and jerked him once. The sub yelped and once again rose onto his toes. Harvey reached out with his other hand, patted Mike’s backside once and then, giving Kieran a wink, slipped a finger between Mike’s butt-cheeks and pressed it firmly against the base of the plug.

“Ohhh… fuck!” Mike shouted out with feeling and Harvey gave him a firm slap on his ass to remind him of his gag-order.

“Who is the tease now, Harvey?” Kieran was quite amused how much Harvey liked to play with his little subbie.

“Yes, but his cock is just so pretty. Can you blame me?”

“Since I regard cocks purely from an aesthetic point of view, my self-restraint might be superior to yours, at least in this regard.”

“True.” Harvey just shrugged and stood up again.

Mike was still staring right at the wall but a light sheen of sweat was covering his face and chest and he looked very flushed.

“Mike, eyes on me.”

As soon as the blue eyes, swimming in unshed tears from the sheer effort of holding on, found his eyes, something in Harvey melted and he regretted that he’d teased Mike so cruelly. But he liked it so much to display his possessions in front of other people and Mike was no exception from this rule. He couldn’t wait to take his boy to Natasha’s for everyone to see.

“Breathe deeply for me to calm down. I’m very proud of you and I promise that I will not tease you more than is necessary to put the next clamps on you.”

The sub took a few calming breaths and slowly but surely his intense arousal decreased into a low simmering fire of want.

Harvey had regarded Mike with a passionate gaze of his by now nearly black eyes and after a few moments he could see that Mike’s breathing was becoming calmer and his arousal seemed to subside a little. “Feeling better now?”
“Yes, Sir.” He only whispered the words, still exhausted from the effort of not coming though he wasn’t sure if he even could come with the cock-ring clamped tight around his dick.

“Well, now we know for sure that the ring works and has the right size for you,” Harvey stated dryly. "Eyes front again, Mike. I will try a few more of the clamps now."

Instead of just yanking the clamps off with a sharp tug at the chain, Harvey took the time to slide the little rings down the tweezer-section to loosen them gradually and take the clamps off carefully. But the blood rushing back into his rosy buds still made Mike whimper a little until Harvey stroked with his warm palm over them to soothe the pain away.

To distract himself from the now following fitting of different types of clamps, Mike began to count the bricks on the wall. When this diversion proofed helpful he started to calculate the number of bricks visible on all 4 walls, which took him about 2 minutes. After that he started to recite Hamlet in his mind which he’d read as homework on a rainy Sunday afternoon when he was 14 and Trevor had been grounded again and Mike didn’t know what to do with himself since the TV had been broken.

He was dimly aware of all the sharp little and not so little pains in his nipples when clamps were fastened to them, tugged at and taken off again. At one point, Mike could feel another cock-ring being attached around his cock, this time one made from a softer material and placed in front of is balls, before the magnetic cock-ring behind his scrotum was taken off of him. He heard Harvey and Kieran talking about him and the different implements they were using on him but their voices were like white noise; he could hear the words, but the meaning escaped him since his mind was still occupied with the Prince of Denmark.

He was aware that sometimes his breath hitched a little and every now and then a little moan slipped out between his lips, but other than that, his chosen distraction proofed quite effective. It was a little like he had detached his mind from his body, still able to feel what was happening to him but not really affected by any of it.

*I have of late, but wherefore I know not, lost all my mirth, forgone all custom of exercise...*

Even when a leather-harness of some sort was fastened around his upper-body and soft broad leather-cuffs were put around his wrists and then secured to the harness in several positions in front of his body and behind his back, he managed to stay still like a lifeless mannequin.

All of a sudden, Harvey pulled him, still bound tight in his restraints, into a firm embrace and it felt like he was awakening from a deep trance. He needed to blink his eyes a couple of times to come fully back into the here and now.

“You’re incredible, Mike. You’re such a good boy for me and I’m very proud of you.” The Dom’s lips brushed against the shell of Mike’s ear as he whispered so only Mike could hear “I think even Kieran is a little in awe at how well you took everything we threw at you.”

A warm firm hand patted his butt and then squeezed it playfully. “Time to get you out of that and get you home. You’ve earned a reward and I can’t wait to give it to you.”

With one hand, Harvey un-hooked the carabiner that had held Mike’s wrists in place and then loosened the harness with only a few movements, handing the soft leather-straps to Kieran.

“You can assemble everything we talked about and which is ready for me to take home today. The rest you can sent over to my address whenever you’ve finished it. And regarding the other stuff I mentioned, just give me a minute to help Mike into his pants. I’ll only be a moment.”
“Take your time. Your boy has earned a little reward. To tell you the truth, from how he responded in the beginning, I was sure he wouldn’t make it. I’m quite impressed.”

“Coming from you, that’s a real compliment.”

Kieran nodded. “I’ll be at the counter when you’re ready.”

Harvey helped Mike into his pants and shoes and even tied the shoelaces for him so Mike wouldn’t have to bend down. Then he handed Mike his tee and when the sub was finally fully dressed, patted the spanking bench.

“Sit down here, Mike. I need to talk to Kieran in private and you can rest here for a while. I’ll call you when we’re finished.”

“Yes, Sir.”

Mike sat down at the bench, by now well versed how to distribute his body weight without pushing the plug in deeply and Harvey patted his knee.

“Well, done Mike. It’s already dinner-time but I think I want to take you straight home when I’m finished here. So, because you were really good you are allowed to decide what’s for dinner tonight.”

A treat for the good little Puppy, Mike thought, but somehow this time the idea only amused him. Harvey had been right. He was a little like his pet. An intelligent, talking pet who reveled in the affection and attention of his Dom and only wanted to be good for him. Once he’d accepted the fact it didn’t bother him anymore. Screw society and convention. He loved being like this for Harvey and his Dom loved it too.

“Can we have pizza with stuffed crust, Sir?”

“Again? We had that last Sunday.”

“I know, Sir. But, can we? Please?”

Harvey laughed but in his mind he made plans for an early morning work-out. His boy’s eating habits might be fine for someone who was riding a bike every day, but he needed to compensate the excess calories with extra gym-sessions.

“Sure thing, Puppy. I’ll make the call as soon as we leave and we can pick it up on our way home.”

Chapter End Notes

All mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

I don't practice BDSM and have no idea what the proper protocol between a strange Dom and sub is. I just made that up so Mike could feel resentful.

I love to read your comments and Kudos is also very much appreciated.
Chapter Summary

Mike gets his reward for being Harvey's good boy (yes, I'm talking about sex) and Harvey discovers something new about his sub.

Chapter Notes

I recently hit a spot of writers block and although I had this chapter ready for almost 2 months I went back over it with a fine tooth comb and edited and tweaked and obsessed until I was on the brink of giving up completely, delete the whole thing and just start over afresh. So, before I hit delete, I gave myself some time off and I think that I’m ready now to share it with you since I think it’s time to let it go now. There are 2 more chapters I’m currently working on and the chapters after that are already in my head but I’ve realized that it would really help me if I had a beta-reader who would keep me on track with the characterization. I will go on writing since I really want to finish this story but if anybody wants to help me out, please leave me a note in the comments.

With a last lingering gaze back at his waiting sub, Harvey strolled over to the counter where Kieran was already assembling the things they had talked about when Harvey had tried them on Mike.

“How’s your boy? Feeling better now? He did amazing, though, for a newbie.”

“Yes, he truly is amazing.” Harvey couldn’t suppress a proud little smile. “And yes, I think he’s feeling much better now. At least he’s not agitated anymore.” He exhaled noisily, almost a small sigh. “When I saw how much he was struggling after I told him to strip, I was tempted to call everything off.”

Kieran nodded. A good Dom needed to know when to push as well as when to back off. At the particular situation Harvey was mentioning, the chances of getting it right had been 50 / 50.

“Why haven’t you? Surely not on my account. Even you are not that vain.”

“No, Kieran. Of course not. I would never… anyway, if I’d really deemed it necessary, I would have stopped it but I knew that he would come around. Call it gut feeling or instinct. And I know that Mike likes a challenge. He likes me to push him and he likes to push himself. If I had called it off, he might’ve been relieved for the moment but he would’ve seen it as a failure later and would’ve beaten himself up over it even if I had never lost another word about it.”

Harvey turned his head and took a few moments to look back at his boy who was still sitting obediently on the spanking bench, dangling his feet although he refrained from rocking them back and forth. That probably would’ve shifted the plug too much and Harvey knew that after several hours of being more or less constantly horny Mike would be sensitive to every tiny stimulation. He turned back to Kieran.
“You see, now it is a positive experience since he was able to manage the challenge. It’s better this way. He needs positive reinforcement and you wouldn’t believe how happy he is when he succeeds in something I asked of him.”

Harvey stopped and thought for a moment, like he wasn’t sure if he should share it with Kieran. After a moment he continued, his urge to talk about his boy greater than his natural sense for discretion. “But I was surprised how much he disliked that we talked over his head about him. He likes to be petted and ordered around so much. And you’ve seen how he reacted to the cage… to the thought of me owning him. If I’d know how hard he would take it, I would’ve prepared him better. Maybe wouldn’t brought him here so early on in his training at all.”

Kieran nodded slowly. It had dawned on him how much Mike meant to Harvey and how much Harvey was afraid that he would get it wrong although the lawyer would never admit to any insecurity on his part. He’d known the other Dom for over a decade now, but he’d never seen Harvey caring so much for somebody before. And suddenly he had an inkling why Harvey had really brought his sub here today, for him to see. But instead of calling him out on it outright he decided to gain a little more information.

“Where did you meet him, anyway? He can’t be in the scene for long, when he’s still so insecure and untrained.”

Harvey told his mentor the story, the true story, how they met.

“And they say the Irish have all the luck. You sure that you don’t have some drops of Irish blood yourself?” Kieran wasn’t quite sure if Harvey had made up the story to bullshit him, since it sounded like a bad rom-com.

Harvey chuckled. “Call it luck or fate or whatever, I’m thankful to every higher being or deity that might have orchestrated it.”

“Yes, I can see that. It shows in your eyes. And you look happy when you look at him or talk about him. I’ve never seen that expression on you before.”

“If you say so.” Harvey seemed a little embarrassed about that and tried to deflect. “But he’s truly special.”

“So that’s why you brought him to me? To get my approval? Or to show off to me? I know that you’re a vain bastard.”

Harvey’s mouth almost gaped open at that. But then he thought for a moment about Kieran’s remark before he made a reply. He hadn’t thought about it this way, but maybe Kieran had a point.

“Why would you think that?” he tried to buy a little more time, not sure how he felt about this revelation.

Now it was Kieran’s turn to chuckle. Sometimes the almighty Harvey Specter was blind to what was right in front of his nose.

“Because you’ve never even introduced a sub you were playing with to me, not even at the club. You always called them by a silly nickname like you couldn’t be bothered to learn their real names.” He gestured towards the waiting sub like he wanted to demonstrate something. “But you introduced Mike by name and you were beaming with pride when you presented him to me, make him strip in front of me and showed me how responsive he is to you. And you couldn’t leave your hands off him, which is something new for Mr. Self-restraint. It’s really quite obvious that you’re not only very
proud of him but also want my approval, since you know that you won’t get my envy. Not for a male sub, anyway. You behave like a boy who is bringing his boyfriend home for dinner for the first time.”

Harvey rolled his eyes. Surely, he couldn’t have been that obvious. “Now you’re exaggerating. And it has been a long time since I needed your approval. Not since you taught me anything I needed to know to be a good Dom.”

“And yet you did seek it. And you wanna know how I know?”

“Go ahead. I couldn’t keep you quiet anyway.”

“Because in all the years I’ve know you, you’ve never felt the urge to make an appointment with me and purchase some equipment for your sub. You bought stuff for general use but never anything that would only belong to one sub. You’re going steady with that boy, believe it or not. And before you revert back to denial, I approve, whether you want me to or not. Oh, and by the way, I still could teach you a new trick or three.”

“If you say so. I wouldn’t want to argue with the man who’s making all the shiny new things for me.” Harvey thought for a moment but then he decided to share a little bit more with Kieran. Maybe he really needed somebody he could talk to about his amazing sub. “He colored out today. Took me totally by surprise.”

Kieran was curious what had happened to make Mike color out after having observed him for the last hour. He knew what Harvey and Mike had been doing before visiting him and he couldn’t imagine a situation more challenging for Mike than the ones he’d encountered here.

“The plug?” he hazarded a guess although Mike seemed to be coping just fine.

“No, not the plug. He’d asked me for it, well, not specifically, but he wanted rocky road.”

“Is that code for a new kink? I still don’t get all your American expressions.”

Harvey could barely refrain from chuckling before he explained the ice-cream metaphor to Kieran.

“Oh, I see. Rocky road meant a challenge. Something that wouldn’t be easy for him. But if it wasn’t the plug then what was it?”

“René. He saw how much the suits cost and called Yellow. Said that he felt like a whore if I spent so much money on him. For all his natural submissiveness he can be very stubborn sometimes. And he’s fiercely independent despite loving it when I take care of him. He’s amazing like this. Surprising and fresh. Keeps me on my toes.”

Harvey turned his head yet again and as soon as his eyes fell on Mike, his lips quirked up in a smile. Kieran smiled too when he saw his friends reaction. It really seemed like Harvey had finally found not only his sub but his mate, like he himself had so many years ago with Laura. Seeing this softer side on Harvey was something totally new and Kieran wondered if Harvey was even aware of the effect Mike was having on him. Well, maybe he and Laura could meet someday with the both of them, have a play-date or something like that at the club. And maybe Mike would benefit if he could talk to another sub like his Laura. She could explain things to him in a way that no Dom ever could.

Before he could make the suggestion, Harvey had turned around again. “Have I told you how smart he is? Because he is. Had a full scholarship for Columbia before he got himself into trouble. He’s got so much potential and I want him to be successful. He doesn’t know it yet, but I will get him into an Ivy League college, maybe even Harvard, someday.”
Kieran glanced surprised at Mike. Seeing him sitting like this at the spanking bench, an Ivy League college was not the first thing that he was thinking of in association with this boy.

“Stop your bragging, Harvey. Now you are exaggerating. He might be smart, has to be or you would be bored already but Harvard? When he couldn’t cut it at Columbia? I think not.”

Harvey began grinning at him. Of all the replies Kieran could’ve made, this was the wrong one. “Care to make a bet?”

“If you have money to burn.”

“But you forget to whom you’re talking. I don’t lose, Kieran.”

“First time for everything.”

“10 grand says that I have him attend Harvard or another Ivy League Law School within the next 5 years.”

“5 years, Harvey? You are going steady with him, if you already have a 5 year plan for him.”

“I hadn’t till now but now I have. So, are you in or out?”

“And if you break up with him?”

“He doesn’t need to be my sub to attend Harvard Law. The one is not a condition for the other.”

“All right then. Your funeral.”

“Conditions?”

“You win if he at least finishes two years. If you can’t get him in or if he flunks out you lose.”

“Accepted. And you are not allowed to tell him about the bet. I will tell him myself, when the time is right.”

“All right.”

The Irish held out his hand and they shook on it.

“It’s almost unfair of me to take your money, Kieran. You know, his brain is constantly running at a 150 miles per hour what with him having a perfect memory, eidetic, photographic and auditory. Oh, and he is a math genius as well. Sorry if I forgot to mention that.”

“Isn’t it illegal to withhold information with malice intent?”

Harvey grinned like the shark he was. “So sue me. Maybe I could give you the name of a good lawyer.”

“So, how does a genius like him end up with a jackass like you?”

“Because he is a genius with an over-active brain. That’s why I asked you for the strap and the gags and restraints. He used to smoke pot to make his brain go quiet but maybe I can put him down in another way.”

“If anyone can do it, present company excepted of course, than it’s you. But if he’s so bothered about the money you spent on him at René’s, better don’t tell him how much you spent here either.”
And with a little mock flourish he swiveled the card reader around, so Harvey could pop his black visa into it, since Donna still had his AmEx. The sum Kieran had typed into it was the equivalent of at least 2 of René’s suits, since Harvey had gone for the platinum rather than the white-gold. It almost looked the same, but he knew the difference even if he would keep Mike in the dark, unless his boy would ask him outright. He wouldn’t lie to Mike, but maybe he could discourage him from asking.

Harvey took the medium-sized shiny black paper bag from Kieran and peered into it. All items were separately packed, most of them in little or not so little jewelry boxes. Only the harness with the leather wrist and ankle-cuffs was stored in a fabric-bag. And the strap of course. Harvey had wanted something with a little more oompf than the paddle but that was easier to handle for Mike than the flogger. The leather of the strap was already on the soft side and needn’t be broken in much. Since he mostly scened at clubs, he didn’t have much own equipment for pain-play at home. Now that Mike was in his life, he needed to remedy that.

**********

After Harvey had finalized his business with Kieran they left the shop with Harvey carrying the bag. Mike was curious what Harvey had purchased but he was smart enough not to ask. He would know soon enough, of that he was quite sure.

On their way to Harvey’s condo they’d picked up the pizza and the delicious smell wafted through the car and made Mike’s stomach rumble. They hadn’t eaten all that much today and Mike was sure that he could’ve heard a little rumble from Harvey’s stomach as well although he would never mention it.

When they had maybe five more minutes to go, Harvey slid the partition back up and turned his attention to Mike.

“I realize that today has been a lot for you. First the plug and then all the shopping and finally Kieran and his toys. I’m really amazed that you made it through the day without any bigger hiccups.”

Looking back at the day, Mike could barely believe it himself. Had Harvey told him in the morning what he’d planned Mike would’ve most likely colored-out there and then. He’d been on edge almost constantly since Harvey had put the plug in his ass, only able to relax for a few minutes every now and then. But somehow the knowledge that Harvey hadn’t gone easy on him, had trusted him enough to push him, made it all worthwhile. So he smiled a little, relieved and happy that he’d been Harvey’s good boy even though he knew that without Harvey’s help and encouragement he wouldn’t have been able to do it.

“Thank you, Sir. But you helped me a lot, especially at Mr. O’Connor’s shop. I really had a hard time there.” He looked openly at Harvey and the Dom could see the trust and devotion in the blue eyes.

“I know. But you trusted me and you were able to control your impulses long enough to take my help. You’ve made great progress in such a short time, Mike. I’m really very proud of you.”

Harvey reached out and cupped Mike’s face in his palm, his thumb caressing the smooth skin on the cheekbone. Only the slightest hint of new stubble rasped against the pad of his thumb. Mike closed his eyes and leaned into the touch, savoring the affection of his Dom. Damn, he loved that and there was nothing wrong with it.
Harvey’s soft lips on his own surprised him only for a moment and then he opened his mouth just a little to let his Dom in. It was a sweet, intense kiss which ended way too soon for his taste but he suppressed the whine that wanted to slip out when Harvey broke it. Harvey wrapped his arms around him and pulled him close, which was a little awkward since they both were still wearing their seat-belts, but somehow Mike nearly ended up in Harvey’s lap anyway. The Dom’s lips were now caressing his temple while the tip of Harvey’s nose was brushing the fine hairs above his right ear.

“I want you to enjoy tonight and I don’t want to overwhelm you. Not after you’ve already been so good for me. So, I will give you a choice. You can think about it until after we’ve eaten. And it’s not a test, Mike. You can decide whatever you want.” His voice sounded oh so soft and tender and it took Mike a moment to process the words. But when the meaning hit him, he wanted to protest.

“I… I trust you, Sir. I don’t need a choice. I know that you won’t overwhelm me.”

Harvey leaned back a little so he could look into Mike’s face.

“Thank you Mike. But today has happened a lot and only you know how much more you can take. So, before we eat, I’m going to take the plug out so that you can relax a little. And after we’ve eaten, you have a choice how the evening will go. You can either wank off for me, naked on your knees in the middle of the living room while I watch you and afterwards we’ll take a shower and maybe watch a movie before we go to bed to sleep. Or, if you’re feeling up to it, I will play with you until I allow you to come and then fuck your pretty little ass. But playing with you will once again push your boundaries. You will struggle a bit and it won’t be relaxing at all, not until I allow you to let go. So, think about it. Once you’ve made your choice it’s final.”

“I…”

“I said think about it, Mike. I know that you want to play but maybe tonight it would be better to just jerk off and relax. There’s always tomorrow for play.”

“Okay. I think about it. Thank you for giving me this choice, Sir.” But despite his words, his boy didn’t look like he was happy that he was allowed to make a decision for once.

The car stopped right on cue and while Mike climbed out with the pizza carton in his hands, Harvey said his good-byes to Ray and followed his boy with the black bag.

**********

Getting the plug out after having it worn the whole day wasn’t as easy as Mike had thought. He lay on his stomach on Harvey’s bed, legs dangling over the side, his toes barely touching the floor and with his new jeans pooled around his ankles. Harvey was standing behind him and dribbled cool lube around the base of the plug.

“I need to slick you up a bit. The lube from the morning has dried and I don’t want to hurt you. Just try to relax.”

A fingertip rubbed the lube around his hole under the base of the plug and massaged the taut muscle-ring until it gave way under Harvey’s careful ministrations. When the Dom tugged a little at the plug Mike could feel his sphincter stretch from the inside out and he moaned. This felt really weird.

Harvey’s other hand drew soothing circles on the small of his back.
“Shhh. I know. Just relax and let me do it. Don’t push.”

Another tug, another moan and the plug finally slid out.

“Stay like this. I’ll just put this in the bathroom and then I’ll clean you up in a minute.”

Mike buried his face in his crossed forearms and focused on his breathing. He could actually feel his sphincter flutter a little with every breath he took, like little spasms were running through his muscles after an intense work-out.

He could hear water running in the bathroom and then Harvey was back and ran a warm washcloth over his ass and between his cheeks to clear the excess lube away.

“There you go. All cleaned up.” A warm fingertip prodded his slightly gaping entrance and slid in easily, even without the lube.

“You’re a sight for sore eyes, Mike. So open and ready for me.” The fingertip was pressed in deeper and Mike moaned again, this time with lust. He wanted to shift his hips and search for some much needed friction but the fingertip vanished and his right cheek was patted lightly. Harvey seemed to have a thing for touching his mark every chance he got and Mike was a sucker for the little pain each touch gave him. He arched his ass up to push against Harvey’s fingers to intensify the little bit of pain but Harvey took his hand away.

“Later, Sweetheart. Let’s eat first. You need the energy.”

Harvey went back into the bathroom and washed his hands and the plug with soap before he applied a special toy-cleaner to the toy. When he came out again, Mike was just closing the button on his jeans.

“Feeling better now?”

The sub shrugged. “Right at this moment I’m just feeling empty, Sir. Guess I’ve gotten used to being stuffed. Now it feels weird again. But at least I can bend down and sit without getting a kick to my prostate each time.”

Harvey put the cleaned plug back in the second drawer of the dresser. When he turned around, he eyed Mike fondly.

“Let’s go and eat.”

**********

They ate the pizza at the breakfast bar and Harvey had granted Mike permission to have a beer as well. When only one piece of the large pie was left, Mike felt suddenly bone-tired. He tried in vain to suppress a yawn and Harvey couldn’t help but yawn in sympathy with Mike which made the sub snort a little.

“You look dead on your feet. Do you want to go to bed, Mike? You look like you need the rest,” the Dom observed but the sub shook his head.

“Nah, it’s only 9:30 pm. It’s too early for bed. I’m not a little kid.”
“But today happened a lot. Lots of new experiences for you that need to be processed, especially with a brain like yours. No wonder that you’re exhausted. There’s no shame in having an early night. I could use one too, to tell you the truth.”

“But I don’t want to go to bed, Sir. It was just one yawn.”

Harvey eyed him critically but then gave in. 9:30 pm was indeed a little early and after all, he had plans for tonight. He’d just mentioned bed to make Mike aware that he could ask for it if he really needed it. Sleep, like food and drink and warmth, was after all a basic need and it was his responsibility to provide it for Mike.

“All right then. If you’re sure. So, have you thought about what you want to do then?”

“I…I don’t know, Sir.”

Harvey cocked his head to one side while he studied Mike’s face. There was something going on in his boy’s brain. “Why is that?” he asked curiously.

“I want you to play with me, Sir. I’ve been horny almost the whole day and the thought of what you were gonna do to me tonight was a huge turn-on for me. But on the other hand, you said that it would be a struggle for me and I’m not sure if I’m up for it right now. You were right. Today has been a lot already and just jerking off and then relax and watch a movie with you sounds pretty good at this very moment. But if I take the easy choice I will think about what I’ve missed out on the whole evening. I’m really not good at making choices, Sir. I always feel like I’d made the wrong one.”

A thoughtful expression flickered over Harvey’s features, like he was having some sort of revelation.

“So, me giving you a choice is actually a bad thing for you? Is that what you’re trying to tell me?”

Mike shrugged. He knew that this must be complicated for Harvey to understand. After all, they were coming from opposite sides. “Not a bad thing per se. But it makes my life complicated when it could be simple. And you of all people know that I’m shitty at making decisions, Sir.”

Harvey nodded slowly. His boy had a point. Not a good point, but a point no less.

“All right. I think I understand. So, no decision for you. At least not tonight. I wanted to give you a treat not a chore.”

Mike smiled relieved. “Thank you, Sir.”

Harvey laid one hand over Mike’s own.

“But we need to work on that in the future, Mike. Making decisions, at least outside our relationship, is something you must learn. I’m fine with you not making any when we’re scening or even when it’s just the two of us, but there are still a few decisions you need to make on your own. I will not always be there or willing to make them for you. You can’t be too dependent on me in that regard.”

The smile on Mike’s face faltered. What did Harvey mean? Was he planning on cutting him loose? Did he have enough of him already?

The warm fingers on his hand tightened their grip.

“Shhhh, Mike. Stop panicking. I can see your thoughts on your face as clear as if you were shouting them at me. I didn’t mean it the way you think. I’m not thinking of ending this… us. But there will
be some things that you will have to decide on your own. Things regarding your Grammy. Or job-related decisions, stuff like that. I can give you my advice but ultimately it must be your choice. You get that, right?”

“Oh, okay.” The sub still sounded unconvinced.

“Mike, you make a hundred small decisions every day, without ill effect. Which route to take to get from a to b for example. You can make a few big ones as well. You just need to learn to trust your instincts again.” He laid one palm against Mike’s cheek, enticing him to look him in the eyes.

“Hey, I guess even when you were making really shitty decisions in the past, you always knew that they were shitty. You just didn’t care enough about yourself to not make them. But now you do because you know that I do.”

“But what if I mess up again?”

“When the occasion arises, just think What would Harvey want me to do? I trust you. And if you should mess up, I’ll help you clean it up.”

“But I can discuss things when I’m not sure? Ask for your opinion?”

“Sure. That’s what we agreed upon, remember?”

“But I don’t need to make a decision about tonight?”

“No, not anymore. I’ve got that covered. And now, let’s take care of the dishes.”

They quickly cleared the remnants of their meal away and Harvey sent Mike into the bedroom to undress down to only his boxers and t-shirt. When he came back out, Harvey had spread a blanket on the couch to cover the expensive but cool leather and he instructed Mike to lay down on it and pick a movie. There was no mentioning of being allowed to get off and Mike became a little worried. What if Harvey had decided that the orgasm for him was off the table? That they would have only movie night instead? But he didn’t dare ask since it was his own fault. He had been given a choice and had declined it. Wrong choice again. See, he really sucked at it.

After he’d made himself comfortable he started browsing through Harvey’s Netflix account. From what he could see on Harvey’s watch list, it seemed that his Dom was a Trekkie.

He had Star Trek, Star Trek Next Generation, Enterprise, Voyager and even the new series, Star Trek Discovery, along with all the movies, on his watch-list. There were some political and historical documentaries as well along with some other movies, mostly thrillers. One of them stood out because, much to Mike’s surprise, it was the teen rom-com Clueless. That must be a fluke. Maybe Harvey had just clicked on the wrong button and selected it by accident.

When Harvey joined him after a few minutes, his Dom only wore loose-fitting sweat-pants and a t-shirt, holding two glasses of water in his hands which he placed on the coffee table in case they got thirsty.

“Scoot over, Puppy.”

Harvey slid in the space between the back of the couch and Mike and pulled his sub tight to his body, spooning him.

“Comfortable?”
Harvey bunched up some pillows for their heads and Mike could feel Harvey’s chin softly touching the back of his head. His Dom’s right arm was somewhere under all the pillows his head was lying on and his left hand was resting on Mike’s left hip-bone.

“Hm, very comfortable.”

“So, which movie did you choose?”

“Not Star Trek, Sir.”

Harvey thought that he could detect a hint of smugness in Mike’s tone of voice but decided to give him the benefit of the doubt.

“Why would you say that?”

“Because I’ve just discovered that you’re a Trekkie.”

Yep. Definitely smugness. Harvey decided to play it cool for the moment. If Mike would get too mouthy he could always swat his ass.

“And? Captain Kirk is the man. Nothing to be ashamed of.”

“I thought you would be more of a Picard guy. Less brawn, more brains.”

“Jean-Luc is the man too.”

“You can’t have two captains being the man, Sir. That’s illogical.”

“Logic has nothing to do with it. And who are you to judge? Spock?”

“Hey, Spock is the only one who was cool. In a nerdy kind of way. I liked Spock. Well, the new Spock, you know. Zachary Quinto from the new movies. The ones with Chris Pine.”

Harvey shuddered involuntarily. “You’re a barbarian. Remind me to never watch Star Trek with you. You would only ruin it for me with your ignorance. And anyway, what kind of movies do you like?”

“I love Back to the future, Sir. Would it be okay if we watch it now? I haven’t watched it in quite some time.”

“Figures that you like Marty McFly. You even resemble him a little. He’s mouthy and wily, just like you. And then there’s the baby-face factor.”

“But I’m definitely taller than Michael J. Fox.”

“That you are. Lucky me. So I don’t have to bend down to you. Would only ruin my back if I had to stoop low every time I wanted to kiss you.”

Mike only barely caught the insolent remark regarding Harvey’s age that was on the tip of his tongue and he was oddly proud of himself for doing so.

Instead he only made a non-comital reply. “I wouldn’t want that, Sir.”

The Dom hit play and the movie began.

About half an hour into the movie, Marty had just witnessed Doc Brown being shot and fled the
terrorists in the time-machine, when Harvey was still only holding him in his arms but not making any move on him, Mike couldn’t wait any longer. He could feel Harvey’s half hard dick press against his ass through three layers of clothing (assuming Harvey was wearing underwear) but his Dom didn’t even rub against him. He was just lying there and Mike’s own dick was starting to get hard slowly, now that he was surrounded by Harvey’s arms and his warmth and scent.

“Sir, may I ask a question?”

“Hmm.”

“You said that you would let me get off tonight if I was your good boy.”

“That’s what I said.”

“So?”

“So, what?”

“So, are you gonna let me get off, Sir?”

“We’re watching a movie. So shut up and pay attention.”

“Oh… okay, Sir.”

Mike obeyed with a small frustrated huff and tried to settle down and pay attention to the movie. But instead, he became acutely aware of every tiny movement that Harvey was making, every tiny shift of his hips and every little twitch of the slowly hardening cock pressed snug against his ass.

Another half hour passed and Marty was trying to show his Dad how to make his Mom fall in love with him.

Mike was fully hard now and he decided to give Harvey a little hint about this situation. He began by flexing his ass-muscles every now and then and, when that didn’t work as planned, he started grinding his butt against Harvey’s hard dick more firmly.

First he was ignored but when his movements got bolder, a strong grip on his hip put an end to his actions.

“I’m trying to watch a movie here. A movie you picked because you didn’t want to watch one of my favorites. So stop it.”

“Hmpf.”

“Are you that needy already?”

“You would be too if you’d been horny the whole day, with the plug and all the other stuff, Sir.”

“Maybe you should’ve decided to get off then, like I’ve suggested. I would’ve liked to watch you on your knees, jerking off for me and coming all over my floor.”

For a moment the picture of himself on his knees in the middle of the living room, jerking off frantically while Harvey was sitting on the couch, watching him with eyes nearly black with arousal, made him almost moan with need and his dick twitched in his shorts. Oh god, he needed to be touched so badly right now. Suddenly, a tiny but of resentment flared up and before he could catch himself, he gave voice to it.
“I’m beginning to think that too, Sir. Looks like I’ve made the wrong decision again.” His voice sounded bitter.

A swat landed on his butt, not overly harsh but hard enough to be a warning that he was scooting awfully close along the thin red line again.

“Watch yourself, Lippy. You decided to hand me the reins, so live with it. Now, shut up and stop bitching.”

All of a sudden the bitterness and resentment was gone and he felt ashamed at his behavior.

“Yes, Sir. Sorry.” Mike actually sounded meek when he muttered the words.

He knew that Harvey was right. He had given him the reins along with every decision regarding his orgasm out of his own free will and now he had to accept that it was Harvey’s choice if he would get to come. He couldn’t be a wish-list sub. That would be trying to top from the bottom and it would only get Harvey mad if he’d try that again.

Mike breathed deeply a couple of times and then decided to let it go. He would only annoy Harvey if he kept pushing the matter and that would be of no use. On the contrary. Harvey could decide that his pushy and needy sub didn’t deserve to come after all. That he needed another lesson in self-control.

After that, he focused his attention fully on his favorite movie and even mouthed a few of his favorite lines in sync with the actors. Finally his body relaxed and although he was still hard, it somehow didn’t matter anymore. Harvey would take care of him, one way or the other and there was nothing that Mike could do about it, so he finally let go and his whole body went soft and limp, with the exception of his dick.

After a few minutes his Dom praised him. “Good boy.”

Mike was by then so engrossed by the movie that Harvey’s praise, whispered into his left ear, startled him a little.

But his Dom didn’t stop there. Harvey’s mouth began caressing his neck and then shifted its attention to the shell of his ear, licking and nipping at the lobe.

“I was waiting for that, Sweetheart. Waiting for you to give in. So, stay relaxed like this and let me take care of you. Don’t move and don’t talk.”

Harvey’s left hand was pushing his boxers down and suddenly Mike could hear a cap pop open and a bottle of lube was pressed into his hand since Harvey’s right arm was still buried under all the pillows they were lying on.

“Please pour some on my fingers, Sweetheart.”

Mike obeyed and put the bottle on the coffee table when he was done.

Harvey nuzzled at the back of his neck and sighed.

“I miss the coconut,” he murmured and Mike thought that he must’ve misheard. This didn’t make any sense.

“Don’t ever change your shampoo, Mike. I love how your hair normally smells.”
Ah! Now he knew what Harvey had meant. It seemed that his Dom had a thing for smells, just like he had.

The slick fingers found their way to Mike’s crack and trailed over his hole again and again, sometimes circling it, sometimes caressing the whole length of his crack. Then the movement of the fingers stilled and only one fingertip was now situated right at his entrance. It wasn’t pressing in though, just sort of resting there.

Mike suppressed a moan but managed to stay still. He knew that Harvey was testing his self-control and although he wanted to rock back and fuck himself on that finger, he knew he couldn’t. His Dom had told him not to move.

It was as if Harvey could read his thoughts. “Watch the movie, Mike. Focus on the TV. I know you can do it.”

After what seemed like an eternity, the fingertip finally breached his body and the finger slowly slipped into him in one long movement. His hole was still a little loose from the plug and the finger didn’t meet any significant resistance. Harvey seemed to think so too since he pulled out again and, after Mike had remained obediently motionless, seemingly still watching the movie, inserted two fingers into Mike’s tight canal.

“Ah.” A small sigh escaped the sub’s lips and Harvey could feel the muscles clench around his fingers. He pulled out a little, crooked his fingertips and searched for Mike’s happy spot.

“Oh…!”

“Stay still for me, Sweetheart. Just focus on the movie and let me take care of you.”

Harvey nuzzled Mike’s neck and hairline and every now and then he swiped his tongue over the rim of Mike’s left ear while his fingertips drew tight circles on his prostate.

“Nghh.” Oh god, the feeling was getting too intense and Mike could feel a steady stream of pre-come oozing from his dick and dripping onto the blanket.

“You can do it Mike. I know you can. You’re going to come just from this, just from my fingers in your ass, as soon as the movie is over.”

Oh, shit!

“I know what you’re thinking right now, Sweetheart. But you don’t need a hand around your dick. This will be enough. Just relax and it will happen eventually. You just need to hold on until the movie ends.

The tongue was back on his ear and suddenly his earlobe was gripped by Harvey’s teeth, but softly and without eliciting any pain.

Mike closed his eyes so that he could focus on Harvey’s fingers and his breathing picked up and got louder. His fingers twitched and his left hand began to sneak down to his groin before he caught himself and yanked it back up to his chest. He balled it into a fist and pressed it to his sternum to resist further temptation.

“You can make noise for me, Mike. You know that I love to hear you. Come on. Moan and sigh for me.”

The fingers ceased to stroke his prostate and began fucking him again with slow even thrusts. It
became almost unbearable to not move his hips, to not set his own rhythm and let Harvey do all the work.

For a moment Harvey pulled his fingers out completely and Mike whined when he lost the feeling of being filled. But Harvey had mercy on him and pressed three fingers into his sub’s body. It burned a little when the muscles stretched around the intruding digits but Mike knew what to do and exhaled audibly. The fingers slid in until he could feel Harvey’s knuckles press firmly against his ass. Then they began fucking him on long slow thrusts, providing stretch and friction but never enough. He needed more, needed it harder and faster but Harvey’s movements were almost trance-like.

“You’re so good for me, Mike. I guess it is really hard for you right now to keep your hands away from your dick. You want to touch it so bad, don’t you?”

Mike nodded vigorously. “Yes, Sir. Want to touch it,” the sub whined.

Harvey’s right arm on which his head had rested until now wormed its way down and sneaked to his chest. “Cross your wrists in front of your chest, Mike.”

As soon as he did Harvey’s hand gripped both of his wrists with his strong fingers. Mike could’ve broken the grip easily with a little force but even though this restraint was only symbolic, it helped.

“Better now?”

“Yes, Sir. Thank you.”

The fingerfucking resumed for a couple of minutes and Mike moaned and sighed but never was close to coming. He needed more. Something, anything. Pain, friction, whatever. This was not enough and it slowly drove him mad with want.

Harvey seemed to sense that he struggled.

“You’ve been so good for me Mike. So, what do you say? Do you want more than just my fingers? Do you want my cock? Shall I fuck you with my cock?”

Mike groaned. Finally! “Oh, yes Sir. Please.”

“All right, Sweetheart.” The grip on his wrists vanished. “Hand me the lube.”

The few moments Harvey needed to free his own dick from his sweatpants and make himself slick and ready was pure torture for Mike. He’d closed his eyes firmly and finally he could feel Harvey’s cock nudge against his entrance while his fingers of the right hand had found their way back to his wrists.

“Exhale and relax for me, Sweetheart. Let’s see if you can let me in in one go.”

The thought of that alone made him shiver uncontrollably and Mike took a few calming breaths before he inhaled deeply, signaling to Harvey that he was ready.

As soon as the stream of air left his mouth he could feel Harvey press in.

His muscles stretched and burned but he was able to fight off the urge to tense up.

“That’s it, Babe. That’s it. You’re doing so well for me,” Harvey murmured encouragingly in his ear.

Finally the Dom bottomed out and his groin was firmly pressed against Mike’s ass. Mike had pulled his knees towards his chest to give Harvey better access and the extra half-inch of Harvey’s cock this
maneuver gave him made him moan out loud.

Harvey laughed breathily, delighted of Mike’s reactions. “Let’s stay like this for a moment. Just breathe for me and relax.”

After a few minutes Harvey began to shift his hips in a lazy rhythm, pressing in and pulling out in slow and even thrusts just like he had done before with his fingers.

“You feel so good, Sweetheart. So tight and hot around me.”

His left hand had taken hold of Mike’s hip and his mouth was once again licking and nipping at the sub’s neck.

Then he changed the angle slightly and the cockhead brushed over Mike’s prostate.

“Oh,” the sub sighed almost breathless.

“You liked that, Sweetheart?”

“Yes. More, please. Good.”

Harvey repeated the movement and Mike began to shiver, finally feeling his orgasm building up from deep inside the pit of his stomach.

Harvey laughed again, but this time there was a hint of mischief in it. “But you need to hold on for another half hour I guess, until the movie ends.”

“What? No, please.” The sub almost howled with disappointment.

Harvey’s hand stroked his hip and thigh to calm him down a little. “It would be bad form not to watch the movie to its end. So you need to hold on a little longer.”

A whimper escaped Mike’s lips. Now, that he finally was getting where he wanted to be he was told that he wasn’t allowed to come. That was just pure evil.

“But I will make it a little easier for you, Sweetheart, since you’ve been such a good boy.”

Another brush against his prostate, another loud moan from Mike, accompanied by a full-body shiver.

“Such pretty reactions,” Harvey almost crooned into his ear. “But no more of this for now.” The Dom changed the angle again and resumed the slow fucking and every now and then he pressed his dick deep inside of Mike’s body and rolled his hips before he resumed the languid fucking.

“So, watch the movie Mike. Focus on the TV and if you can do this for me, if you can be my good boy now and don’t come, you’ll get a reward as soon as the end-credits begin. I promise, Babe. Just trust me. I know what you need.”

Mike was barely able to hold on, even after Harvey avoided his prostate. It seemed that it had kick-started the building of his climax and even the slow, smooth thrusts couldn’t stop it anymore. But somehow Mike managed to focus on the movie although he could feel that he himself was the sole recipient of Harvey’s attention.

Finally, finally, Doc Brown had taken Marty and Jennifer with him in the flying DeLorean to the future and the end-credits started to roll.
“You’ve been such a good boy for me. So patient and obedient,” Harvey murmured into Mike’s ear and caressed his cheek and neck with his lips.

Mike thought that he would finally get the fucking he craved, but instead, Harvey pulled out and left him empty.

“No, please…!” The words were out before he could catch himself.

“Patience, Mike. I’ve got you.”

He could feel Harvey shift behind him into an upright position.

“Stand up and get rid of the clothes. I want you naked for what comes next.”

So, there was a next. Thank god for small mercies. Mike got to his feet and Harvey did the same. Both men hurried to strip out of their clothes and as soon as he was naked the Dom settled down again on the couch, but this time he remained sitting, his balls resting heavy between his slightly spread legs and the large cock pointing upwards, dark and glistening with lube.

Mike remained standing, not knowing what Harvey wanted him to do. His own cock was flushed red and very hard, the crown glistening with pre-come and he could feel some lube dribble down from between his ass-cheeks to his thighs.

Harvey grinned up at him and patted his own thighs. “Come here and straddle me, Sweetheart. I want you to ride me.”

Mike couldn’t help himself. He started grinning like this was Christmas and his birthday at once. Damn. This had always been a secret fantasy for him and it was almost creepy that Harvey seemed to know exactly what he wanted. Almost like the Dom could read his thoughts and wishes.

In the past Mike had envied his girlfriends when they’d rode him in this position because he’d wanted to know how that felt. The girls all had seemed to like it very much and now he could finally find out for himself.

His knees braced Harvey’s hips as he brought himself into position above Harvey’s erection. But before he could reach down to guide the cock to his entrance, Harvey pulled him close and claimed his mouth in a passionate kiss, Harvey’s right hand at the back of his head to hold him there. Even in this position with him on top, his Dom was able to dominate him and that was so fucking hot.

Suddenly he could feel the tip of Harvey’s cock brush between his cheeks and trailing up and down his crack. He moaned loudly into Harvey’s mouth but the searching and teasing tongue of his Dom hushed him up and prevented him from begging for more. The right hand wandered down to his hip while Harvey brought his cock into position right underneath Mike’s fluttering pucker. Then his hip was guided downwards and Harvey’s dick slid into him in one slow motion.

“Oh god, Harvey!” Mike had thrown his head back and closed his eyes when Harvey bottomed out and suddenly there was this exquisite pressure inside of him.

Harvey snapped his own hips upwards to fuck into Mike’s tight slippery heat a couple of times before he stilled again. When Mike opened his eyes again, he gazed into the almost black eyes of his Dom. Harvey enjoyed this position very much if his facial expression was an indicator.

“Good?” The Dom cocked an eyebrow.

“Yes, good Sir. So good.”
“Place your hands on the back of the couch, Babe, and hold on tight. Don’t let go. But you can move your body and talk now. I want you to take what you need to come. Ride me, Mike. Ride my cock, rub yourself against me and let me hear you.”

Mike looked into Harvey’s eyes with the wide-blown pupils and got an encouraging smile.

“You can do it Sweetheart. You can come like this. Just take what you need. I will hold on until you’ve come.”

The sub nodded. Yes, he could do this. Mike started to roll his hips until he found just the right angle. When he got that tiny electric jolt to his prostate he began to bounce up and down on his Dom’s cock, his strong thighs coming in handy as he increased the speed and force the more he felt himself getting closer. Harvey’s hands were lightly resting on his hips and buttocks, not guiding or holding him, only offering a connection.

“This feels so good, Sir. So good. You’re so big. So good.” Mike knew that he was babbling but Harvey had told him that he could talk, so it was okay.

“Yes Sweetheart. You feel good, too. Tight and hot. Come on, ride me. Ride my cock like you would ride a dildo. Use me and make yourself come for me.”

“Oh god, yes Sir. I wanna come for you.”

His movements became more frantic the closer he got and he could feel the tip of his cock brush against Harvey’s warm skin on his stomach again and again, every time he bounced on Harvey’s cock. When he looked down he could see that the area below Harvey’s sternum was slick with his pre-come and the thought of painting this smooth and lightly tanned skin white with his come made him groan. He was close, so close, he could almost taste his orgasm. But he wasn’t quite there although he tried with all his might. He leaned forward and pressed his chest against Harvey’s to trap his cock between their bodies, so that he could rub himself against Harvey more firmly but it still wasn’t enough. He buried his face in the crook of Harvey’s neck, grinding into his Dom as hard as he could.

“Are you close, Mike?” Harvey’s voice sounded breathless too, like holding his erection for Mike’s pleasure without moving was a chore in itself.

“Yes, Sir close. But I can’t … can’t…” he whined with disappointment when the last little bit to fulfillment escaped him over and over again. It felt like something was holding him back, preventing him from getting what he so urgently needed.

“Need a little help, Puppy?” It was like Harvey knew exactly what was going on in Mike’s head. His fingers clenched around the back of the sofa. Just one jerk of his cock would be enough. Just a fingertip trailing over his crown and he would be able to finally let go.

“Please, Sir. Please help me. Please touch my cock, Sir. Please.” Mike leaned back again to give Harvey access to his straining cock.

Harvey’s face got soft and he smiled warmly. “You beg so prettily, Sweetheart. You have no idea what that does to me.”

Then the warm smile vanished and gave way to a roguish grin as both of his hands left Mike’s ass. But instead to his cock they traveled upward to his chest, trailing softly over his nipples, circling the areolas slowly. Mike looked down to see what Harvey was doing while he still rode the big cock like this was a rodeo and he were riding a wild stallion, chasing for his climax in a frantic rhythm.
“I’m going to pinch these pretty nipples, Mike. Pinch them hard and make them hurt good. Just the way you like it. Shall I? Do you want me to pinch your nipples, Mike?”

The sub groaned. Hearing the words alone was almost enough. “Oh yes, please. Do it, Sir. Please. Make them hurt.”

When the sharp pain shot through him like a lightning bolt he threw his head back and rocked down firmly until Harvey’s dick was as far in his ass as it could reach. He rolled his hips desperately while Harvey still tugged at his nipples and suddenly his back arched and his whole body tensed up right before his climax ripped through him.

“Oh yes!” His hips stuttered and jerked and Harvey began to rock his own hips upwards and he fucked Mike through his orgasm.

Harvey’s hands had left his nipples and were back at his ass, but this time the fingers were kneading his buttocks with a firm grip and the fingertips of his index-fingers slipped into his crack and caressed his clenching sphincter around the still fucking cock.

For a moment he thought that Harvey would slip the fingertips inside his ass alongside the cock to stretch him even more and although Harvey only massaged his sphincter, that image alone increased his climax even more, almost like he was coming again, when he wasn’t even finished with the first orgasm.

His dick twitched and he could feel it unloading spurt after spurt of come on Harvey’s chest and stomach. When he was almost done, his climax slowly subsiding, he looked down and saw how beautiful his Dom looked now with all his glistening come on his lightly tanned smooth skin and he smiled proudly. He had been good for Harvey and had done like his Dom had told him.

Harvey pulled his sub close into a breathless kiss, rubbing his slippery skin against Mike’s and then guided the sub’s head to the crook of his neck so he could rest for a few moments to get his breath back.

“That was beautiful, Sweetheart. Just beautiful. You’re so good for me.”

The stayed like this for a few moments until they got their breath back, Harvey murmuring praise into Mike’s ear all the while. When his breathing had evened out and post-coital exertion kicked in Harvey suddenly lifted him up. He shifted them around so that Mike was lying on his back with Harvey kneeling between his spread legs, one leg kneeling on the sofa while the foot of the other one was firmly braced on the floor for some extra leverage.

“My turn, Puppy.” Harvey was smiling down on him and Mike grinned exhaustedly right back up.

“Yes, please.”

Harvey fucked him with hard, quick strokes and Mike stretched his arms out over his head and braced himself against the armrest of the sofa so he wouldn’t be pushed upwards with every forceful stroke.

“You’ve been such a good boy for me, Mike. My boy. Mine. Fuck your little tight ass good. Fill you up.” It seemed like Harvey tended to babble too the closer he got to his orgasm and seeing the great Harvey Specter falling apart on top of him was almost enough to make Mike hard again.

The fucking got even quicker the closer Harvey got and Mike looked up into his Dom’s face in awe. He could see only want and lust and adoration in Harvey’s eyes and it filled him with a warm feeling.
This beautiful man that was searching for completion between his legs was his Dom.

“Yes, Harvey. I’m yours. Only yours. I want nobody else fucking me like that. Only you. Only your come in my ass.”

“Yes, only me… nobody else.”

The last few thrusts were so hard that Harvey’s balls slapped against Mike’s ass-cheeks with a loud fleshy sound.

“I’m gonna come now, Sweetheart. Gonna fill you up.”

“Yes. Please, Sir! Please! Harvey!”

A last thrust and then Harvey pressed his sticky chest firmly down against Mike, holding the sub down with his body weight while his hips stuttered minutely. His mouth found Mike’s neck and he kissed, licked and sucked at the sweaty skin while his throbbing dick ejected his semen into Mike’s pliant hot hole.

When Harvey’s climax finally subsided he stayed like this a while longer until he could feel Mike getting restless under him.

“Sorry, am I to heavy, Sweetheart?”

Mike giggled, still feeling a little high. “A little but I don’t care. I wanna stay like this forever. Glued to you by my jizz.”

The sub gave him a tired but satisfied smile and Harvey laughed a little too and then kissed Mike’s nose playfully before he propped himself up on his arms and found Mike’s mouth for a long kiss.

When he shifted his weight a little, his softening dick slipped out of Mike’s very wet and stretched hole and Mike made a disappointed noise. Harvey knew exactly how his sub felt.

“Sorry, Sweetheart. But we can’t stay like this indefinitely. Let’s get up and take a shower. We’re both covered in come.”

Mike was still grinning dopily and his mouth went off before he could stop himself. “And whose fault is this, Sir?”

Harvey raised an eyebrow. “So, you would’ve rather I hadn’t let you come? And I wouldn’t call it exactly a fault.”

Luckily, the Dom didn’t sound angry at Mike’s quip. “No, on both accounts. I’m glad that you’ve let me come, Sir. And I like it on my body, I like how it looks and feels on my skin. But it itches when it dries.”

Harvey slowly came to his feet and pulled Mike up on his wrist.

“Come on, Sweetheart. Shower and then bed. And no more discussion. Puppies need a lot of sleep.”

Mike, still a little high-spirited after his climax gave him a mock salute. “Aye, aye, Captain.”

Harvey’s mouth gaped open. Surely that little mouthy shit hadn’t just…

A firm swat landed on Mike’s ass and the sub could feel how on impact a small rivulet of Harvey’s semen slid down the inner side of his right thigh and he shivered slightly. Damn. His dick twitched excitedly at this feeling like it wasn’t aware that only a couple of minutes ago Mike had climaxed.
“Don’t you dare mock Star Trek, Lippy or I buy Uhura’s uniform and make you wear it the next time we go out. Thigh-high boots included.”

Mike stopped dead in his tracks but instead of looking horrified he only smiled.

“I could totally pull that off. I have soft features… and the right legs.”

Harvey couldn’t help himself. He broke out into laughter as the image of Mike in the communications officers uniform popped up in front of his inner eye.

“Don’t tempt me, Puppy. Don’t tempt me.”

Chapter End Notes

Thank you for reading. This chapter is not beta-read and all mistakes regarding grammar and spelling are my own.

I love to read your thoughts on my story so getting comments always makes me happy and Kudos is also highly appreciated.

Works inspired by this one

Please drop by the archive and comment to let the author know if you enjoyed their work!